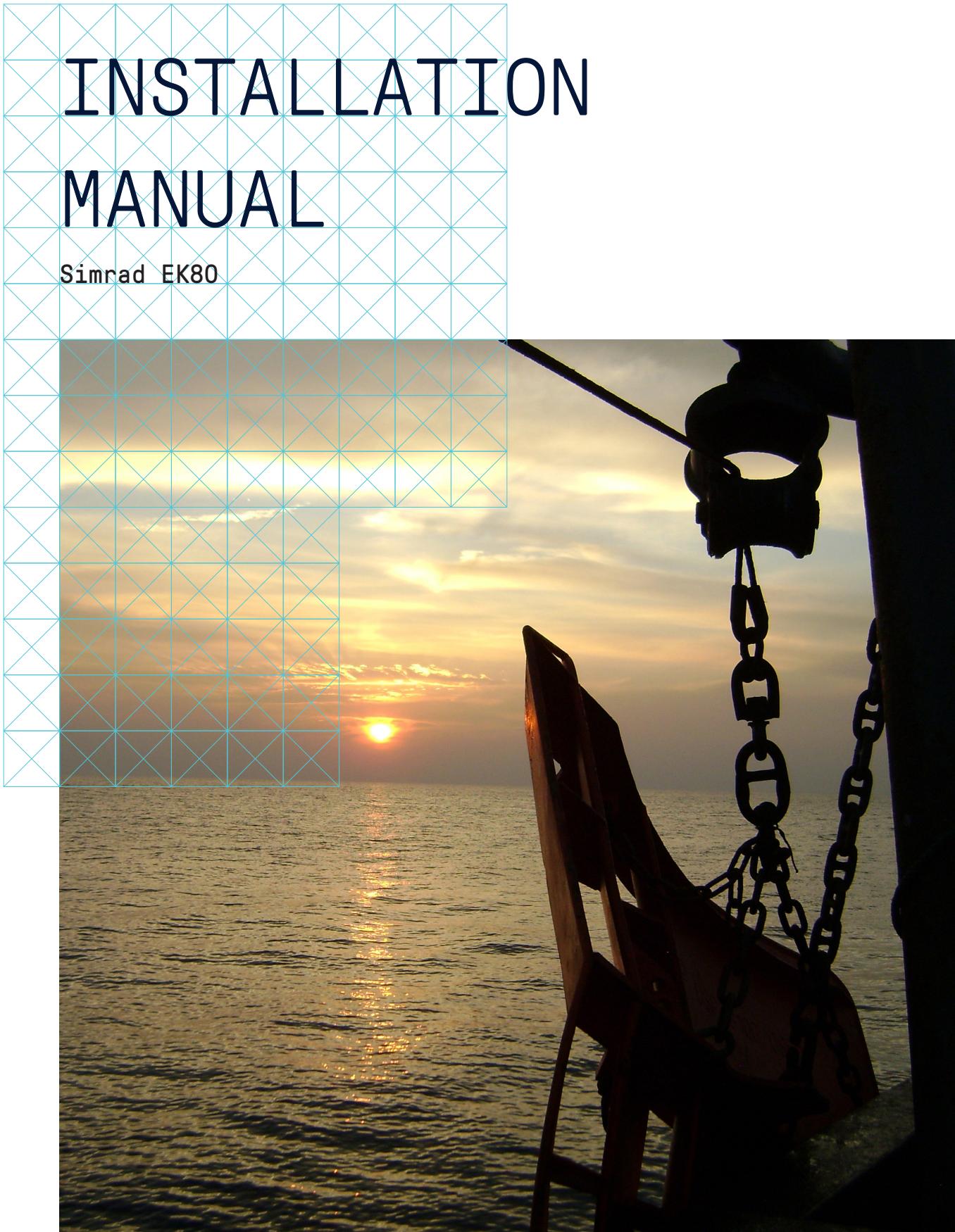




KONGSBERG

INSTALLATION MANUAL

Simrad EK80





KONGSBERG

Simrad EK80

Wide band scientific echo sounder

Installation Manual

This manual provides you with the basic information required to install the Simrad EK80 Wide band scientific echo sounder. The manual is intended for technical personnel; such as skilled shipyard workers, electricians, qualified engineers and naval architects.

The EK80 software supports several different transceiver units. The information is mainly prepared for EK80 installations on a vessel. For installation of other transceivers supported by the EK80, see the relevant publications.

For information about the practical use of the EK80 system, refer to the *Reference Manual* and/or the context sensitive *On-line help*.

Caution _____

You must never set the EK80 system to "ping" unless the transducer is submerged in water. Most transducers are damaged beyond repair if they transmit in open air. Prevent inadvertent use of the EK80 system whenever a transducer is not submerged.

Additional end-user documents related to the EK80 system can be found on our website. This includes publications that are translated to other languages. Selected publications are also provided on IETM (*Interactive Electronic Technical Manual*) formats.

- kongsberg.com/ek80

SIMRAD
By KONGSBERG

Document information

- **Product:** Simrad EK80
- **Document:** Installation Manual
- **Document part number:** 394149
- **Document ISBN number:** 978-82-8066-182-1
- **Revision:** E
- **Date of issue:** 8 April 2022

Copyright

The information contained in this document remains the sole property of Kongsberg Maritime AS. No part of this document may be copied or reproduced in any form or by any means, and the information contained within it is not to be communicated to a third party, without the prior written consent of Kongsberg Maritime AS.

Warning

The equipment to which this manual applies must only be used for the purpose for which it was designed. Improper use or maintenance may cause damage to the equipment and/or injury to personnel. You must be familiar with the contents of the appropriate manuals before attempting to operate or work on the equipment.

Kongsberg Maritime disclaims any responsibility for damage or injury caused by improper installation, use or maintenance of the equipment.

Disclaimer

Kongsberg Maritime AS endeavours to ensure that all information in this document is correct and fairly stated, but does not accept liability for any errors or omissions.

Support information

If you require maintenance or repair, contact your local dealer. You can also contact us using the following address: km.support.science@km.kongsberg.com. If you need information about our other products, visit <https://www.kongsberg.com/simrad>. On this website you will also find a list of our dealers and distributors.

Table of contents

ABOUT THIS MANUAL.....	11
SIMRAD EK80	13
Important.....	14
System description	15
System diagram.....	17
Main system units	20
Display description.....	20
Computer description	21
Ethernet switch description	21
Transceiver Unit description	22
Transducer description	24
Simrad EC150-3C	24
Scope of supply.....	26
Basic items provided with a standard delivery.....	26
Additional required items	28
Additional optional items	32
General safety rules.....	38
Installation requirements.....	40
Supply voltage requirements	40
Uninterruptible power supply (UPS) requirements	40
Cables and wiring requirements	41
Compass deviation requirements.....	41
Noise sources.....	41
Dry docking requirements	42
Requirement for classification approval.....	42
Network security	44
Support information	45
PREPARATIONS.....	46
Installation summary.....	47
About installation drawings	49
Tools, equipment and consumables required for installation.....	49
Personnel qualifications	50
Sonar room requirements	51
About the sonar room	51
Environmental requirements	51
Requirements for watertight integrity	52
Size and access requirements	52

Requirements for insulation, heating and ventilation.....	53
Requirements for electrical installations, cables and communication	54
Requirements for bilge pump and decking.....	55
Where to install the transducer	56
Mount the transducer deep	56
Avoid protruding objects near the transducer.....	57
Mount the transducer at forward part of hull to minimize the effects from the flow boundary water layer	58
Keep the transducer far away from the propellers	59
Mount the transducer at a safe distance from bow thruster(s)	59
Summary and general recommendations	59
Acoustic noise.....	62
Contributing factors.....	62
Self noise	64
Ambient noise.....	66
Fishing gear noise.....	67
Electrical self noise	67
Some means to reduce acoustic noise	67
Vessel coordinate system	69
INSTALLING THE EK80 SYSTEM HARDWARE UNITS.....	72
Installing the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) using the integrated brackets	73
Installing the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) in a 19" rack.....	75
Installing the WBT Power Supply	77
Installing the display	79
Installing a commercial computer.....	80
Installing the Enix Processor Unit	82
Installing the Ethernet switch.....	84
Mounting the WBT Cabinet	86
Mounting the drawers in the WBT Cabinet.....	89
Installing the transducer(s).....	91
CABLE LAYOUT AND INTERCONNECTIONS.....	93
Read this first	94
Reducing electrical noise	94
Cable plans.....	96
About the cable plans	96
Topside cable plan	97
Sonar room cable plan with one Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).....	98
Sonar room cable plan with two Wide Band Transceivers (WBT).....	99
Sonar room cable plan with WBT Cabinet	100
EC150-3C cable plan.....	100

List of cables	102
Installing the EK80 cables	105
Prerequisites for cable installation	105
Installing the topside cables	106
Installing the transceiver cables	108
Processor Unit rear connectors	110
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) connectors	112
Using a steel conduit to protect the transducer cable	113
Splicing the transducer cable.....	115
Connections to specific hardware items.....	118
KVM (Keyboard Video Mouse) principle for a remote operating position	118
Processor Unit graphic adapter.....	120
Processor Unit serial adapter	122
Serial line splitter Overland UPC-3005.....	126
Serial line splitter Overland UPC-5000P.....	130
Setting up the EK80 system for synchronized operation.....	134
About synchronization	134
Synchronization modes	135
Synchronization using Clear To Send (CTS) and Request To Send (RTS) signals	136
Synchronization sequences.....	136
Synchronizing the EK80 by means of a serial port	137
Synchronizing the EK80 system by means of the Auxiliary port	140
Cable drawings and specifications	143
AC power cable using IEC C13 inline socket.....	144
Ground cable	146
RS-232 serial line connection using three wires	147
RS-232 serial line connection using five wires	148
RS-422 serial line connection using five wires	149
RS-232 used as synchronization trigger (input or output)	150
RS-485 serial line connection using two or four wires	151
Moxa CP114EL-I Serial line adapter	152
RJ45 High speed Ethernet cable (1000Base-t).....	154
Battery power cable.....	155
K-Sync interface to generic RS-232 synchronization input.....	155
Simrad TU40 interface to generic RS-232 synchronization input	158
Auxiliary connector for synchronization.....	160
Single beam low power transducer connection to a circular transducer socket.....	161
Split beam transducer connection to an Amphenol socket.....	163

Split beam transducer connection for single beam use on an Amphenol socket	166
Burton underwater connectors on split beam transducers for deep water.....	169
About serial lines.....	171
Basic cable requirements	174
Cable trays.....	174
Radio frequency interference	175
Physical protection of cables.....	175
Grounding of system cables	176
Cable connections and terminations.....	176
Cable identification.....	177
Cable glands and termination procedures	177
DIMENSIONAL SURVEYING	183
Quality assurance of the EK80 data.....	184
Surveying the transducer and the navigation sensors	186
Dimensional survey accuracy requirements for ADCP operations	188
Dimensional survey accuracy requirements for echo sounding operations.....	189
Vessel coordinate system	189
SETTING TO WORK.....	192
Setting to work summary	193
Making sure that the EK80 is ready for operational use.....	195
Making sure that the AC mains supply voltage is correct.....	195
Making sure that all EK80 system cables are properly connected.....	196
Visual inspection of the display.....	197
Visual inspection of the Processor Unit	199
Visual inspection of the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).....	200
Visual inspection of the WBT Cabinet.....	202
Visual inspection of the EC150-3C Power Supply Unit	204
Turning on the EK80 system for the first time.....	206
Setting up summary	206
Installing the EK80 operating software.....	208
Turning on the EK80 system for <i>Passive</i> mode	209
Obtaining and installing the software license.....	210
Defining the IP address on the Processor Unit network adapter for communication with the transceiver.....	212
Installing one or more transducers	213
Installing transceiver channels	216
Adjusting the screen resolution	219
Installing and troubleshooting Network Time Protocol (NTP)	221
Installing Network Time Protocol (NTP).....	221

Installing Network Time Protocol (NTP) monitor	225
Troubleshooting the Network Time Protocol (NTP) service	229
Configuring the EK80 system for normal operation.....	231
Selecting menu language.....	231
Selecting measurement units	232
Defining the raw data recording parameters.....	232
Interfacing peripheral equipment.....	235
Installing navigation sensors and other sensors	235
Defining the serial and Ethernet (LAN) port parameters	237
Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS)	238
Configuring the sensor interface.....	241
Setting up a serial or LAN (Ethernet) port for annotation input	242
Connecting a catch monitoring system to a serial or LAN (Ethernet) port	244
Connecting a trawl system to a serial or LAN (Ethernet) port.....	246
Setting up the input from a motion sensor	248
Setting up the input from a sound speed sensor	250
Setting up depth output to an external system.....	252
Exporting sensor data to a peripheral system.....	254
Synchronizing the EK80 by means of a serial port	256
Synchronizing the EK80 system by means of the Auxiliary port	259
Setting up the interface between the EK80 and the Simrad TD50.....	261
Test procedures	263
Functional test of the EK80 Wide band scientific echo sounder.....	264
Measuring noise in passive operating mode.....	266
Reading the transceiver hardware and software versions	268
Verifying the communication with the course gyro	270
Verifying the communication with a navigation system (GPS)	272
Verifying the communication with speed log.....	274
Verifying the communication with the motion reference unit (MRU)	276
Verifying the communication with a synchronization system.....	278
Making a noise/speed curve to determine vessel noise	280
Turning off the EK80 system.....	283
Installation remarks.....	285
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.....	286
Introduction to technical specifications	287
Interface specifications.....	288
Supported datagram formats for annotation data	288
Supported datagram formats for distance information.....	289
Supported datagram formats for drop keel offset information.....	289
Supported datagram formats for external depth input.....	290

Supported datagram formats for position information	291
Supported datagram formats for heading and gyro information	292
Supported datagram formats for trawl information.....	293
Supported datagram formats for motion information.....	294
Supported datagram formats for palette control.....	294
Supported datagram formats for catch monitoring information.....	295
Supported datagram formats for sound speed sensors	295
Supported datagram formats for speed log information.....	296
Supported datagram formats for temperature information.....	296
Supported datagram formats for water level offset information	297
Supported formats for processed data to output.....	298
Supported formats for processed data to file	299
Power requirements	300
Display power requirements.....	300
Processor Unit power requirements	300
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) power requirements	301
WBT Power Supply power requirements.....	301
LBG408A-R2 Ethernet switch power requirements	301
WBT Cabinet power requirements.....	302
Weights and outline dimensions	303
Display weight and outline dimensions.....	303
Processor Unit weight and outline dimensions	303
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) weight and outline dimensions.....	304
LBG408A-R2 Ethernet switch weight and outline dimensions	304
WBT Cabinet weight and outline dimensions.....	305
Environmental requirements	306
Display environmental requirements.....	306
Processor Unit environmental requirements	306
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) environmental requirements.....	307
LBG408A-R2 Ethernet switch environmental requirements	307
WBT Cabinet environmental requirements.....	308
Compass safe distance	309
Display compass safe distance	309
Processor Unit compass safe distance	309
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) compass safe distance	310
WBT Power Supply compass safe distance	310
LBG408A-R2 Ethernet switch compass safe distance.....	310
WBT Cabinet compass safe distance	310
Minimum computer requirements.....	311
Minimum display requirements	312

DRAWING FILE.....	314
About the drawings in the drawing file.....	315
388697 Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) outline dimensions	316
385609 Processor Unit outline dimensions Enix	318
400930 WBT Cabinet outline dimensions	322
201575 Transducer connector assembly and wiring.....	326
EQUIPMENT HANDLING.....	328
Transporting Kongsberg Maritime equipment.....	329
Lifting units and transportation boxes	330
Inspection of units and transportation boxes after arrival.....	331
Specifications for storage prior to installation or use.....	332
Unpacking instructions	333
Unpacking standard parts and units.....	334
Unpacking mechanical units	335
Unpacking electronic and electromechanical units	336
Unpacking transducers	337
Specifications for storage after unpacking.....	338

About this manual

The purpose of this manual is to present the descriptions and drawings required to install the Simrad EK80 Wide band scientific echo sounder.

Note

The EK80 software supports several different transceiver units. The information is mainly prepared for EK80 installations on a vessel. For installation of other transceivers supported by the EK80, see the relevant publications.

Target audience

The manual is intended for technical personnel; such as skilled shipyard workers, electricians, qualified engineers and naval architects. It is assumed that you understand the general principles of maritime electronic equipment. You must also be familiar with computer hardware, interface technology and installation of electronic and mechanical products.

Installation instructions

The instructions provided in this manual must be followed carefully to ensure optimal performance. The installation procedures are presented in the order they must be done.

The equipment described in this manual includes the complete system with relevant cabinets, units and items. Cabinets, units and items provided locally by the customer, installation shipyard or a local representative are not described.

Information about third party products and/or services may not be included in this manual, even though these may be provided as a part of the delivery. Refer to the relevant end-user documentation provided by the manufacturer.

Note

Kongsberg Maritime AS will accept no responsibility for any damage or injury to the product, vessel or personnel caused by equipment that has been incorrectly installed or maintained, or by drawings, instructions or procedures that have not been prepared by us.

Installation drawings

The installation shipyard must provide all necessary design and installation drawings, as well as the relevant work standards and mounting procedures. The installation shipyard must design and manufacture relevant installation hardware to fit each individual hardware unit.

Note

If required, all documents provided by the shipyard for the physical installation of the EK80 system must be approved by the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. Such approval must be obtained before the installation can begin. The shipowner and shipyard doing the installation are responsible for obtaining and paying for such approval.

The outline dimensions of the system units are located in the *Drawing file* chapter in this manual.

The source drawings (normally in AutoCad format) can be downloaded from our website.

- kongsberg.com/ek80

Online information

All end-user manuals provided for operation and installation of your EK80 system can be downloaded from our website.

- kongsberg.com/ek80

Our website also provides information about other products from Kongsberg Maritime.

Registered trademarks

Observe the registered trademarks that apply.

Windows® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

Simrad®, SIMRAD® and the Simrad® logo are either registered trademarks, or trademarks of Kongsberg Maritime AS in Norway and other countries.

We want your feedback

We always want to improve our products. We also want our end-user documentation to be comprehensive and relevant. You can help. Please provide comments, suggestions or constructive criticism to any of our support offices.

Simrad EK80

Topics

- [Important, page 14](#)
- [System description, page 15](#)
- [System diagram, page 17](#)
- [Main system units, page 20](#)
- [Scope of supply, page 26](#)
- [General safety rules, page 38](#)
- [Installation requirements, page 40](#)
- [Network security, page 44](#)
- [Support information, page 45](#)

Important

The EK80 is an advanced product. It is used with other advanced products. There is important information that you need to know.

Note

The EK80 software supports several different transceiver units. This publication is mainly intended for vessel installations of EK80 system using the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).

Before you turn on the EK80 system

Before you turn on the EK80 system, make sure that the transducer is submerged in water. If you are using a drop keel, make sure that you have sufficient water depth to lower it.

Caution

You must never set the EK80 system to "ping" unless the transducer is submerged in water. Most transducers are damaged beyond repair if they transmit in open air. Prevent inadvertent use of the EK80 system whenever a transducer is not submerged.

When the EK80 system is not used

When you do not use the EK80 system, turn off the display and the Processor Unit. If you are not using the EK80 system for a long period of time, we recommend that you turn off the transceiver(s).

When you are docking your vessel

You must never turn on the EK80 system when the ship is in dry dock. The transducer(s) may be damaged if the EK80 system transmits in open air. To prevent inadvertent use of the EK80 system, pull out the mains plug on the Processor Unit whenever your vessel is in dry dock. Additional precautionary measures should be considered.

If something breaks down

If you believe that something has broken down, contact your local dealer. A list of all our dealers is provided on our website.

- <https://www.kongsberg.com/simrad>

If you are unable to contact a dealer, observe the support information in this publication.

When you want to turn off the EK80 system

You must never turn off the EK80 system by means of the on/off switch on the Processor Unit. You must ALWAYS select **Exit** on the top bar.

Note

If you turn off the EK80 system by means of the on/off switch on the Processor Unit you can damage the software and the interface settings used to communicate with external devices.

Rules for transducer handling

A transducer must always be handled as a delicate instrument. Incorrect actions may damage the transducer beyond repair. Observe these transducer handling rules:

- **Do not** activate the transducer when it is out of the water.
- **Do not** handle the transducer roughly. Avoid impacts.
- **Do not** expose the transducer to direct sunlight or excessive heat.
- **Do not** use high-pressure water, sandblasting, metal tools or strong solvents to clean the transducer.
- **Do not** damage the outer protective skin of the transducer.
- **Do not** damage the outer protective skin of the transducer face.
- **Do not** step on the transducer cable.
- **Do not** damage the transducer cable. Avoid exposure to sharp objects.

Related topics

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

[Support information, page 45](#)

System description

The Simrad EK80 is the most modern high-end split-beam scientific echo sounder in the scientific market. Based on more than 60 years of research and development in close collaboration with leading marine scientists this wideband echo sounder system has succeeded the famous EK60, which became an international standard for fish stock assessment.

The Simrad EK80 is the natural choice for modern research vessels and environmental monitoring installations requiring high quality scientific data for resource management and cutting edge research.

The EK80 supports hull mounting transducers, but it is also well suited for portable use. Pulses sweeping over a wide frequency band (FM) and the traditional discrete frequencies (CW) are available. Wide band sweeps provide long range without compromising target resolution. Continuous frequency responses over a wide band improve target identification and discrimination. Split beam calibration is implemented for both FM and CW modes.

Real time echo integration and target strength analysis in an unlimited number of layers is provided as well as storage of raw data for replay or analysis in one of several post-processing software packages. Several post-processing alternatives are available for survey analysis and reporting.

By means of a common and well documented RAW data format, EK80 data can be collected and integrated across a variety of acoustic platforms.

The Simrad EK80 can operate a large number of frequencies simultaneously ranging from 10 to 500 kHz. A wide selection of high quality accurate transducers is available.

The EK80 uses Microsoft® Windows® operating system. It can operate with single and/or split beam transducers, and provides you with a dedicated built-in application for calibration. The EK80 is specifically suited for permanent installation onboard a research vessel. It is still compact and a natural choice for portable use.

The Simrad EK80 is well suited for a number of applications:

- Assessment of fish biomass and distribution
- Species identification and discrimination
- Plankton research
- Habitat mapping
- Behavioral studies
- Environmental research
- Oil and gas detection

The EK80 echo sounder system is modular. You can assemble any combinations of transceivers and transducers to fit your purpose. A typical configuration can comprise the following units:

- 1 Display (One or more)
- 2 Processor Unit
- 3 Transceiver (One or more)
- 4 Ethernet switch
- 5 Transducer (One or more)

The EK80 system can operate with several transceiver types. This includes relevant hardware for acoustic Doppler current profiling (ADCP) operation.

Related topics

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

[Main system units, page 20](#)

[Scope of supply, page 26](#)

System diagram

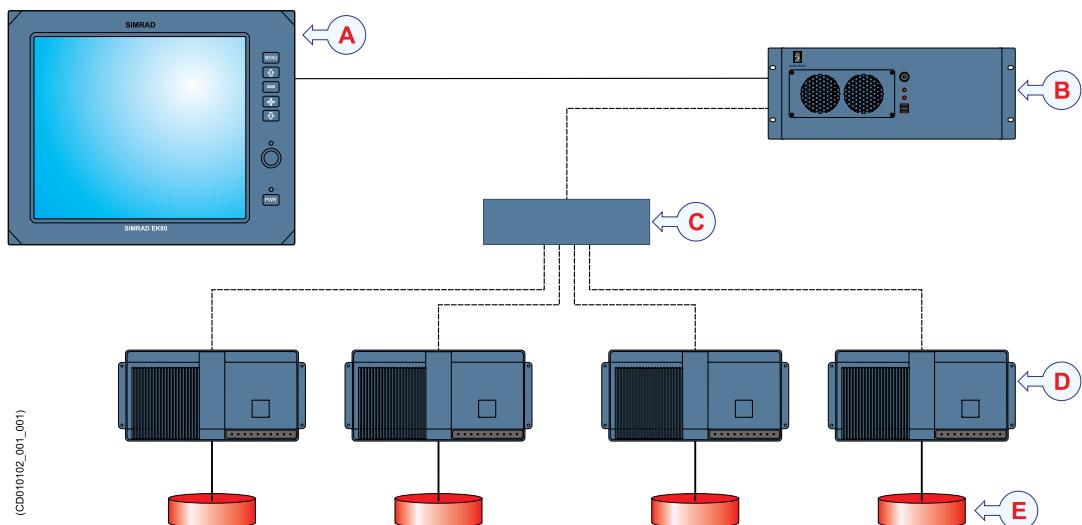
The system diagram identifies the main components of a basic EK80 system. Only the main connections between the units are shown. Detailed interface capabilities and power cables are not shown.

In this publication, the computer can also be referred to as the *Processor Unit*, and vice versa.

Basic system

The basic EK80 system consists of one transducer, one transceiver and one computer. Additional transceivers and transducers can be added to meet your operational and functional requirements. Post-processing software is provided by third-party suppliers. See our website for more information.

Unless otherwise specified in a contract, the display and the Ethernet switch are not included in the standard delivery. These are commercial items that can be purchased locally.



- A** Display
- B** Processor Unit
- C** Ethernet switch
- D** Transceiver
- E** Transducer(s)

System with acoustic Doppler current profiler (ADCP) functionality

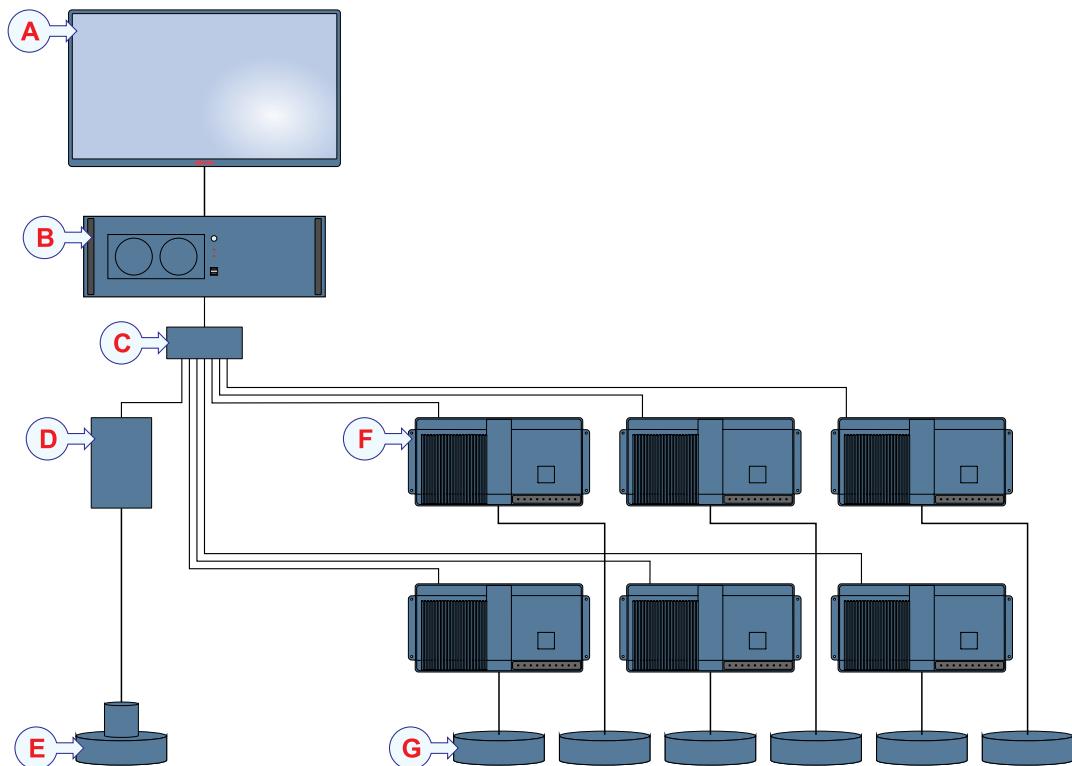
The EK80 system can be expanded by adding dedicated hardware for acoustic Doppler current profiler (ADCP) measurements. The following ADCP systems are currently supported:

- Simrad EC150-3C

The Simrad EC150-3C is a 150 kHz phased-array transducer designed for current profiling applications. It offers 3 degrees beamwidth for accurate current profiling and 2.5 degrees beamwidth when applied as a split-beam echo sounder transducer. The EC150-3C housing includes the required transceiver circuitry.

The EC150-3C is a dual purpose unit. It can be used *either* as an acoustic Doppler current profiler (ADCP) instrument to measure water current *or* as a split-beam echo sounder. It can not operate these two functions simultaneously.

The ADCP hardware can be added to an existing EK80 system. You can also use the EK80 system as an exclusive ADCP instrument.



- A** Display
- B** Processor Unit
- C** Ethernet switch
- D** Power Supply Unit
- E** Simrad EC150-3C
- F** Transceiver
- G** Transducer(s)

Related topics

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)
[Main system units, page 20](#)
[Scope of supply, page 26](#)

Main system units

Topics

- [Display description, page 20](#)
- [Computer description, page 21](#)
- [Ethernet switch description, page 21](#)
- [Transceiver Unit description, page 22](#)
- [Transducer description, page 24](#)
- [Simrad EC150-3C, page 24](#)

Display description

A display is a required part of the EK80 system. For best readability, the display must be protected from glare and have the correct height and angle.

Any commercial display can be used with the EK80 system, provided that the display meets the minimum requirements.

You may wish to see many echogram channels simultaneously. A large display with high resolution is then useful. The EK80 software supports all display sizes. The visual quality of the presentation depends on the quality of your graphic adapter and display.

Note

The display is not a standard part of the delivery. This is a commercial item that can be purchased locally.

The chosen display must be designed for maritime use, and it must meet the minimum performance specifications. You must also make sure that the chosen display supports the video formats provided by the computer. Kongsberg Maritime may provide a suitable display.

Tip

The EK80 system supports the use of multiple displays, with a maximum of three. You may find it useful to have more than one display connected to the EK80 system. The number of displays must be chosen to fit the preferences of the crew. With more than one display connected, use the operating system functionality to control the presentations.

Related topics

- [Main system units, page 20](#)
- [Simrad EK80, page 13](#)
- [Minimum display requirements, page 312](#)

Computer description

The Processor Unit is the computer that controls the EK80 system. It is a vital part of the EK80 system. The Processor Unit contains the operational software, and offers the user interface that allows you to control the EK80. Furthermore, it offers a number of serial and Ethernet lines for communication with external devices. In this publication, the computer can also be referred to as the *Processor Unit*, and vice versa.

The computer must meet the operating system requirements provided by Microsoft®. The computer must also provide the necessary interface facilities that your EK80 system needs to communicate with peripheral devices and sensors. The computer must be designed for rugged use. The construction must be able to withstand the vibrations and movements of a vessel. The operating system must be 64-bit Microsoft® Windows 10.



A high quality Ethernet adapter is required. If you wish to connect the computer to the ship's network, you need two Ethernet adapters.

The Processor Unit is normally mounted on the bridge or in a scientific laboratory.

Note

The Ethernet adapter communicating with the transceiver must offer a Receive Buffers function. This parameter must be set to its maximum value if more than one transceiver is used.

The computer is not a standard part of the delivery. A suitable computer can be provided with the EK80 system. The computer is designed for rugged maritime use. It has been customized by Kongsberg Maritime. Except from the fans, it contains no moving parts. The computer is based on a commercial design, but the software and hardware have been specified by Kongsberg Maritime to suit the EK80 requirements. It is set up with all necessary software. Consult your local dealer or agent for more information.

You can use one or two displays on your EK80 system. Place the displays next to each other, or place the second one in another location on the vessel.

Related topics

[Main system units, page 20](#)

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

[385609 Processor Unit outline dimensions Enix, page 318](#)

[Minimum computer requirements, page 311](#)

Ethernet switch description

A high capacity Ethernet switch is a key component of the EK80 system.

If you use more than one transceiver, a high capacity Ethernet switch is required. The Ethernet switch is used to connect each transceiver to the Processor Unit.

Related topics

[Main system units, page 20](#)

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Transceiver Unit description

The transceiver is provided to transmit acoustic energy through water. This transmission and reception are commonly referred to as a *ping*. After each transmission, the transceiver receives the echoes from the seabed and/or the seabed. These echoes are filtered, amplified and finally converted into digital format.

The EK80 software supports several different transceiver units. Several transceivers may be used simultaneously.

Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)

The Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) comprises a rugged box providing all necessary transmitter and receiver electronics. The receiver is designed for low noise, and it can handle input signals spanning a very large instantaneous dynamic amplitude range. All targets are correctly measured. The transceiver operates within a large frequency band, and supports single frequencies, frequency sweep (chirp) and user defined wave forms.



The Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) is designed for applications where performance is the top priority. It has four 500 W channels that can either work independently with single beam transducers, or together with a split beam transducer. The design is optimized for applications where power consumption and physical size is not critical.

A high quality Ethernet cable connects the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) to the computer. The distance between the computer and the transceiver can be extended up to maximum 70 meters. If a longer cable is required, cut it in half, and insert an Ethernet switch to provide buffer amplification.

The Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) requires an external power supply offering 12 to 15 Vdc, minimum 5 A. A suitable power supply is provided with the delivery. The transceiver can also be powered by a large capacity battery.

Note

If more than one Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) is used, a small high capacity Ethernet switch is required to connect the transceivers to the computer.

WBT Mini

The WBT Mini is a compact version of the highly efficient Wideband Transceiver (WBT) used by marine research vessels all around the world. Typical deployments include portable echo sounders and any other surface platforms that may benefit from its compact size and energy-efficient design. The WBT Mini has a small size, high capacity and low power consumption, and - as an option - autonomous operation.



The transceiver electronics in the WBT Mini have the linear FM (chirp) and CW pulse forms similar to the Wideband Transceiver. It contains four individual transceiver channels with multiplexing functionality. This allows for great flexibility when you set up a system with various split-beam or single-beam transducer configurations.

The WBT Mini is contained in a splash-proof cabinet. The robust design allows long-term deployment in challenging environments. The WBT Mini requires an external power supply.

WBT Tube

The WBT Tube is a depth rated version of the highly efficient Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) used by marine research vessels all around the world. The WBT Tube is contained in a pressure rated tube. It is designed for long term use down to 4000 metres water depth. Typical deployments include moorings, subsea structures for environmental monitoring and probes.

The shape and pressure rating makes the WBT Tube an ideal solution for subsea structures with multiple sensors. Each WBT Tube contains two independent transceiver boards as well as a multiplexed output. This makes it possible to ping on *two* split-beam transducer simultaneously, or *four* split-beam transducers using alternate pinging on two at a time.

The transceiver electronics in the WBT Tube have the same linear FM (chirp) and CW pulse forms as the Wide Band Transceiver. It contains eight individual transceiver channels with multiplexing functionality. This allows for great flexibility when you set up a system with various split-beam or single-beam transducer configurations.

The WBT Tube requires an external power supply. Two versions are available, one for 15 VDC operation ,and one for or 24 VDC. It communicates with the computer using one high speed Ethernet line for each transceiver in use.

Related topics

[Main system units, page 20](#)

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

[388697 Wide Band Transceiver \(WBT\) outline dimensions, page 316](#)

Transducer description

The EK80 Wide band scientific echo sounder can be used with all our single-beam and split-beam transducers.

Kongsberg Maritime can provide a wide range of efficient and accurate Simrad transducers for the EK80 Wide band scientific echo sounder. A large number of operational frequencies is available.

All our transducers are designed to work optimally across a large bandwidth and in demanding environments. For scientific echo sounders, we divide the features of the transducers into three main categories; split-beam, wideband and depth-rated. Several transducers fit into more than one category.

For more information about our transducers, see our website.

- www.kongsberg.com/simrad

The installation of the transducer (or transducers) is not described in detail in this manual. See the documentation provided with each transducer.



Related topics

[Main system units, page 20](#)

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Simrad EC150-3C

The Simrad EC150-3C is a 150 kHz phased-array transducer designed for current profiling applications. It offers 3 degrees beamwidth for accurate current profiling and 2.5 degrees beamwidth when applied as a split-beam echo sounder transducer. The EC150-3C housing includes the required transceiver circuitry.

The EC150-3C is delivered with a power supply unit and an open-ended cable. The transducer cable is 40 metres long. One end of the cable is connected to the transducer. The other end is terminated in the power supply.

The transducer is normally mounted flush with the hull plating. A clamping ring is used to secure the transducer body to a mounting ring. The mounting ring is welded into the hull plating.

The transducer can also be flush mounted at the bottom of a blister or a drop keel.

The transducer cable penetrates the hull using a cable gland. The cable gland consists of a bushing, rubber gasket, washers and a packing nipple.



Related topics

[Main system units, page 20](#)

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Scope of supply

Topics

[Basic items provided with a standard delivery, page 26](#)

[Additional required items, page 28](#)

[Additional optional items, page 32](#)

Basic items provided with a standard delivery

To assemble a complete EK80 system you need all the system units. The main units you need are provided with the standard delivery. Some items are optional.

When you unpack the parts provided with the EK80 system delivery, make sure that the following items are included.

Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)

One or more Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) units are provided.

Item	Order number	In the box
WBT (10 - 30 kHz)	402578	Transceiver Unit
WBT (25 - 50 kHz)	402579	Power supply
WBT (45 - 90 kHz)	402580	Installation bracket for WBT Power supply
WBT (85 - 170 kHz)	402581	Documentation
WBT (150 - 300 kHz)	402582	Software
WBT (250 - 500 kHz)	402583	Software license

An *order number* is the unique identifier used when a unit or an item is ordered. The number identifies a complete unit and relevant accessories packed in its shipping container.

Operational software

Operational software is provided on a suitable media. If the computer is purchased from Kongsberg Maritime, the operational software is pre-installed and ready for use.

End-user documentation

End-user documentation is provided on paper and/or digital formats. All documentation related to operation and installation can be downloaded from our website.

- kongsberg.com/ek80

Related topics

[Scope of supply, page 26](#)

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

[385609 Processor Unit outline dimensions Enix, page 318](#)

[388697 Wide Band Transceiver \(WBT\) outline dimensions, page 316](#)

Additional required items

Additional items are available for the EK80. Some are required for operation. These items must be added to the EK80 system for full operational functionality. The additional items can be provided by Kongsberg Maritime. You can order them with the other basic EK80 items. You can also purchase these items from your dealer, agent or local supplier.

Topics

[Display, page 28](#)

[Computer, page 29](#)

[Transducers, page 30](#)

[Ethernet switch, page 30](#)

[Motion Reference Unit \(MRU\), page 30](#)

Display

The display is not a standard part of the delivery. This is a commercial item that can be purchased locally.

Any commercial display can be used with the EK80 system, provided that the display meets the minimum requirements. The chosen display must be designed for maritime use, and it must meet the minimum performance specifications. You must also make sure that the chosen display supports the video formats provided by the computer.

We suggest that you purchase a large high-resolution display.

Kongsberg Maritime may provide a suitable display.

Display	Order number	In the box
Hatteland JH19T14	335513	Display (19", 1280 x 1024) Power cable Documentation
	339785	Mounting hardware
Isic DuraMON WS MD24	383050	Display (24", 1920 x 1080) Power cable Documentation
	354265	Mounting bracket
Isic DuraMON MD24 Glass	417776	Display (24", 1920 x 1080) Power cable Documentation
	419970	Mounting bracket

An *order number* is the unique identifier used when a unit or an item is ordered. The number identifies a complete unit and relevant accessories packed in its shipping container.

Related topics

- [Additional required items, page 28](#)
- [Scope of supply, page 26](#)
- [Simrad EK80, page 13](#)
- [Minimum display requirements, page 312](#)

Computer

The computer is not a standard part of the delivery. This is a commercial item that can be purchased locally.

The EK80 system is designed to be controlled by a suitable computer. The computer must be designed for rugged use. The construction must be able to withstand the vibrations and movements of a vessel. It must also be able to survive the rough handling during field work. The computer must also provide the necessary interface facilities that your EK80 system needs to communicate with peripheral devices and sensors. A laptop computer can be used if it meets the technical requirements.

The operating system must be Windows 10 or later. The computer must meet the operating system requirements provided by Microsoft®.

Note

In this publication, the computer can also be referred to as the Processor Unit, and vice versa.

A suitable computer can be provided with the EK80 system. Consult your local dealer or agent for more information.

Item	Order number	In the box
Computer	395236	Computer Software Power cable Serial line connectors and adapters

An *order number* is the unique identifier used when a unit or an item is ordered. The number identifies a complete unit and relevant accessories packed in its shipping container.

Related topics

- [Additional required items, page 28](#)
- [Scope of supply, page 26](#)
- [Simrad EK80, page 13](#)
- [Minimum computer requirements, page 311](#)

Transducers

The EK80 Wide band scientific echo sounder must be connected to one or more transducers.

Kongsberg Maritime can provide a wide range of efficient and accurate Simrad transducers for the EK80 Wide band scientific echo sounder. A large number of operational frequencies is available.

For more information about our transducers, see our website.

- www.kongsberg.com/td

Related topics

[Additional required items, page 28](#)

[Scope of supply, page 26](#)

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Ethernet switch

If you use more than one transceiver, a high capacity Ethernet switch is required. The Ethernet switch is used to connect each transceiver to the computer.

Related topics

[Additional required items, page 28](#)

[Scope of supply, page 26](#)

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Motion Reference Unit (MRU)

ADCP operations cannot take place without input from a motion sensor. In order to operate correctly with the EC150-3C, the EK80 requires input from a motion sensor.

Note

Without the input from a motion reference sensor, the EK80 system will not be able to compensate for the vessel movements. The input must be provided on the KM Binary datagram format.

The EK80 system has been designed to match the motion reference unit (MRU) sensors manufactured by our Seatex division. Descriptions of all available MRU types are provided on our website.

- <https://www.kongsberg.com/mru>

For the motion sensor unit (MRU) to communicate with the EK80, it must support the following interface format:

- **KM Binary**

KM Binary is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime for general use. This format has very high resolution on timing and sensor parameters.

Note _____

The EK80 only accepts one datagram format for motion data. If you choose to use this format, no other formats are accepted.

Kongsberg Maritime may provide a suitable motion reference unit. Consult your local dealer or agent for more information.

Motion Reference Unit (MRU)	Order number	In the box
Seatex MRU	—	Motion Reference Unit (MRU) Documentation

An *order number* is the unique identifier used when a unit or an item is ordered. The number identifies a complete unit and relevant accessories packed in its shipping container.

Related topics

[Additional required items, page 28](#)

[Scope of supply, page 26](#)

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Additional optional items

Additional items are available for the EK80. Some are optional for EK80 operation. These items may for example simplify the installation, or increase the functionality. You can order them with the other basic EK80 items. You can also purchase these items from your dealer, agent or local supplier.

Topics

- [WBT Cabinet with drawers, page 32](#)
- [Secondary display, page 33](#)
- [Global positioning system \(GPS\), page 33](#)
- [Speed log, page 34](#)
- [Course gyro, page 34](#)
- [Motion Reference Unit \(MRU\), page 35](#)
- [Serial line splitter, page 36](#)
- [Uninterruptible power supply \(UPS\), page 36](#)

WBT Cabinet with drawers

The WBT Cabinet is a customized 19"-inch instrument rack fitted with powerful shock absorbers. The cabinet can contain maximum seven custom drawers, and each of these will hold one Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) and its power supply. An Ethernet switch and a power distributor panel are included the bottom of the cabinet.

The WBT Cabinet is delivered with six drawers. Each WBT Drawer will hold one Wide Band Transceiver (WBT). The WBT Drawer is designed to fit into any commercial 19-inch rack. The drawers can be ordered separately for use in any 19" rack.

Item	Order number	In the box
WBT Cabinet	402244	19-inch rack (24U) WBT Drawers (6) Ethernet switch Power rail Shock absorbers Mounting hardware
WBT Drawer	400791	WBT Drawer Mounting hardware

An *order number* is the unique identifier used when a unit or an item is ordered. The number identifies a complete unit and relevant accessories packed in its shipping container.

Related topics

- [Additional optional items, page 32](#)
- [Scope of supply, page 26](#)
- [Simrad EK80, page 13](#)
- [400930 WBT Cabinet outline dimensions, page 322](#)

Secondary display

You can use one, two or three displays on your EK80 system depending on personal and/or operational preferences. The display is not a standard part of the delivery. This is a commercial item that can be purchased locally.

Any commercial display can be used with the EK80 system, provided that the display meets the minimum requirements. The chosen display must be designed for maritime use, and it must meet the minimum performance specifications. You must also make sure that the chosen display supports the video formats provided by the computer.

Tip

If the distance between the Processor Unit and your second display is considerable, we suggest that you use KVM (Keyboard Video Mouse) technology to preserve the video quality.

Kongsberg Maritime may provide a suitable display. Consult your local dealer or agent for more information.

Related topics

- [Additional optional items, page 32](#)
- [Scope of supply, page 26](#)
- [Simrad EK80, page 13](#)
- [Minimum display requirements, page 312](#)

Global positioning system (GPS)

A global positioning system (GPS) may be connected to the EK80 system.

When a global positioning system (GPS) connected to the EK80 system, the vessel's current geographical position can be presented in the user interface. It will also provide latitude and longitude information for the cursor and marker(s). In addition to navigational data, the global positioning system (GPS) can also be used to provide speed information. Most global positioning system (GPS) can provide course information, but this data is generally too inconsistent to provide a stable presentation on the EK80 system.

The global positioning system (GPS) interface requirements are:

- **Serial line:** Standard NMEA 0183 datagram formats
- **Ethernet (LAN) line:** Standard NMEA 0183 datagram formats

Related topics

- [Additional optional items, page 32](#)
- [Scope of supply, page 26](#)
- [Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Speed log

Provided that a speed log sensor is interfaced to the EK80 system, the vessel's current speed can be presented in the user interface. A speed log is normally not a part of the EK80 system delivery.

In most cases a suitable sensor is already installed on the vessel. A global positioning system (GPS) with a compatible output format can also be used.

The speed log interface requirements are:

- **Serial line:** Standard NMEA 0183 datagram formats
- **Ethernet (LAN) line:** Standard NMEA 0183 datagram formats

Related topics

- [Additional optional items, page 32](#)
- [Scope of supply, page 26](#)
- [Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Course gyro

When a course gyro is connected to the EK80, the vessel's current heading can be presented in the user interface. A course gyro is not a part of the EK80 delivery.

Note

Without the input from a course gyro, the EK80 system will not be able to present correct navigational information.

In most cases a suitable course gyro is already installed on the vessel. A global positioning system (GPS) with a compatible output format can also be used.

The course gyro interface requirements are:

- **Serial line:** Standard NMEA 0183 datagram formats
- **Ethernet (LAN) line:** Standard NMEA 0183 datagram formats

Related topics

- [Additional optional items, page 32](#)
- [Scope of supply, page 26](#)
- [Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Motion Reference Unit (MRU)

For improved operational accuracy we suggest that you connect a motion reference unit (MRU) to the EK80 system.

Without the input from a motion reference sensor, the EK80 system will not be able to compensate for the vessel movements. This lack of compensation will prevent the EK80 system from providing correct echo information.

Note

ADCP operations cannot take place without input from a motion sensor. The input must be provided on the KM Binary datagram format.

The EK80 system has been designed to match the motion reference unit (MRU) sensors manufactured by our Seatex division. Descriptions of all available MRU types are provided on our website.

- <https://www.kongsberg.com/mru>

For the motion sensor unit (MRU) to communicate with the EK80, it must support the following interface format:

- **EM Attitude 3000**

The Kongsberg EM Attitude 3000 is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime for use with digital motion sensors. It holds roll, pitch, heave and heading information. The datagram contains a 10-byte message.

Note

The EK80 only accepts one datagram format for motion data. If you choose to use this format, no other formats are accepted.

Kongsberg Maritime may provide a suitable motion reference unit. Consult your local dealer or agent for more information.

Motion Reference Unit (MRU)	Order number	In the box
Seatex MRU-D	–	Motion Reference Unit (MRU) Documentation

An *order number* is the unique identifier used when a unit or an item is ordered. The number identifies a complete unit and relevant accessories packed in its shipping container.

Related topics

- [Additional optional items, page 32](#)
- [Scope of supply, page 26](#)
- [Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Serial line splitter

On large installations with many hydroacoustic systems, these often require the same navigational information from a single sensor.

Information such as current depth or speed is provided on serial format. One or more serial line splitters can be used to distribute the information from a single sensor to several different recipients.

Item	Part number	In the box
Serial line splitter	337775	Serial line splitter (Øverland UPC-5000P) The Øverland UPC-5000P serial line splitter offers two separate inputs and fifteen RS-232 and RS-422 outputs.
Serial line splitter	317156	Serial line splitter (Øverland UPC-3005) The Øverland UPC-3005 serial line splitter offers one input and eight RS-232 and RS-422 outputs.

Related topics

[Additional optional items, page 32](#)

[Scope of supply, page 26](#)

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Uninterruptible power supply (UPS)

It is important to ensure continuous operation of the EK80 system independent of any varying quality of the vessel's mains supply. The use of an uninterrupted power supply (UPS) is therefore recommended.

An uninterruptible power supply is not included in the standard EK80 system delivery. This item must be purchased locally. Several commercial types are available. Several commercial types are available.

To choose the best power solution for your installation, consider environmental conditions, the physical space available, the availability and duration of the batteries, and the power requirements of the EK80 system.

Note

Make sure that the Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) does not generate switching noise in the same frequency band as the EK80 system.

The minimum requirements for the uninterruptible power supply (UPS) are:

- **Input voltage:** The input voltage must fit vessel supply voltage.
- **Output voltage:** 230 VAC, 50 Hz
- **Output power:** The output power must exceed the requirements of the EK80.
- **Output form:** The output AC voltage must be a sine wave.

Related topics

- [Additional optional items, page 32](#)
- [Scope of supply, page 26](#)
- [Simrad EK80, page 13](#)
- [Uninterruptible power supply \(UPS\) requirements, page 40](#)

General safety rules

Safety is important. The safety precautions must be followed at all times during installation and maintenance work.

WARNING

The EK80 system operates on 115 VAC and/or 230 VAC at 50/60 Hz. This voltage is lethal! You must never work alone on high-voltage equipment!

Personnel requirements

All personnel must be trained in relevant installation and maintenance work.

Personal protection

Installation personnel must wear suitable work clothes. The work clothes must not contain sufficient static to ignite. Always wear a hard hat and suitable protective footwear while handling heavy objects.

Power and ground

You must always turn off all power before installation or maintenance work on the EK80 system. Use the main circuit breaker, and label the breaker with a warning sign that informs others that maintenance or installation work is in progress on the system.

For safety reasons, two persons must always be present during troubleshooting with power turned ON.

All EK80 system units must be properly grounded.

First aid

Read and understand the applicable first aid instructions related to electric shock.

Whenever installation or maintenance work is in progress, it is essential that a first aid kit is available. All personnel must be familiar with the first aid instructions for electrical shock and other personal injuries.

Weight

The various parts of the system may be heavy. Make sure that the appropriate tools and certified lifting equipment are available. Always wear a hard hat and suitable protective footwear while handling heavy objects.

Cables

Each electric cable must be handled carefully. This is important to avoid damage to the cable. This is also important to avoid electric shock in the event that the cable is unintentionally connected to a power source.

Cabinets

Do not open racks or cabinet doors while sailing in rough seas. Doors and/or cabinet parts may suddenly swing open and cause damage or injury.

Installation requirements

Topics

- [Supply voltage requirements, page 40](#)
- [Uninterruptible power supply \(UPS\) requirements, page 40](#)
- [Cables and wiring requirements, page 41](#)
- [Compass deviation requirements, page 41](#)
- [Noise sources, page 41](#)
- [Dry docking requirements, page 42](#)
- [Requirement for classification approval, page 42](#)

Supply voltage requirements

As a general rule, the supply voltage must kept within $\pm 10\%$ of the installation's nominal voltage.

The EK80 software supports several different transceiver units. The supply voltage must be kept within the specific requirement for each transceiver in the EK80 system. For detailed requirements, see the relevant data sheets and end user documentation.

Maximum transient voltage variations on the main switchboard's bus-bars must not exceed -15% to +20% of the nominal voltage (except under fault conditions).

Related topics

- [Installation requirements, page 40](#)
- [Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Uninterruptible power supply (UPS) requirements

We recommend that the EK80 system is powered using an Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) with sine wave output.

The Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) must have the capacity to independently maintain power to the EK80 for a minimum of 10 minutes. This ensures that the EK80 can be turned off in a controlled manner in the event of a power failure.

Related topics

- [Installation requirements, page 40](#)
- [Simrad EK80, page 13](#)
- [Uninterruptible power supply \(UPS\), page 36](#)

Cables and wiring requirements

Correct wiring is crucial for the operational performance of the EK80 system.

All cables running between system cabinets located in different rooms and/or on different decks must be supported and protected along their entire lengths using conduits and/or cable trays. Note that the cables must not be installed in the vicinity of high-power supplies and cables, antenna cables or other possible sources of interference.

All transducer cables must be run in steel conduits.

For more detailed information about cables and wiring, refer to the basic cable requirements.

Related topics

[Installation requirements, page 40](#)

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Compass deviation requirements

EK80 units that are installed on the bridge may have an effect on the compass.

Once the installation is complete, the vessel must be swung with the EK80 system in both operative and inoperative modes. The shipowner and captain are responsible for updating the compass deviation table accordingly with regard to the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority.

Related topics

[Installation requirements, page 40](#)

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Noise sources

The operational performance of the EK80 system depends on the noise conditions. It is essential that the noise signature is as low as possible.

Vessel noise

The vessel's hull, rudder(s) and propeller(s) must be thoroughly inspected in dry dock prior to installation.

Roughness below the water-line deformities in the shell plating and protruding obstacles can create underwater noise. These sources of turbulence must be smoothed or removed as best as possible.

Note

It is especially important that the propeller(s) are not pitted or damaged.

Electrical noise

The quality of the vessel's supply power is crucial to reduce noise. Electrical or electronic self noise is picked up or generated in any other part of the equipment than the transducer. The most common source of electrical self noise is hum. The hum is normally generated by a low quality power supply. It is then picked up by the transducer cable and/or sensitive electronic circuitry. At higher frequencies – where rather wide bandwidths are necessary – the noise from components, transistors or other analogue electronic may be a limiting factor.

Note

Ensure maximum physical distance between the transceiver and the power supply. This is important to reduce noise.

Related topics

[Installation requirements, page 40](#)
[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Dry docking requirements

Whenever one or more transducers are mounted under the vessel's hull, special considerations must be made prior to dry docking.

Make sure that ample clearance is provided under the transducers when you are placing the vessel in dry dock. Do not place supporting blocks or structures in the vicinity of the transducers.

Note down the location of each transducer on the vessel's docking plan.

Prior to dry docking, turn off the EK80 system. If necessary, disengage the circuit breaker. Label the computer and/or the circuit breaker clearly to prevent anyone from accidentally turning on the EK80 system.

Related topics

[Installation requirements, page 40](#)
[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Requirement for classification approval

Classification approval is required for the EK80 system installation.

The transducer installation must be approved by the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. The shipowner and shipyard doing the installation are responsible for obtaining and paying for such approval.

Related topics

[Installation requirements, page 40](#)
[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Network security

If a EK80 system is connected to a local area network, data security is important.

Equipment manufactured by Kongsberg Maritime is frequently connected to the vessel's local area network (LAN). When you connect a computer to a local area network you will always expose the data on that computer. All other computers connected to the same network may be able to access your data. Several threats may immediately occur:

- Remote computers can read the data.
- Remote computers can change the data.
- Remote computers can change the behavior of the computer, for example by installing unwanted software.

Usually, two parameters are used to define the threat level:

- 1 The likelihood that any remote computer will do any of the above.
- 2 The damage done if a remote computer succeeds doing this.

Kongsberg Maritime has no information regarding the complete system installation on any vessel. Systems provided by Kongsberg Maritime are regarded as stand-alone offline systems. They are stand-alone even though they may be connected to a network for sensor interfaces and/or data distribution.

Note

No network safety applications are installed on Kongsberg Maritime computers. The computers are therefore not protected against viruses, malware or unintentional access by external users.

Securing the EK80 system itself has no meaning unless there is a policy in place that secures all computers in the network. This policy must include physical access by trained and trusted users. The customer/end user of the EK80 system will always be in charge of defining and implementing a security, policy and providing the relevant network security applications.

Note

Kongsberg Maritime will not accept any responsibility for errors and/or damages caused by unauthorized use of or access to the EK80.

Related topics

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Support information

If you need technical support for your EK80, you must contact your local dealer, or one of our support offices. A list of all our offices and dealers is available on our website. You can also contact our main support office in Norway.

Global support 24 hours

Our support team can be reached at all hours using one of the following options:

- KM-Support App:<https://kongsberg.com/no/maritime/support/km-support-app>
- Website:www.kongsberg.com/ocean-science
- Email address: km.support.science@km.kongsberg.com
- Telephone: +4733032407

Related topics

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

Preparations

Topics

- [Installation summary, page 47](#)
- [About installation drawings, page 49](#)
- [Tools, equipment and consumables required for installation, page 49](#)
- [Personnel qualifications, page 50](#)
- [Sonar room requirements, page 51](#)
- [Where to install the transducer, page 56](#)
- [Acoustic noise, page 62](#)
- [Vessel coordinate system, page 69](#)

Installation summary

Installation of the EK80 system is a demanding task that requires careful preparations, a number of specific procedures, wiring and required system settings.

Context

An overall installation procedure is provided. This procedure does not describe any detailed tasks. Refer to the relevant tasks in this manual.

Note

In order to obtain maximum safety and optimal performance, it is very important that the installation procedures in this manual are complied to. You must do the tasks in the order they are described. The vessel owner must make sure that the installation shipyard holds the applicable competence to perform the installation, and that the applicable maritime authorities are available to verify and certify the installation.

The installation shipyard must provide all necessary design and installation drawings, as well as the relevant work standards and mounting procedures. If required, all documents provided by the shipyard for the physical installation of the EK80 system must be approved by the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. Such approval must be obtained before the installation can begin. The shipowner and shipyard doing the installation are responsible for obtaining and paying for such approval.

Procedure

- 1 Determine the physical location of the transducer (or transducers).

Necessary considerations must be taken to avoid acoustic and electric disturbances.

Note

The information in this document must be regarded as general guidelines and recommendations only. The installation shipyard must design and manufacture installation hardware to fit the transducer to each individual vessel.

- [Where to install the transducer, page 56](#)
 - [Acoustic noise, page 62](#)
- 2 Install each transducer.
Each transducer will penetrate the hull. For this reason, this is a crucial part of the installation.

Note

The installation shipyard must provide all necessary design and installation drawings, as well as the relevant work standards and mounting procedures. If required, all documents provided by the shipyard for the physical installation of the EK80 system must be approved by the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. Such approval must be obtained before the installation can begin. The shipowner and shipyard doing the installation are responsible for obtaining and paying for such approval.

Relevant installation drawings are included with each transducer. The drawings (normally in AutoCad format) can be downloaded from our website.

3 Install the EK80 system units.

Note that some EK80 system units may be commercial. Unless ordered specifically these are not included in the delivery, and must be purchased locally.

- [Installing the EK80 system hardware units, page 72](#)

4 Install the cables between the EK80 system units.

Observe the relevant cable plan, procedures, as well as the general requirements for cabling. This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter. Observe the relevant cable plan, procedures, as well as the general requirements for cabling.

- [Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

5 Install the cables between the EK80 system and the relevant peripheral devices.

6 Turn on the EK80 system for the first time, and set it to work.

Note

In order to turn on the EK80 system in a safe and correct manner, the relevant procedures must be complied to!

- [Setting to work, page 192](#)

7 Do a complete EK80 system test.

The tests are described in *Setting to work* chapter in this manual. They are also provided in the *Harbour Acceptance Test* and the *Sea Acceptance Test* documents.

- [Setting to work, page 192](#)

Further requirements

Fill in and sign the *Installation Remarks* form, and send it to the Simrad support department as specified on the form.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

About installation drawings

The installation shipyard must provide all necessary design and installation drawings, as well as the relevant work standards and mounting procedures.

Note

If required, all documents provided by the shipyard for the physical installation of the EK80 system must be approved by the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. Such approval must be obtained before the installation can begin. The shipowner and shipyard doing the installation are responsible for obtaining and paying for such approval.

Kongsberg Maritime offers free advice for installation planning. Proposed arrangements may be sent for commentary or suggestions. The following drawings should be submitted should assistance be requested:

- General arrangement
- Body plan and drawings of the relevant compartment
- Lines plan

Relevant outline dimensions and production drawings can be download from our website. Most documents are available in PDF and/or AutoCad (DWG) formats.

- <https://www.kongsberg.com/ek80>

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

Tools, equipment and consumables required for installation

To install the EK80 system, all necessary tools and equipment for mechanical work, cabinet installation and electrical wiring must be available.

It is not practical to provide a detailed list of all necessary tools and equipment. You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks. This includes different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper, a soldering iron, etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment. However, you must make sure that the following specialized tools are available.

- All necessary tools and consumables required for welding
- All necessary tools and consumables required for physical installation of units, cabinets and racks
- All necessary tools and consumables required for electrical installations

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

Personnel qualifications

The installation of the EK80 system is a demanding task. Installation tasks must only be done by fully trained personnel.

As a minimum, the following certified personnel must be available:

- Naval architects
- Welders
- Electricians
- Project manager

Note

The quality of the welding is critical to the safety of the vessel. Welding must only be done by a certified welder. If applicable, the final installation welds must be approved by the vessel's national registry, the corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. Observe the relevant rules and regulations related to welding.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

Sonar room requirements

Topics

[About the sonar room, page 51](#)

[Environmental requirements, page 51](#)

[Requirements for watertight integrity, page 52](#)

[Size and access requirements, page 52](#)

[Requirements for insulation, heating and ventilation, page 53](#)

[Requirements for electrical installations, cables and communication, page 54](#)

[Requirements for bilge pump and decking, page 55](#)

About the sonar room

The *sonar room* is the compartment in which the Hull Unit is installed.

Other system units may also be installed in the sonar room. These are typically a Transceiver Unit and/or a Power Supply Unit.

It is strongly recommended to use a dedicated compartment to house these units. They must also be installed relatively close to each other due to the limited length of the cables.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

[Sonar room requirements, page 51](#)

Environmental requirements

The EK80 units must be installed in a dry and dust-free environment. The units are not fully protected against humidity, dust or water.

It is important that the sonar room is kept dry. The EK80 units must not be exposed to excessive temperatures, moisture or humidity. Such conditions can cause corrosive attacks and subsequent failures to the electronic circuitry. Make sure installation of other equipment in the sonar room does not affect the EK80 units. The use of welding equipment, saws, hammers when installing or performing maintenance on equipment in the vicinity may cause damage electrical and mechanical EK80 units and must be avoided. Visit the sonar room at regular intervals to check temperature and humidity, and take the necessary actions if the environmental conditions are poor.

Observe the environmental specifications related to the EK80 units.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

[Sonar room requirements, page 51](#)

Requirements for watertight integrity

The size, location and design of the sonar room must fulfil all the requirements to the vessel's watertight integrity.

In the event of a major leak, it must be possible to close all watertight hatches and/or doors to the room to maintain vessel stability and safety.

The physical size of the sonar room must be limited, so that in the event of a major leak, the flooding of the room will not induce instability, or cause the vessel to capsize or sink.

Inspect all watertight decks and bulkheads periodically. Make sure that there are no unprotected openings or improper penetrations that may allow progressive flooding from the compartment. Make sure that the watertight doors and hatches are in place and in good working order.

Install and activate bilge high level sensors to provide an early warning of abnormal accumulation of water. Position the sensors as low as possible along the centre area of the compartment, and/or in other locations where the water will gravitate to first. Inspect the bilge sensors periodically.

All cables leading in and out of the sonar room must be run in steel conduits. These steel conduits must reach up and above the freeboard deck.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

[Sonar room requirements, page 51](#)

Size and access requirements

A well designed sonar room with a well fitted size and easy access reduces the risk of corrosion, and simplifies maintenance. This increases system reliability.

Note

The physical size of the sonar room must be limited, so that in the event of a major leak, the flooding of the room will not induce instability, or cause the vessel to capsize or sink.

The sonar room must be large enough to house all the system units. The room must provide enough space to allow efficient maintenance. You must be able to keep all the cabinet doors fully open without undue restriction to your movements.

- 1 The room must not be used for any other heavy machinery.
- 2 The room must not be unnecessarily obstructed by girders, pipes etc, which may cause installation problems or impede maintenance.

- 3 The sonar room must be accessible under all conditions at sea or at a berth.
- 4 All doors or hatches must be designed so that the tools and equipment can be removed without being disassembled.
- 5 All cables leading in and out of the sonar room must be run in steel conduits. These steel conduits must reach up and above the freeboard deck.
- 6 In the event of a major leak, it must be possible to close all watertight hatches and/or doors to the room to maintain vessel stability and safety.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

[Sonar room requirements, page 51](#)

Requirements for insulation, heating and ventilation

The bulkheads in the sonar room must be insulated and provided with an interior wall to the deck. The room must be equipped with heater, and it must be connected to the vessel's ventilation system.

Insulation requirements

The insulation in the sonar room should be the minimum equivalent of 50 mm of rock-wool. Piping passing through the space prone to condensation must be properly insulated.

Heating requirements

Heating is an effective method for reducing humidity. The heater in the sonar room must be dimensioned to maintain the equipment within its environmental tolerances. Typical heating power is minimum 1000 W. The heater must be installed close to the deck.

Ventilation requirements

The sonar room must be connected to the vessel's ventilation system to ensure a supply of cooling air. If a ventilation system is not available, install two 3" pipes from the sonar room to a suitable fresh air location on deck.

The fresh air should enter the room as close to the floor as possible, and should be extracted from as high as possible. A funnel shaped drip-collector must be mounted below the vent pipes to divert moisture to the bilge. On the main deck, the best ventilation is provided when the outlet pipe is at least four meters higher than the inlet pipe. To keep out sea water, rain and spray, the ventilation pipes must be fitted with goosenecks or an equivalent design.

Note

If the vessel is likely to operate in tropical conditions, a suitable air conditioning system must be installed. The air conditioning system must be able to provide an ambient temperature that does not exceed the maximum operating temperatures of the system units that are installed in the room.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

[Sonar room requirements, page 51](#)

Requirements for electrical installations, cables and communication

The electrical installations in the sonar room must meet minimum requirements to provide suitable lights and supply power.

Light requirements

The sonar room must be equipped with suitable lighting to simplify the installation and to aid future maintenance.

Communication requirements

The sonar room must be equipped with a telephone, an intercom system, or any other means of oral communication between the sonar room and the bridge and/or control room(s).

Power requirements

Each unit in the sonar room should be provided with a separate circuit breaker on the mains supply.

A minimum number of additional electrical outlets must be provided for other equipment.

Proper vessel ground must be provided.

Cabling requirements

The sonar room units are connected to other EK80 units located in different compartments on the vessel. The units may also be connected to peripheral devices. If these cables pass through hatches or areas where they may be damaged, they must be run in conduits. Minimum 2" conduit is recommended.

Make sure that all system cables are properly connected and secured, and installed with some slack. The slack is essential to withstand vibrations, and to facilitate future maintenance and replacements.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

[Sonar room requirements, page 51](#)

Requirements for bilge pump and decking

If the sonar room is located below the water line, it must be connected to the vessel's bilge pump system.

Bilge pump requirement

If it is not possible to connect the sonar room to the vessel's bilge pump system, a separate bilge pump for the compartment must be installed.

Install and activate bilge high level sensors to provide an early warning of abnormal accumulation of water. Position the sensors as low as possible along the centre area of the compartment, and/or in other locations where the water will gravitate to first. Inspect the bilge sensors periodically.

Decking requirement

Once the installation has been completed, the sonar room must be suitably decked without restricting access to the equipment and the cables.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

[Sonar room requirements, page 51](#)

Where to install the transducer

A single answer to the question "where to install the transducer" cannot be given.

The physical location of the transducer depends on the vessel's design and construction, how the hull is shaped, and how the water runs along the hull. There are however a number of important guidelines, and some of these are even conflicting.

Note

The information here must be considered as general advice. Each system installation must be handled separately depending on the hull design and the other electrical and mechanical systems installed on the vessel.

Topics

[Mount the transducer deep, page 56](#)

[Avoid protruding objects near the transducer, page 57](#)

[Mount the transducer at forward part of hull to minimize the effects from the flow boundary water layer, page 58](#)

[Keep the transducer far away from the propellers, page 59](#)

[Mount the transducer at a safe distance from bow thruster\(s\), page 59](#)

[Summary and general recommendations, page 59](#)

Mount the transducer deep

In order to achieve the best possible performance, mount the transducer as deep as possible under the vessel's hull.

There are several reasons for mounting the transducer as deep as possible.

Flow noise

Consider the situations when the vessel is unloaded, and pitching in heavy seas. The vessel is riding high, and the bow may even be lifted out of the water. This will cause a lot of air to follow the shape of the hull.

The upper water layers of the sea contain a myriad of small air bubbles created by the breaking waves. In heavy seas the upper 5 to 10 metres may be filled with air, and the highest concentrations will be near the surface. Air bubbles absorb and reflect the sound energy, and they may in worst cases block the sound transmission altogether.

Cavitation

Cavitation is the formation of small air bubbles close to the transducer face. The bubbles appear because the local pressure becomes negative during parts of the acoustic pressure

cycles. The cavitation threshold increases with the hydrostatic pressure. The noise is made when the bubbles implode.

Transmitting in air

The transducer must never be lifted free of the water surface. If the transducer is activated when out of the water it may be damaged beyond repair. Mounting the transducer at a deep position on the hull will normally prevent this.

Slamming

Slamming happens if the vessel hull climbs out of the water in heavy seas. The force of the water when the hull falls down can push the transducer up, and this may cause damage both to the transducer and to its mounting. This is especially important for low frequency transducers with large faces. The effect of slamming can be reduced by mounting the transducer as deep as possible on the hull.

Note

Kongsberg Maritime AS takes no responsibility for any damages to the transducer, the cable or the mounting arrangement, caused by slamming.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

[Where to install the transducer, page 56](#)

Avoid protruding objects near the transducer

Objects protruding from the hull will generate turbulence and flow noise. This will reduce the overall performance of your system.

Protruding objects may be zinc anodes, transducers or even the vessel's keel. Holes and pipe outlets are also important noise sources, as well as rough surfaces caused by bad welding. Even traces of sealing compound, sharp edges, bolts or empty bolt holes will create noise. All these protruding objects may act as resonant cavities amplifying the flow noise at certain frequencies.

Do not place a transducer near protruding objects, and especially not close behind them. Make sure that the surface of the transducer face, the hull plating and putty around the transducer is as even and smooth as possible. Mounting screws or bolts must not be extruding from the transducer, the installation hardware or the hull plating. If necessary, grind and polish all surfaces.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

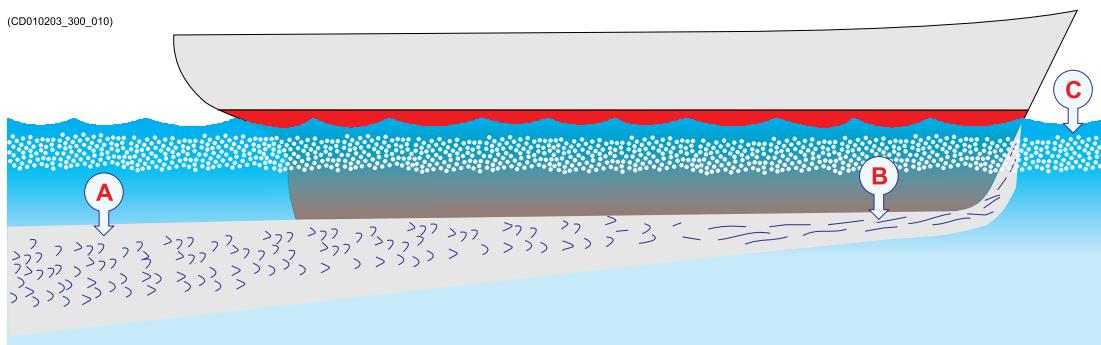
[Where to install the transducer, page 56](#)

Mount the transducer at forward part of hull to minimize the effects from the flow boundary water layer

The upper water layers of the sea contain a myriad of small air bubbles created by the breaking waves. When the hull moves through water it will cause a disturbance, and this will generate friction. The friction zone is called the *flow boundary layer*.

The water flow in this boundary layer may be *laminar* or *turbulent*.

- The *laminar* flow is a nicely ordered, parallel movement of the water.
- The *turbulent* flow is a disorderly flow pattern, full of eddies.



A Turbulent flow

B Laminar flow

C Air bubbles

Air bubbles absorb and reflect the sound energy, and they may in worst cases block the sound transmission altogether.

The boundary layer increases in thickness when it becomes turbulent. The boundary layer is thin in the forward part of the vessel hull, and increases as it moves aft. The thickness depends on ships speed and on the roughness of the hull. All objects sticking out from the hull, or dents in the hull, will disturb the flow and will increase the thickness of the boundary layer. When the flow speed is high, the turbulence can be violent enough to destroy the integrity of the water. Small voids or cavities in the water will occur and this is called cavitation.

It is our experience that a wide and flat bottom, with a rising angle less than around 13 degrees, is prone to giving air problems for the transducer. In any case a transducer location in the forward part of the hull is preferred in order to minimise the influence of the boundary layer.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

[Where to install the transducer, page 56](#)

Keep the transducer far away from the propellers

The propulsion propellers is the dominant noise source on most vessels. The noise is easily transmitted through the water. This noise may often reduce the overall performance of your EK80 transducer.

The transducer must be installed as far away from the propellers as possible. The best positions are therefore on the fore part of the hull. Positions outside the direct line of sight from the propellers are best.

On small vessels we recommend mounting the transducer on that side of the keel where the propeller blades move *upwards*. This is because the propeller cavitation is weakest on that side. The cavitation starts when the water flows in the same direction as the propeller blades. This is where the propeller blades move downwards.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

[Where to install the transducer, page 56](#)

Mount the transducer at a safe distance from bow thruster(s)

Bow thruster propellers are extremely noisy. When you decide where to place the transducer, you must consider the noise created by most bow thrusters.

When in operation, the noise and cavitation bubbles created by the thruster may make your EK80 transducer useless, almost no matter where it is installed. When the bow thrusters are *not* in operation, the tunnel creates turbulence. If your vessel is pitching, the tunnel may be filled with air or aerated water in the upper position and release this in the lower position.

In general, the transducer should therefore be placed well away from the bow thruster(s).

However, this is not an invariable rule. Certain thruster designs - combined with their physical locations on the hull - may still offer a suitable location for the transducer, even close to the thruster. If you are in doubt, consult a naval architect.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

[Where to install the transducer, page 56](#)

Summary and general recommendations

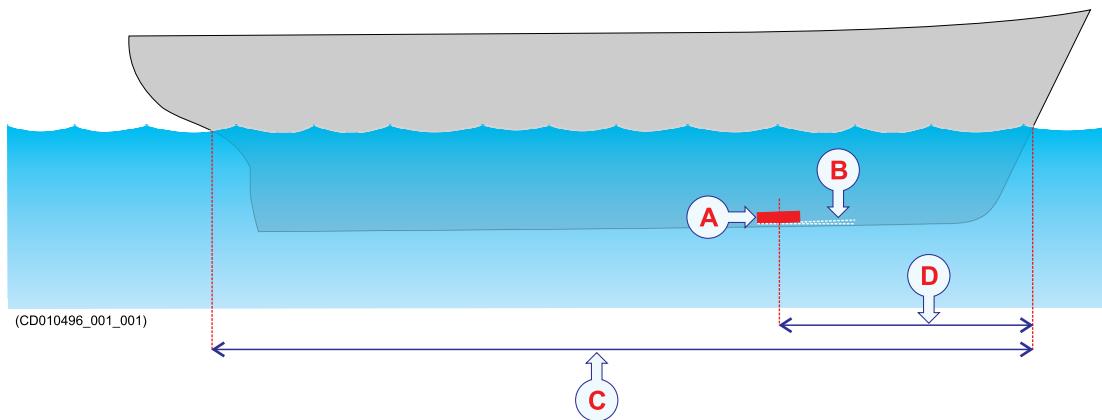
Some of the installation guidelines provided for transducer location may be conflicting. For this reason, each vessel must be treated individually in order to find the best compromise.

In general, the most important factor is to avoid air bubbles in front of the transducer face. For this reason, the recommended transducer location is normally in the fore part of the hull, well ahead of the noise created by the bow wave.

The maximum distance from the bow is normally equal to one third of the total water line length of the hull.

Note

Mounting the transducer more than 10–15 meters from the bow may cause problems with the turbulent flow.



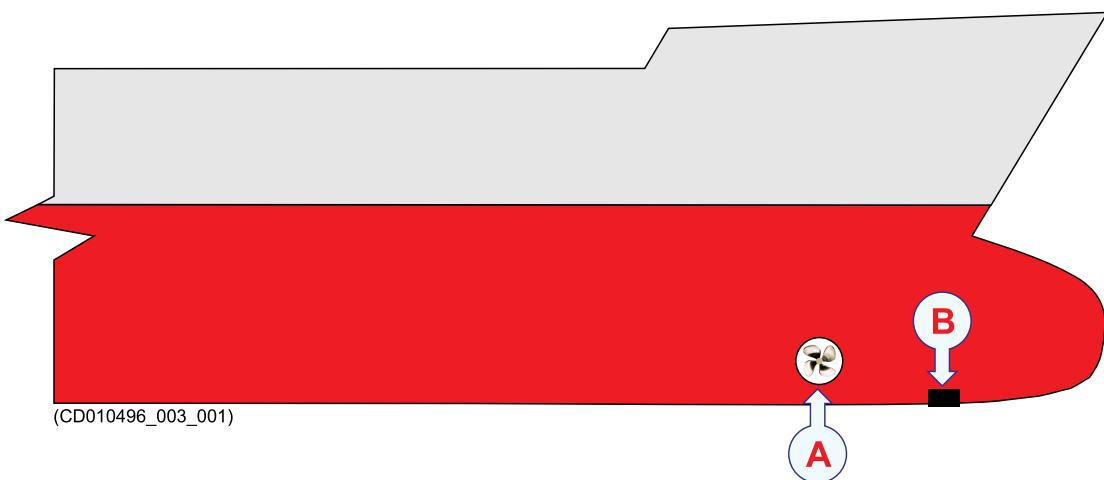
A Transducer

C Hull length at water line

B Inclination angle

D Maximum 1/3 of the hull length at water line (C)

If the vessel hull has a bulbous bow, this may well be a good transducer location, but also in this case the flow pattern of the aerated water must be taken into consideration. The foremost part of the bulb is often a good location.



A Transducer

C Hull length at water line

B Inclination angle

D Maximum 1/3 of the hull length at water line (C)

This applies to the vessel in normal trim and speed.

Important _____

The transducer must not have a negative inclination angle compared to water flow.

Do not place a transducer near protruding objects, and especially not close behind them.

Make sure that the surface of the resulting installation is as smooth and streamlined as possible.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

[Where to install the transducer, page 56](#)

Acoustic noise

As with any other hydroacoustic systems, the quality of the EK80 echo data and presentations are subject to unwanted acoustic noise. The echoes from any large and small target must be detected inside the noise.

It is important that we keep the noise level as low as possible. This is necessary to obtain long range and dependable interpretations of the echoes. Even with the advanced noise filtering offered by the EK80 system, we must address the noise challenge. This is important during the planning and preparations for the installation of the EK80 system.

Topics

[Contributing factors, page 62](#)

[Self noise, page 64](#)

[Ambient noise, page 66](#)

[Fishing gear noise, page 67](#)

[Electrical self noise, page 67](#)

[Some means to reduce acoustic noise, page 67](#)

Contributing factors

Several factors are contributing to the performance of the hydroacoustic equipment used on board a vessel.

Factors contributing to the performance of the hydroacoustic equipment used on board a vessel are:

- The quality and properties of the transmitted signal
- The quality of the receiving system
- The operational settings made during operation
- The properties of the target(s)
- The signal-to-noise ratio

The majority of these factors can neither be controlled nor improved by means of installation methods or transducer locations. The quality and properties of the transmitting and receiving systems are key factors during our product development, while our end user documentation aims to help you to make the right filter settings during operation. As for the target properties, there is nothing any of us can do with those.

The *signal-to-noise ratio*, however, can be improved by making the correct choices during installation.

Signal-to-noise ratio (often abbreviated SNR or S/N) is a measure used in science and engineering that compares the level of a desired signal to the level of background noise. It is defined as the ratio of signal power to the noise power, often

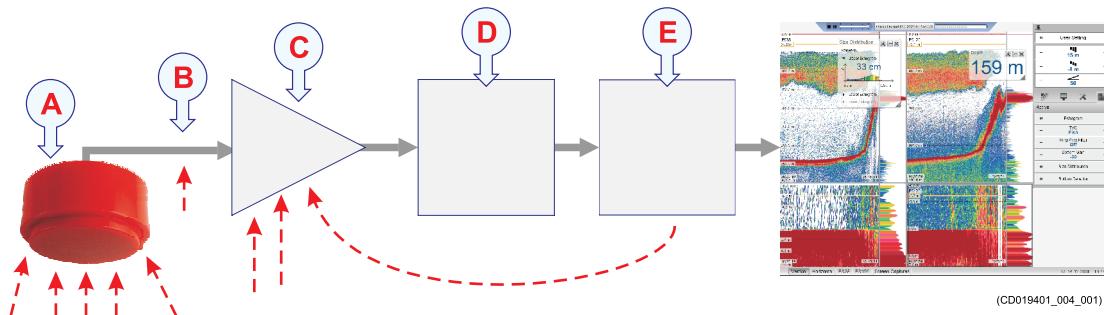
expressed in decibels. A ratio higher than 1:1 (greater than 0 dB) indicates more signal than noise. While SNR is commonly quoted for electrical signals, it can be applied to any form of signal [...].

Wikipedia, Copied September 2013

The *signal* is the echo that we want to know something about, while the *noise* is any unwanted signals or disturbances. The echo must be detected in the noise and therefore it is necessary to keep the noise level as low as possible in order to obtain high echo interpretation.

The noise that contributes to the signal to noise ratio may be divided into the following types of noise:

- Self noise
- Ambient noise
- Electrical noise
- Reverberation
- Underwater noise
- Fishing gear noise



- A** The transducer can pick up noise from:
- Biological disturbances
 - Interference
 - Cavitation
 - Propeller noise
 - Flow noise
 - Acoustic noise from other hydroacoustic systems
- B** The transducer cable is long. Electric noise from generators, pumps, cooling systems and other electric or electromechanical devices is easily picked up.
- C** The preamplifiers are very sensitive. They can easily pick up electrical noise from internal and external power supplies. The preamplifiers are also vulnerable to analogue noise created by their own electronic circuitry. Digital noise created by the converter and processing circuitry can also create noise problems.

- D The converters transform the analogue echoes to digital format.
- E Signal processing circuitry can create digital noise.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)
[Acoustic noise, page 62](#)

Self noise

Any vessel equipped with a hydroacoustic system (for example echo sounder or sonar) will produce more or less self noise.

There are many sources of such self noise. It is necessary to analyse the different sources of self-noise on a vessel, and find out how each source can affect the noise level of the hydroacoustic instruments.

Machinery noise

The main contributor to machinery noise is usually the main engine on board the vessel. The contribution from auxiliary machinery may, however, be considerable, especially if it is in poor shape. The machinery noise can be transmitted to the transducer as:

- Structure-borne noise through the ship structure and the transducer mountings.
- Water-borne noise through the hull into the water to the transducer.

Electrical noise

Modern vessels are normally equipped with a lot of electric instruments such as hydroacoustic systems, radars, navigation systems, and communication equipment. Any electric instruments may in some cases cause electrical interference and noise. International regulations and certifications are used to control and reduce this, but even these are limited if the electrical systems are poorly installed and/or maintained.

Propeller noise

Propeller noise is often the main source of noise at higher vessel speeds. Variable pitch propellers or fast moving propellers usually make more noise than fixed propellers or slow moving propellers.

Propeller noise is usually water-borne. In some cases, however, shaft vibrations or vibrations in the hull near the propeller may be structure-borne to the transducer. If a propeller blade is damaged, this may increase the noise considerably.

Propeller cavitation is a severe source of noise. "Singing" propellers might be a source of noise, which interferes at discrete frequencies. In some cases static discharge from the rotating propeller shaft may be quite disturbing.

Cavitation

Cavitation is the formation of small air bubbles close to the transducer face. The bubbles appear because the local pressure becomes negative during parts of the acoustic pressure cycles. The cavitation threshold increases with the hydrostatic pressure. The noise is made when the bubbles implode.

Cavitation noise may appear near extruding objects at higher speeds, but more often it is caused by the propellers. Propeller cavitation is a severe source of noise. The cavitation starts when the water flows in the same direction as the propeller blades. This is where the propeller blades move downwards.

In some cases a resonant phenomenon is set up in a hole near the hull. This sound will have a discrete frequency, while all other flow noise will have a wide frequency spectrum.

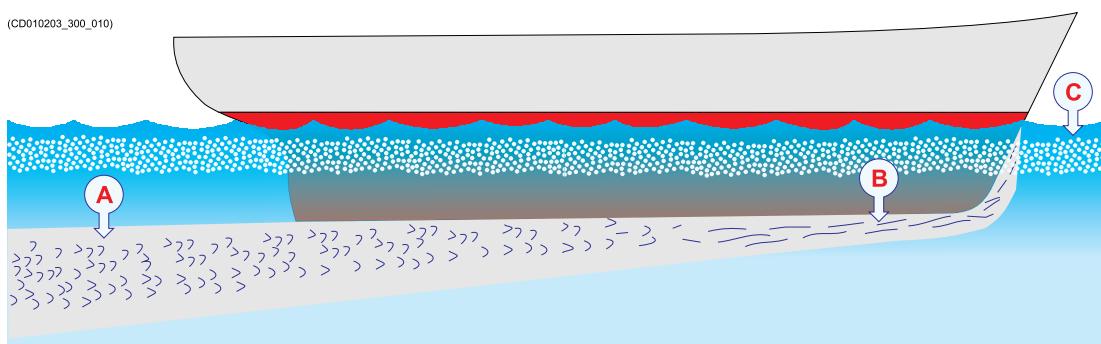
(Image from U. S. Navy in the public domain.)



Flow noise

The upper water layers of the sea contain a myriad of small air bubbles created by the breaking waves. When the hull moves through water it will cause a disturbance, and this will generate friction. The friction zone is called the *flow boundary layer*. The water flow in this boundary layer may be *laminar* or *turbulent*.

- The *laminar* flow is a nicely ordered, parallel movement of the water.
- The *turbulent* flow is a disorderly flow pattern, full of eddies.



A *Turbulent flow*

B *Laminar flow*

C *Air bubbles*

Air bubbles absorb and reflect the sound energy, and they may in worst cases block the sound transmission altogether.

The boundary layer increases in thickness when it becomes turbulent. The boundary layer is thin in the forward part of the vessel hull, and increases as it moves aft. The

thickness depends on ships speed and on the roughness of the hull. All objects sticking out from the hull, or dents in the hull, will disturb the flow and will increase the thickness of the boundary layer. When the flow speed is high, the turbulence can be violent enough to destroy the integrity of the water. Small voids or cavities in the water will occur and this is called cavitation.

Rattle noise

Rattle noise may be caused by loose objects in the vicinity of the transducer, like fixing bolts. The rattle may also come from loose objects inside the hull.

Interference

Interference from other hydroacoustic equipment on board the same vessel may be an annoying source of disturbance. Unless the same frequency is used for more than one piece of equipment only the transmitted pulse will contribute to the interference.

In physics, interference is the phenomenon in which two waves superpose each other to form a resultant wave of greater or lower amplitude. Interference usually refers to the interaction of waves that are correlated or coherent with each other, either because they come from the same source or because they have the same or nearly the same frequency. Interference effects can be observed with all types of waves, for example, light, radio, acoustic, surface water waves or matter waves.

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wave_interference — April 2016

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)
[Acoustic noise, page 62](#)

Ambient noise

Ambient noise is usually not a limiting factor to the performance of sonars and echo sounders.

The ambient noise may be split up as follows:

- **Sea noise:** Air bubbles, seismic disturbances, waves, boundary turbulence, etc.
- **Biological noise:** Fish, mammals
- **Man made noise:** Other vessels, interference
- **Precipitation noise:** Heavy rain or hail

In some areas, where many vessels operate together, the engine and propeller noise from other vessels may be disturbing. Interference from hydroacoustic instruments located in other vessels may also be a limiting factor. The sea noise depends on the weather conditions. In bad weather the sea noise can be quite high due to the waves.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

[Acoustic noise, page 62](#)

Fishing gear noise

Whenever your fishing gear is in use, it will create noise.

A bottom trawl, for instance, is a considerable source of acoustic noise. Still, this noise from the fishing gear will seldom be a limiting factor for hull mounted sonars or echo sounders. However, for operation of a catch monitoring system or a trawl sonar, with the transducer placed on the trawl, the gear noise is one of the main contributors to the noise level.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

[Acoustic noise, page 62](#)

Electrical self noise

Electrical or electronic self noise is picked up or generated in any other part of the equipment than the transducer.

The most common source of electrical self noise is hum. The hum is normally generated by a low quality power supply. It is then picked up by the transducer cables and/or sensitive electronic circuitry. At higher frequencies – where rather wide bandwidths are necessary – the noise from components, transistors or other analogue electronic may be a limiting factor.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

[Acoustic noise, page 62](#)

Some means to reduce acoustic noise

Several factors are contributing to the performance of the hydroacoustic equipment used on board a vessel. Careful planning of the installation may reduce the acoustic noise.

Unfortunately, it is impossible to simply provide a number of specific procedures to reduce the noise.

An important factor is the physical location of the transducers. This depends on the vessel's design and construction, how the hull is shaped, and how the water runs along the hull. Other factors deal with other equipment mounted on board, and this will also be vessel dependant. At moderate ship speeds the machinery noise is usually dominant. At medium speeds the flow noise increases more rapidly and takes over, while at higher speed the propeller noise will be the main contributor.

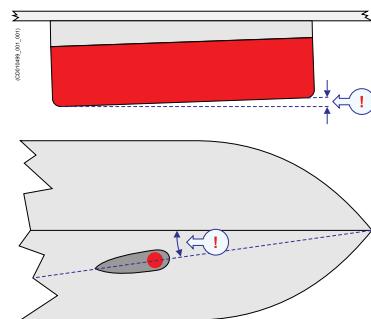
Note _____

The information here must be considered as general advice. Each system installation must be handled separately depending on the hull design and the other electrical and mechanical systems installed on the vessel.

Reducing flow noise

The shape of the transducer (or dome around it) must be as streamlined as possible. Smooth surface is important. The hull plating in front of the transducer must be as smooth as possible.

Make sure that the surface of the transducer face, as well as the plating and putty around the transducer is as even and smooth as possible. Mounting screws or bolts must not be extruding from the transducer or the plating immediately around it. Obstructions on these surfaces will create problems with turbulent flow, and may cause noise.

**Important** _____

Be especially aware of bilge keels and sacrificial anodes. The keel must be rounded off without sharp edges. Neither extruding objects nor abrupt transitions must be present.

Each transducer must be mounted with a small inclination angle (approximately 2 degrees).

Reducing machinery noise

- Each transducer must be installed as far away from the engine room as possible.
- The main engine and relevant auxiliary engines and equipment must be fixed to rigid foundations to avoid vibrations.
- Any hull structure that may vibrate must be damped or coated to reduce the vibrations.

The use of shock absorbers or floating rafts may sometimes reduce this noise. The structure-borne noise may be reduced by isolation, for example by providing vibration clamping between the transducer and the hull structure.

Reducing propeller noise

The transducer must be installed as far away from the propellers as possible. Sufficient clearance between the propellers and the hull, the rudder and the keel must be provided.

Place the sacrificial anodes in places where the water flow is the least disturbed.

Ensure that the propellers blades are correctly designed and without damages. The use of a baffle between the propellers and the transducer may reduce noise appreciably. Static discharges caused by the rotating propeller shaft may be removed by proper grounding or by mounting a coal brush from the shaft to vessel ground.

Reducing rattle noise

Ensure that no parts near the transducers can rattle as a result of water flow or vibrations.

Reducing interference

Interference from the transmission pulses from other hydroacoustic instruments on board the vessel is difficult to avoid. The problem may be reduced by choosing the working frequencies carefully and to some extent by separating the different transducers. On vessels with a large number of separate hydroacoustic systems installed and in simultaneous use, a separate synchronizing system (for example the K-Sync) should be considered.

Reducing electrical noise

These points must all be considered to reduce electrical noise on an EK80 system.

- Place the transducer cables in a metal conduit all the way from the transducer to the transceiver. Terminate the conduit as close to the transducer and transceiver as possible.
- Make sure that the transducer cables are completely separated from other cables, boxes, other potential noise sources.
- Make sure that all units are properly grounded.
- Use shielded cables with correct grounding.
- Separate the cables used by the EK80 system from other cables with high voltages, large currents or transients. Place all high voltage power cables in metal conduits.
- If you more than one Wide Band Transceiver (WBT), install these in such a way that the transducer cables have the maximum distance to the power and Ethernet cables.
- Ensure maximum physical distance between the transceiver and the power supply.
- Ensure maximum physical distance between each power supply.
- If possible, install the transceivers in a sonar room that is electrically shielded.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

[Acoustic noise, page 62](#)

Vessel coordinate system

The vessel coordinate system is established to define the relative physical locations of system units and sensors.

When you have several different sensors and transducers on your vessel, and you wish each of them to provide accurate data, you need to know their relative physical positions. The antenna of a position sensor is typically mounted high above the superstructure, while a motion sensor is located close to the vessel's centre of gravity. Both of these

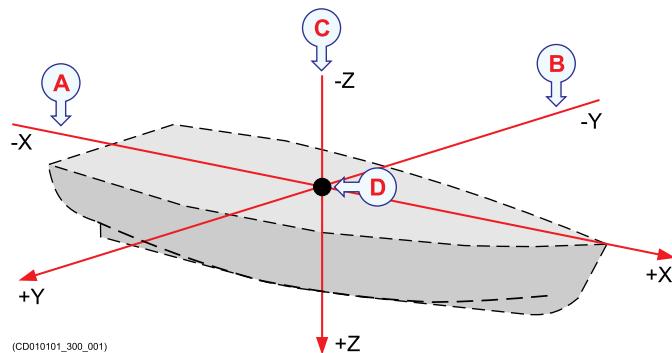
are physically positioned far away from the transducer, which may be located closer to the bow. Very often, the information from one sensor depends on data from another. It is then important that the relevant measurements are compensated for these relative distances.

Example

If you wish to measure the actual water depth, you will need to know the vertical distance from the echo sounder transducer to the water line. Since the vessel's displacement changes with the amount of cargo, fuel etc, the physical location of the water line on the hull must either be measured at a regular basis, or measured with a second sensor.

In order to establish a system to measure the relative distance between sensors, a virtual coordinate system is established. This coordinate system uses three vectors; X, Y and Z.

- A** *The X-axis is the longitudinal direction of the vessel, and in parallel with the deck. A positive value for X means that a sensor or a reference point is located ahead of the reference point (origin).*
- B** *The Y-axis is the transverse direction of the vessel, and in parallel with the deck. A positive value for Y means that a sensor or a reference point is located on the starboard side of the reference point (origin).*
- C** *The Z-axis is vertical, and in parallel with the mast. A positive value for Z means that a sensor or a new reference point is located under the reference point (origin).*
- D** *Reference point (Ship Origin)*



Coordinate system origin

The *origin* is the common reference point where all three axis in the vessel coordinate system meet. All physical locations of the vessel's sensors (radar and positioning system antennas, echo sounder and sonar transducers, motion reference units, etc.) are referenced to the origin. In most cases, the location of the vessel's "official" origin has been defined by the designer or shipyard. This origin is normally identified with a physical marking, and also shown on the vessel drawings.

Frequently used locations are:

- Aft immediately over the rudder (frame 0)
- Vessel's centre of gravity
- The physical location of the motion sensor

Coordinate system alternative origins

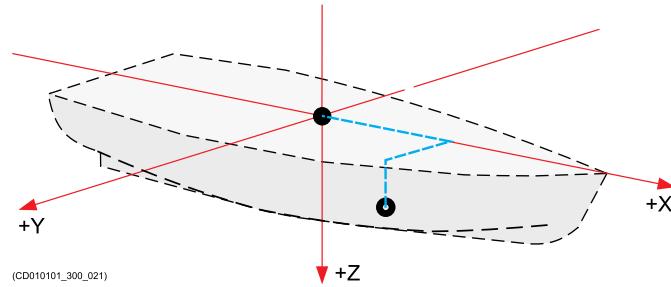
If necessary, other origin locations may be defined for specific products or purposes. One example is the *Navigation Reference Point* that is frequently used. Whenever a vessel is surveyed to establish accurate offset information, the surveyor may also establish an alternative origin location. Whenever relevant, any such alternative locations must be defined using offset values to the "official" origin established by the designer or shipyard. A commonly used alternative origin is the physical location of the vessel's motion sensor.

Defining the physical location of each sensor

By means of the vessel coordinate system, the physical location of every sensor can be defined using three numerical values for X, Y and Z. These values must define the vertical and horizontal distances from a single reference point; the origin. The physical location of the motion reference unit (MRU) is often the most important sensor to define. For many systems, the vessel heading is also a critical measurement.

Illustration:

In this example, a second reference point has been established. It is defined with three positive offset values for X, Y and Z. All values are positive because the new reference point is in front of and below the origin, and on the starboard side.



The accuracy of the three numerical values for X, Y and Z defines the accuracy of the sensor data. If you require a high accuracy, for example for underwater positioning, underwater mapping or scientific measurements, you must have each sensor positioned using professional land surveying. For such use, a good alignment survey is critical for high quality results. Surveys are normally done by qualified and trained surveyors using proven survey equipment and methods.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

[Dimensional surveying, page 183](#)

Installing the EK80 system hardware units

Topics

- [Installing the Wide Band Transceiver \(WBT\) using the integrated brackets, page 73](#)
- [Installing the Wide Band Transceiver \(WBT\) in a 19" rack, page 75](#)
- [Installing the WBT Power Supply, page 77](#)
- [Installing the display, page 79](#)
- [Installing a commercial computer, page 80](#)
- [Installing the Enix Processor Unit, page 82](#)
- [Installing the Ethernet switch, page 84](#)
- [Mounting the WBT Cabinet, page 86](#)
- [Mounting the drawers in the WBT Cabinet, page 89](#)
- [Installing the transducer\(s\), page 91](#)

Installing the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) using the integrated brackets

The transceiver is normally positioned in a dedicated room in the vicinity of the transducer. The physical length of the cables limit the distance between each transducer and the transceiver. The Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) can be installed vertically or horizontally using the integrated mounting brackets. Four bolts are used, two on each side.

Prerequisites

A suitable location for the transceiver must be defined prior to installation. It is normally positioned in the sonar room close to the transducer. The unit can in principle be mounted anywhere on board the ship provided that the location is dry and ventilated.

The length of the transducer cables limits where the transceiver can be installed.

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks. This includes different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper, a soldering iron, etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

Context

The unit can be mounted in any direction and on any surface provided that the environmental requirements are met.

Note

If you mount the unit on a bulkhead, position it so that all the sockets are facing down.



These points must all be considered to reduce electrical noise on an EK80 system.

- If you more than one Wide Band Transceiver (WBT), install these in such a way that the transducer cables have the maximum distance to the power and Ethernet cables.
- Ensure maximum physical distance between the transceiver and the power supply.
- Ensure maximum physical distance between each power supply.
- If possible, install the transceivers in a sonar room that is electrically shielded.
- Make sure that all units are properly grounded.

Caution

Do not weld in the vicinity of the transceiver unit.

Procedure

- 1 Prepare the location and the necessary tools.
- 2 Observe the installation requirements.
 - a Depending on the local requirements and preferences, the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) can be installed on the bulkhead, inside a console, in a cabinet or 19" rack, or on a desk.
 - b The position must be chosen to fit the available cable lengths between the transceiver and the other units it connects to. Short distance to the transducer is always first priority.
 - c If you placing the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) on the bridge, observe the compass safe distance.
 - d Make sure that enough space is made available for maintenance purposes.
 - e Make sure that adequate ventilation is available to avoid overheating.
 - f Make sure that the installation method allows for the physical vibration, movements and forces normally experienced on a vessel.

Note

To allow future maintenance, you must mount the unit with its cables and connectors available for easy access.

- 3 Make sure that the chosen location meets the installation requirements.
- 4 Place the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) in the selected position.
- 5 Secure the unit using four 5 mm bolts.
- 6 Connect the cables.

Note

When you connect the cables, make sure that they are all properly secured, and able to withstand the vibration and movements of the vessel.

Related topics

- [Installing the EK80 system hardware units, page 72](#)
[388697 Wide Band Transceiver \(WBT\) outline dimensions, page 316](#)
[Equipment handling, page 328](#)
[Compass safe distance, page 309](#)

Installing the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) in a 19" rack

The Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) can be installed in a 19-inch rack by means of an optional drawer. You will need one drawer for each Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).

Prerequisites

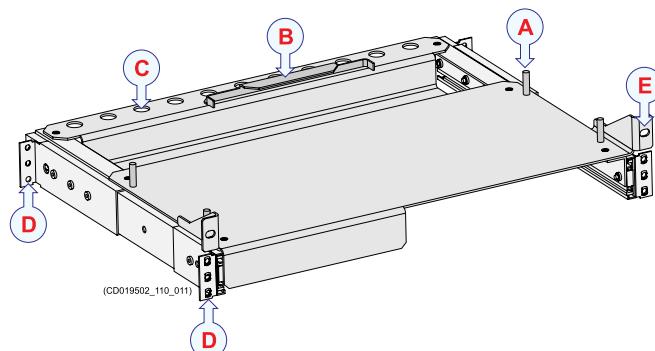
It is assumed that a suitable 19-inch rack has already been installed.

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks. This includes different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper, a soldering iron, etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

Context

Each transceiver must be installed on a dedicated drawer in the rack.

- A** *Mounting bolts for the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)*
- B** *Mounting bracket (not used)*
- C** *Holes for fastening and securing the cables*
- D** *Mounting bolts for the drawer assembly*
- E** *Mounting bolts for the drawer*



Note

Ensure maximum physical distance between the transceiver and the power supply. This is important to reduce noise. Place the power supplies on a dedicated drawer at the bottom of the cabinet.

Make sure that all units are properly grounded.

If your EK80 system comprises more than one Wide Band Transceiver (WBT), you can use the optional WBT Cabinet. This 19" rack holds maximum seven transceivers with power supplies, as well as an Ethernet switch and a power distribution panel.

Caution

Do not weld in the vicinity of the transceiver unit.

Procedure

- 1 Prepare the location and the necessary tools.
- 2 Observe the installation requirements.
 - a Depending on the local requirements and preferences, the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) can be installed on the bulkhead, inside a console, in a cabinet or 19" rack, or on a desk.
 - b The position must be chosen to fit the available cable lengths between the transceiver and the other units it connects to. Short distance to the transducer is always first priority.
 - c Observe the compass safe distance.
 - d Make sure that enough space is made available for maintenance purposes.
 - e Make sure that adequate ventilation is available to avoid overheating.
 - f Make sure that the installation method allows for the physical vibration, movements and forces normally experienced on a vessel.

Note

To allow future maintenance, you must mount the unit with its cables and connectors available for easy access.

- 3 Make sure that the chosen location meets the installation requirements.
- 4 Place the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) on the WBT Drawer.
- 5 Mount the transceiver and the power supply using the brackets, bolts and nuts provided.
- 6 Mount the WBT Drawer into the 19-inch rack.
- 7 Connect the cables.

Note

When you connect the cables, make sure that they are all properly secured, and able to withstand the vibration and movements of the vessel.

Related topics

- [Installing the EK80 system hardware units, page 72](#)
[388697 Wide Band Transceiver \(WBT\) outline dimensions, page 316](#)
[Equipment handling, page 328](#)
[Compass safe distance, page 309](#)

Installing the WBT Power Supply

The power supply provided with the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) is a commercial type custom made for the EK80. A dedicated installation procedure is provided.

Prerequisites

A suitable location for the power supply must be defined prior to installation. If you place the unit on the bridge, observe the compass safe distance.

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks. This includes different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper, a soldering iron, etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

Context

The power supply can be installed in many ways.

- You can mount it on a desktop using the brackets provided with the unit.
- You can mount it on a bulkhead using the optional wall bracket.
- You can mount it using any means available.

These points must all be considered to reduce electrical noise on an EK80 system.

- If you more than one Wide Band Transceiver (WBT), install these in such a way that the transducer cables have the maximum distance to the power and Ethernet cables.
- Ensure maximum physical distance between the transceiver and the power supply.
- Ensure maximum physical distance between each power supply.
- If possible, install the transceivers in a sonar room that is electrically shielded.
- Make sure that all units are properly grounded.



Procedure

- 1 Find a suitable location for the power supply.
- 2 Prepare the location and the necessary tools.
- 3 Observe the installation requirements.
 - a The chosen position must fit the available cable lengths between the power supply, the transceiver and the AC mains power outlet.
 - b If you place the unit on the bridge, observe the compass safe distance.
 - c Make sure that enough space is made available for maintenance purposes.

- d Make sure that adequate ventilation is available to avoid overheating.
- e Make sure that the installation method allows for the physical vibration, movements and forces normally experienced on a vessel.

Note _____

To allow future maintenance, you must mount the unit with its cables and connectors available for easy access.

- 4 Make sure that the chosen location meets the installation requirements.
- 5 Bulkhead installation
 - a Mount the wall bracket using suitable bolts or screws.
 - b Place the power supply in the bracket so that the small lamp is visible.
- 6 Desktop installation
 - a Place the unit in a suitable location.
 - b Position and fasten the unit using the bracket and the mounting screws.
- 7 "Ad hoc" installation
 - a Place the unit in a suitable location (horizontally or vertically).
 - b Position and fasten the unit using any means available.
- 8 Connect the cables.

Note _____

When you connect the cables, make sure that they are all properly secured, and able to withstand the vibration and movements of the vessel.

Related topics

- [Installing the EK80 system hardware units, page 72](#)
- [388697 Wide Band Transceiver \(WBT\) outline dimensions, page 316](#)
- [Equipment handling, page 328](#)
- [Compass safe distance, page 309](#)

Installing the display

A display is a required part of the EK80 system. For best readability, the display must be protected from glare and have the correct height and angle. The display is normally not included with the EK80 system delivery. A generic procedure is provided.

Prerequisites

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks. This includes different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper, a soldering iron, etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

A suitable location for the display must be defined before installation. If you place the unit on the bridge, observe the compass safe distance.

Procedure

- 1 Prepare the location and the necessary tools.
- 2 Observe the installation requirements.
 - a Check the installation requirements provided by the manufacturer.
 - b Position the display so that it is best protected from glare which reduces readability.
 - c Observe the compass safe distance.
 - d Make sure that enough space is made available for maintenance purposes.
 - e Make sure that adequate ventilation is available to avoid overheating.
 - f Make sure that the installation method allows for the physical vibration, movements and forces normally experienced on a vessel.

Note

To allow future maintenance, you must mount the unit with its cables and connectors available for easy access.

- 3 Make sure that the chosen location meets the installation requirements.
- 4 Install the display as described in the applicable documentation provided by the manufacturer.

5 Connect the cables.

Note

When you connect the cables, make sure that they are all properly secured, and able to withstand the vibration and movements of the vessel.

Related topics

[Installing the EK80 system hardware units, page 72](#)

[Equipment handling, page 328](#)

[Compass safe distance, page 309](#)

Installing a commercial computer

The computer can be installed inside a console, inside a suitable cabinet, in a 19" rack or on a desk. Make sure that ample ventilation is provided to avoid overheating.

Prerequisites

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks. This includes different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper, a soldering iron, etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

A suitable location for the computer must be defined prior to installation. Observe the compass safe distance.

Context

For installation of a commercial computer, refer to the manual supplied by the manufacturer.

Note

Make sure that the chosen computer meets the EK80 requirements. The design and construction must allow for marine use, and the computer must be able to withstand the movements and vibrations normally experienced on a vessel. Verify that you have easy access to cables and connectors, and that the computer can be installed in a safe and secure way.

Standard office computers may not be well fitted for maritime use. The motions and vibrations experienced on a vessel may reduce the computer lifetime considerably. While installing a commercial computer, use your common sense to improve the installation method suggested by the manufacturer.

Procedure

- 1 Prepare the location and the necessary tools.
- 2 Observe the installation requirements.
 - a Depending on its physical properties, install the computer inside a console, in a cabinet or 19" rack, or on a desk.
 - b Choose a position to fit the available cable lengths between the computer and the other units it connects to.
 - c Observe the compass safe distance.
 - d Make sure that enough space is made available for maintenance purposes.
 - e Make sure that adequate ventilation is available to avoid overheating.
 - f Make sure that the installation method allows for the physical vibration, movements and forces normally experienced on a vessel.

Note _____

To allow future maintenance, you must mount the unit with its cables and connectors available for easy access.

- 3 Make sure that the chosen location meets the installation requirements.
- 4 Provide ample space around the computer.

You must be able to reach and use the front and rear mounted connectors and on/off switches. It is also important that you allow for easy access to all the computer cables, and enough space for inspection, maintenance and parts replacement. If relevant: Make sure that the space allows you to open the computer for unobstructed access to its internal parts.

Note _____

Make sure that you can access both the rear and front side of the computer after it has been installed.

- 5 Install the computer.
Observe the applicable documentation provided by the manufacturer.
- 6 Connect the cables.

Note _____

When you connect the cables, make sure that they are all properly secured, and able to withstand the vibration and movements of the vessel.

Related topics

[Installing the EK80 system hardware units, page 72](#)

[Equipment handling, page 328](#)

[Compass safe distance, page 309](#)

Installing the Enix Processor Unit

The Processor Unit can be installed inside a console, inside a suitable cabinet, in a 19" rack or on a desk. When mounted on a horizontal foundation, for example inside a cabinet, rack or console, use the bottom plate with the two base rails. These are fitted with shock absorbers.

Prerequisites

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks. This includes different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper, a soldering iron, etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

A suitable location for the Processor Unit must be defined before installation. Observe the compass safe distance.

- A** *The bottom plate is mounted with six bolts through the computer chassis.*
- B** *Each rail provides two holes for mounting to a flat surface.*
- C** *Remove this bolt to release the rail from the bottom plate.*



Context

If you intend to mount the Enix Processor Unit in a 19" rack, you can disregard this procedure. However, you may then wish to remove the bottom plate and shock absorbers as described in this procedure, as these will not be required.

Procedure

- 1 Prepare the location and the necessary tools.
- 2 Observe the installation requirements.
 - a Depending on its physical properties, install the computer inside a console, in a cabinet or 19" rack, or on a desk.
 - b Choose a position to fit the available cable lengths between the computer and the other units it connects to.

- c Observe the compass safe distance.
- d Make sure that enough space is made available for maintenance purposes.
- e Make sure that adequate ventilation is available to avoid overheating.
- f Make sure that the installation method allows for the physical vibration, movements and forces normally experienced on a vessel.

Note _____

To allow future maintenance, you must mount the unit with its cables and connectors available for easy access.

- 3 Make sure that the chosen location meets the installation requirements.
- 4 Provide ample space around the computer.

You must be able to reach and use the front and rear mounted connectors and on/off switches. It is also important that you allow for easy access to all the computer cables, and enough space for inspection, maintenance and parts replacement. If relevant: Make sure that the space allows you to open the computer for unobstructed access to its internal parts.

Note _____

Make sure that you can access both the rear and front side of the computer after it has been installed.

- 5 Install the Processor Unit.
 - a Turn the cabinet upside down, and remove the bottom plate (A) with the shock absorbers.
 - b Observe the four holes in the shock absorbers and the bottom plate (B).
 - c Using the bottom plate as a template, mark the position of the mounting bolts on the foundation.
 - d Mount the bottom plate back on the cabinet.
 - e Disassemble the two base rails from the cabinet by removing the two front Allen bolts (C).
 - f Remove the bolts, lift the cabinet up and forward.
 - g Mount the two base rails on the foundation.
 - h Place the cabinet onto the rails at their rear end.
 - i Press it down.
 - j Secure the cabinet with the two front Allen bolts (C).

6 Connect the cables.

Note _____

When you connect the cables, make sure that they are all properly secured, and able to withstand the vibration and movements of the vessel.

Related topics

[Installing the EK80 system hardware units, page 72](#)

[385609 Processor Unit outline dimensions Enix, page 318](#)

[Equipment handling, page 328](#)

[Compass safe distance, page 309](#)

Installing the Ethernet switch

If you use more than one transceiver, a high capacity Ethernet switch is required. The Ethernet switch is used to connect each transceiver to the computer.

Prerequisites

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks. This includes different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper, a soldering iron, etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

A suitable location for Ethernet switch must be defined prior to installation. If you place the unit on the bridge, observe the compass safe distance.

Procedure

- 1 Prepare the location and the necessary tools.
- 2 Observe the installation requirements.
 - a Check the installation requirements provided by the manufacturer.
 - b Observe the compass safe distance.
 - c Make sure that enough space is made available for maintenance purposes.
 - d Make sure that the installation method allows for the physical vibration, movements and forces normally experienced on a vessel.

Note _____

To allow future maintenance, you must mount the unit with its cables and connectors available for easy access.

- 3 Make sure that the chosen location meets the installation requirements.
- 4 Mount the Ethernet switch as recommended by the manufacturer.
- 5 Connect the cables.

Note _____

When you connect the cables, make sure that they are all properly secured, and able to withstand the vibration and movements of the vessel.

Related topics

[Installing the EK80 system hardware units, page 72](#)

[Equipment handling, page 328](#)

[Compass safe distance, page 309](#)

Mounting the WBT Cabinet

The WBT Cabinet is a customized 19"-inch instrument rack fitted with powerful shock absorbers. The cabinet can contain maximum seven custom drawers, and each of these will hold one Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) and its power supply. An Ethernet switch and a power distributor panel are included the bottom of the cabinet.

Prerequisites

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks. This includes different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper, a soldering iron, etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment. The following specific tools are required for this task:

- Power drill
- Welding equipment

We recommend that you install the WBT Cabinet before you install the WBT Drawers and the transceivers.

Illustration:

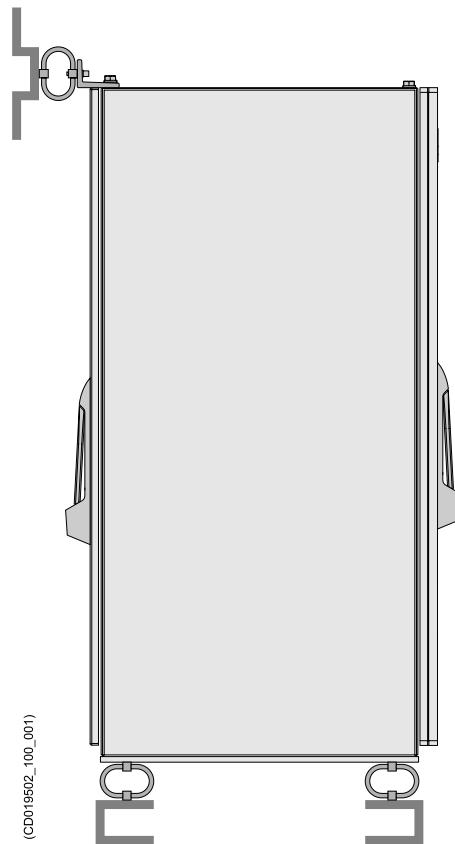
Use bulkhead support bracket(s) to make installation easier. Place the cabinet on "U"-shaped steel profiles to make more room for the cables.

Context

The cabinet is installed using shock absorbers. It is mounted on the deck and secured against a bulkhead. Alternatively, you can place it next to other similar cabinets, and use these for support.

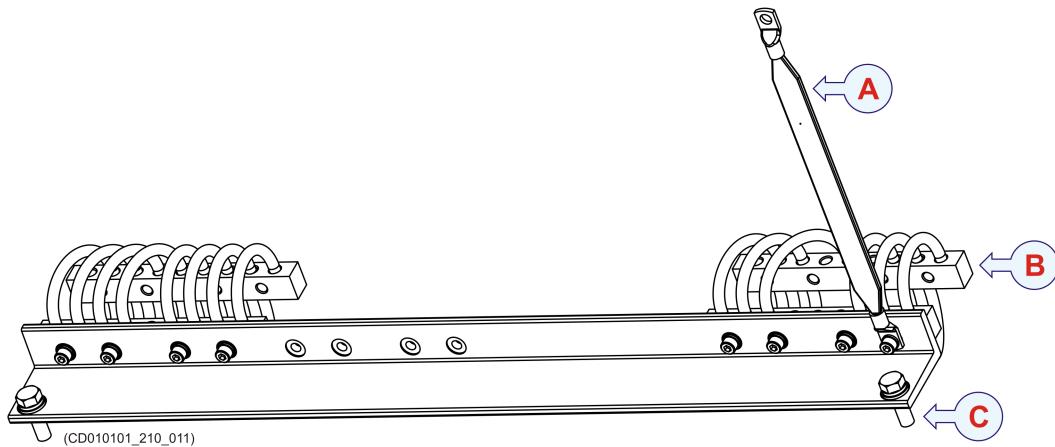
Place the cabinet on "U"-shaped steel profiles to make more room for the cables. Design and install suitable mounting brackets if it is necessary to obtain additional distance from the bulkhead.

The installation of the cabinet must be planned and prepared by the installation shipyard in close cooperation with the end user. Relevant installation drawings with mounting details must be provided by the shipyard.



Caution

Before welding commences, make sure that the room is properly ventilated. Always wear the personal protective equipment. Do not weld in the vicinity of the transceiver unit. Observe and obey the relevant safety instructions.



A Earth strap

B Bolt the shock absorber to the bulkhead.

C Secure the shock absorber assembly to the top of the cabinet.

Cable entry is found at the top and/or bottom of the cabinet.

Note

Ensure maximum physical distance between the transceiver and the power supply. This is important to reduce noise. Place the power supplies on a dedicated drawer at the bottom of the cabinet.

How to install the cables in the WBT Cabinet is described on drawing 444425. The drawing can be downloaded from our website. The drawing is also included on the EK80 USB.

Procedure

1 Prepare the installation of the cabinet.

a Observe the outline dimensions drawing.

The drawing is located in the *Drawing file* chapter in this manual. It can also be downloaded from our website.

- www.kongsberg.com/simrad

Note

The outline dimensions drawing shows the initial size of an empty cabinet. When the cabinet is completed for normal operation, the weight will compress the bottom shock absorbers slightly. You must take this into consideration when you plan the mounting.

- b Determine the location of the unit.
- c Verify that the location meets the sonar room requirements
- d Verify that the location meets the environmental requirements defined for the EK80.
- e Verify that the location is within range of the transducer cables.
- f Make sure that the location offers ample space around the cabinet to allow for cables, maintenance and parts replacement.
- g Determine the installation method.
- h Make all necessary installation drawings.
- i If relevant, design and manufacture bulkhead support bracket(s) and/or "U" shaped steel profiles.

Note

The use of "U" shaped profiles and bulkhead support bracket(s) is optional.

- 2 Mount the "U" shaped profiles.
 - a Design, manufacture and mount the U-shaped steel profiles.
 - b Make sure that the profiles can withstand the full weight of the cabinet.
 - c Make the required mounting holes to accept the bottom frame (with shock absorbers).
 - d Position the profiles on the deck, and mount them using bolts or welds.
- 3 Mount the bottom frame.

The bottom frame is fitted with four shock absorbers. If you have used U-shaped profiles, place the frame on top of these.
- 4 Mount the bulkhead support bracket.
 - a Design and manufacture the bulkhead bracket.
 - b Make the required mounting holes to accept the top shock absorbers.
 - c Position the brackets on the bulkhead, and mount them using bolts or welds.

- 5 Mount the top shock absorber assembly.
 - a Remove the four lifting lugs.
 - b Mount the top shock absorber assembly using two of the same holes.
 - c Use spare bolts to close the remaining lifting lug holes.
- 6 Place cabinet in its correct position on the bottom frame.
 - a Use four bolts through the bottom frame to secure the cabinet.
 - b Mount the top shock absorbers to the bulkhead support bracket(s).
- 7 Fasten the earth strap.

Related topics

[Installing the EK80 system hardware units, page 72](#)

[400930 WBT Cabinet outline dimensions, page 322](#)

[Equipment handling, page 328](#)

[Compass safe distance, page 309](#)

Mounting the drawers in the WBT Cabinet

The WBT Cabinet can contain maximum seven custom drawers. Each drawer will hold one Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) and its power supply. The drawer is mounted in the same way as any other equipment designed for 19" racks using standard tools.

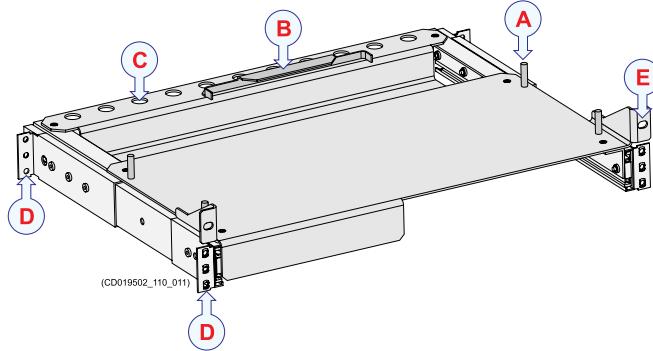
Prerequisites

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks. This includes different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper, a soldering iron, etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

Context

We recommend that you mount all the empty drawers into the WBT Cabinet before you mount the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) unit on each drawer.

- A** Mounting bolts for the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)
- B** Mounting bracket (not used)
- C** Holes for fastening and securing the cables
- D** Mounting bolts for the drawer assembly
- E** Mounting bolts for the drawer



Note

Ensure maximum physical distance between the transceiver and the power supply. This is important to reduce noise. Place the power supplies on a dedicated drawer at the bottom of the cabinet.

How to install the cables in the WBT Cabinet is described on drawing 444425. The drawing can be downloaded from our website. The drawing is also included on the EK80 USB.

Procedure

- 1 Decide where in the cabinet you wish to mount the drawers.
- 2 Mount each drawer using six bolts on each side (**D**).
- 3 Pull out the drawer.
- 4 Remove the bracket (**B**).
- 5 Mount the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) using the bolts provided (**A**).

Related topics

- [Installing the EK80 system hardware units, page 72](#)
- [400930 WBT Cabinet outline dimensions, page 322](#)
- [Equipment handling, page 328](#)
- [Compass safe distance, page 309](#)

Installing the transducer(s)

The installation of the transducer (or transducers) is a key task for successful use of the EK80 system. Not only will you need to penetrate the vessel's hull, you must also to select a physical location for maximum performance and minimum acoustic and electric noise.

Prerequisites

To get a full overview of the installation, you need all relevant vessel drawings. You also need the drawings provided for each transducer.

Context

Necessary information for the installation of each transducer can be found in the end-user documentation provided with the transducer.

End user manuals and source drawings (normally in AutoCad format) can be downloaded from our website.

- www.kongsberg.com/td

Procedure

1 Determine the physical location of the transducer.

The decision must be based on:

- The vessel drawings
- The shape and properties of the hull

Make sure that all possible considerations are made to reduce noise.

2 Based on the shape of the transducer housing, and the mounting devices available, determine the installation method.

3 Design, manufacture and mount the necessary fairing, installation blister, keel box and/or tank that is required to mount the transducer.

4 Design, manufacture and mount the steel conduit for the transducer cable.

5 Unpack the transducer from its transport crate.

6 Position the transducer under the mounting location.

7 Pull the transducer cable up through the steel conduit.

8 Tighten the packing nipple on the cable gland properly to avoid leaks.

9 Mount the transducer.

10 Seal the top of the steel conduit to prevent water leaks.

11 Connect the transducer cable to the transceiver.

12 If your vessel will operate in waters with a lot of marine growth, consider applying a thin layer of anti-fouling paint to the transducer face.

Related topics

[Installing the EK80 system hardware units, page 72](#)

[Equipment handling, page 328](#)

[Compass safe distance, page 309](#)

Cable layout and interconnections

Topics

[Read this first, page 94](#)

[Reducing electrical noise, page 94](#)

[Cable plans, page 96](#)

[List of cables, page 102](#)

[Installing the EK80 cables, page 105](#)

[Connections to specific hardware items, page 118](#)

[Setting up the EK80 system for synchronized operation, page 134](#)

[Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)

[Basic cable requirements, page 174](#)

Read this first

Detailed information about cable specifications, termination and connectors is provided. Unless otherwise specified, all cables are supplied by Kongsberg Maritime as a part of the delivery.

Detailed information about relevant cable specifications, termination and connectors is provided. Each drawing provides additional information, and may, when applicable, include minimum specifications, connector terminations and the required number of cores. Drawings are generally not provided for standard commercial cables. Cables fall into three categories.

- 1 **System cables:** System cables are provided by Kongsberg Maritime as a part of the delivery.
- 2 **Shipyard cables:** Shipyard cables must be provided by the shipyard doing the installation, or the shipowner. The cables must meet the minimum specifications provided in this publication.
- 3 **Commercial cables:** Commercial cables may be provided by Kongsberg Maritime as a part of the delivery. The cables may also be included with third party items that are used with the EK80 system.

All electronic installations and corresponding wiring must be in accordance with the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society.

Note

It is very important that all cables are properly installed and correctly terminated. Observe the relevant regulations and work standards. Always leave enough cable slack close to system units and cabinets to allow for maintenance.

Only skilled and authorized personnel can install the EK80 cables.

Kongsberg Maritime accepts no responsibility for damage to the system, or reduced operational performance, when this is caused by improper wiring.

Before you install or maintain the system cables, make sure that the AC mains circuit breaker for the system is disconnected.

Reducing electrical noise

These points must all be considered to reduce electrical noise on an EK80 system.

Note

The information here must be considered as general advice.

- Place the transducer cables in a metal conduit all the way from the transducer to the transceiver. Terminate the conduit as close to the transducer and transceiver as possible.
- Make sure that the transducer cables are completely separated from other cables, boxes, other potential noise sources.
- Make sure that all units are properly grounded.
- Use shielded cables with correct grounding.
- Separate the cables used by the EK80 system from other cables with high voltages, large currents or transients. Place all high voltage power cables in metal conduits.
- If you more than one Wide Band Transceiver (WBT), install these in such a way that the transducer cables have the maximum distance to the power and Ethernet cables.
- Ensure maximum physical distance between the transceiver and the power supply.
- Ensure maximum physical distance between each power supply.
- If possible, install the transceivers in a sonar room that is electrically shielded.

Cable plans

Topics

[About the cable plans, page 96](#)

[Topside cable plan, page 97](#)

[Sonar room cable plan with one Wide Band Transceiver \(WBT\), page 98](#)

[Sonar room cable plan with two Wide Band Transceivers \(WBT\), page 99](#)

[Sonar room cable plan with WBT Cabinet, page 100](#)

[EC150-3C cable plan, page 100](#)

About the cable plans

Due to its modular design, the EK80 system can be set up in a variety of configurations to suit individual needs for operational frequencies, transducers and functionality. It is not practical to define specific cable plans for all these configurations.

To illustrate the variety of configurations, the following basic cable plans are provided.

- Standard topside setup with the Processor Unit
- Standard transceiver setup with one Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)
- Standard transceiver setup with two Wide Band Transceivers (WBT)
- Standard transceiver setup with a WBT Cabinet.
- Standard transceiver setup with EC150-3C units for acoustic Doppler current profiler (ADCP) functionality.

The Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) used by the EK80 system can be set up to work with maximum four -4- operational frequencies. This means that you can use four single frequency/single beam transducers, two dual frequency transducers, or one split beam transducer.

In order to take advantage of the advanced functionality provided by the EK80 system (size distribution, fish position and echo position), it is normally set up with split beam transducers. This means that one Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) is required for each channel. In this context, the term *channel* is used as a common term to identify the combination of transceiver, transducer and operating frequency.

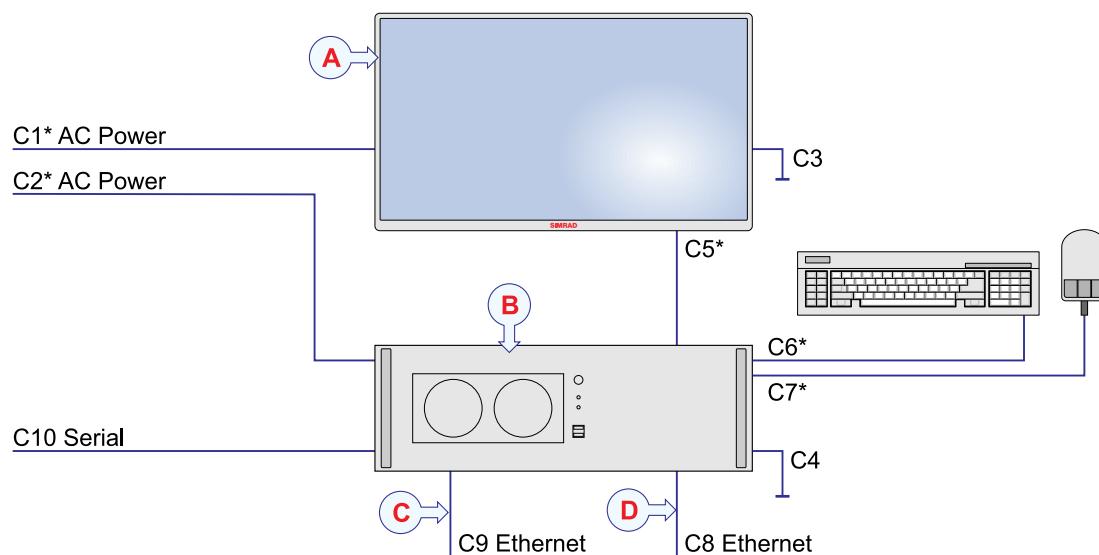
Related topics

[Cable plans, page 96](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Topside cable plan

The topside/bridge cables include those used to connect the computer and the display to each other, to AC mains power, and to external devices. A high capacity Ethernet cable connects the computer to the transceiver.



- A *Display (You can use more than one display on your Processor Unit depending on personal and/or operational preferences.)*
- B *Processor Unit*
- C *One Ethernet cable connects the computer to the local area network (LAN).*
- D *A high capacity Ethernet cable connects the computer to the transceiver.*

Cables identified with an asterisk (*) are system or commercial cables. These cables are provided in the delivery or with the relevant item.

Do not make the connection using the existing local area network (LAN).

Tip _____

Even though only one Ethernet cable is used, we recommend that you install two cables between the Processor Unit and the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).

More than one serial line cable may be required to connect the computer to external devices. To identify these cables, use postfix letters. (C10A, C10B, C10C...).

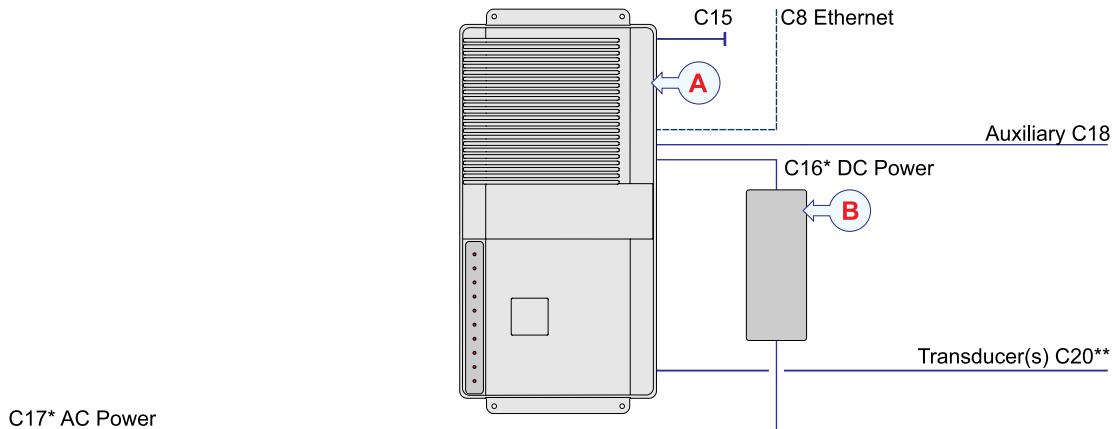
Related topics

[Cable plans, page 96](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Sonar room cable plan with one Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)

The transceiver cables include those used to connect the transceiver(s) to AC mains power and to the transducer(s).



A *Transceiver*

B *Power Supply Unit*

Depending on your operational requirements, one or more Wide Band Transceivers (WBT) can be used in the complete EK80 system. If you use more than one transceiver, a high capacity Ethernet switch is required.

Cables identified with an asterisk (*) are system or commercial cables. These cables are provided in the delivery or with the relevant item. One transducer cable is provided with each transducer.

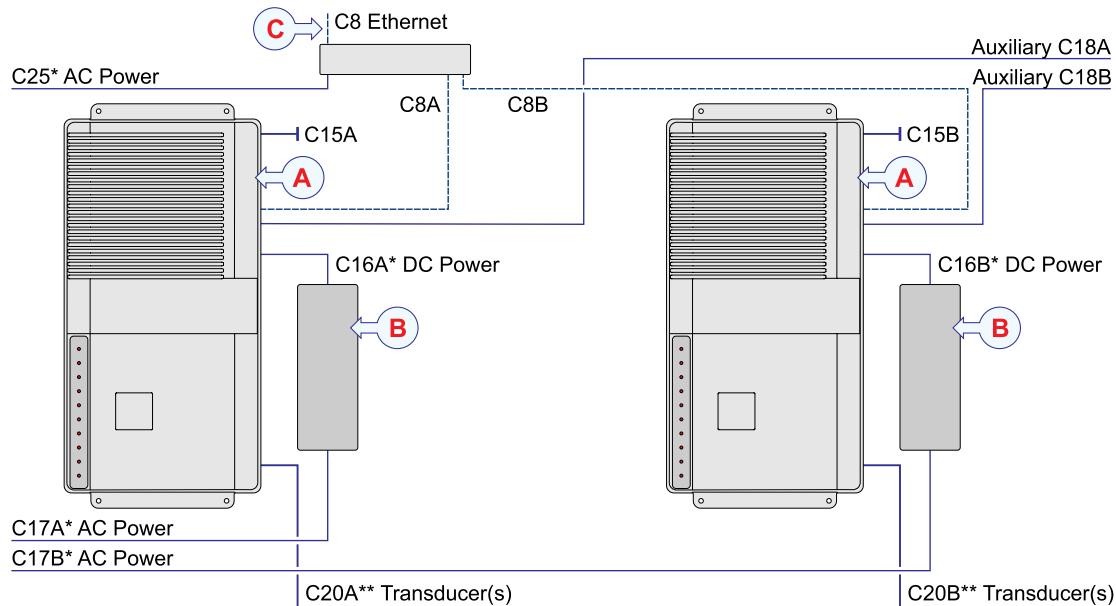
Related topics

[Cable plans, page 96](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Sonar room cable plan with two Wide Band Transceivers (WBT)

The transceiver cables include those used to connect the transceiver(s) to AC mains power and to the transducer(s).



A *Transceiver*

B *Power Supply Unit*

C *Ethernet switch*

Depending on your operational requirements, one or more Wide Band Transceivers (WBT) can be used in the complete EK80 system. If you use more than one transceiver, a high capacity Ethernet switch is required.

Cables identified with an asterisk (*) are system or commercial cables. These cables are provided in the delivery or with the relevant item. One transducer cable is provided with each transducer.

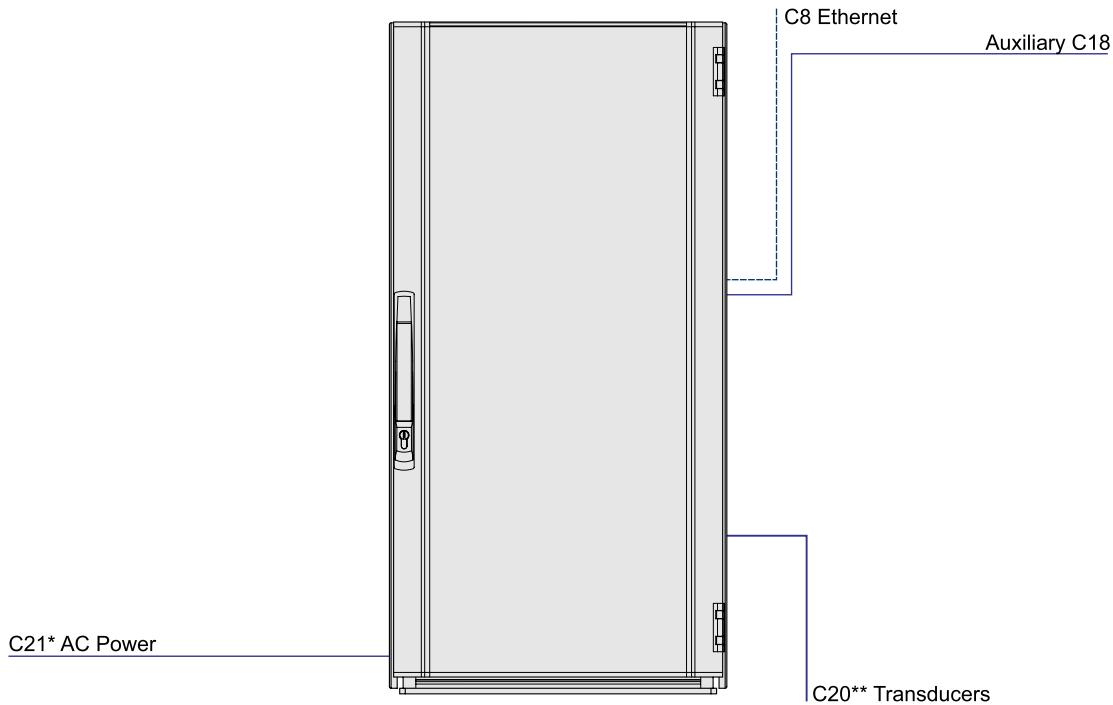
Related topics

[Cable plans, page 96](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Sonar room cable plan with WBT Cabinet

The transceiver cables include those used to connect the transceiver(s) to AC mains power and to the transducer(s).



The WBT Cabinet is provided with a built-in power distributor. Only one power cable is required for connection to AC mains.

The transducer cables (one for each transducer) normally exit the cabinet through the its bottom.

Cables identified with an asterisk (*) are system or commercial cables. These cables are provided in the delivery or with the relevant item. One transducer cable is provided with each transducer.

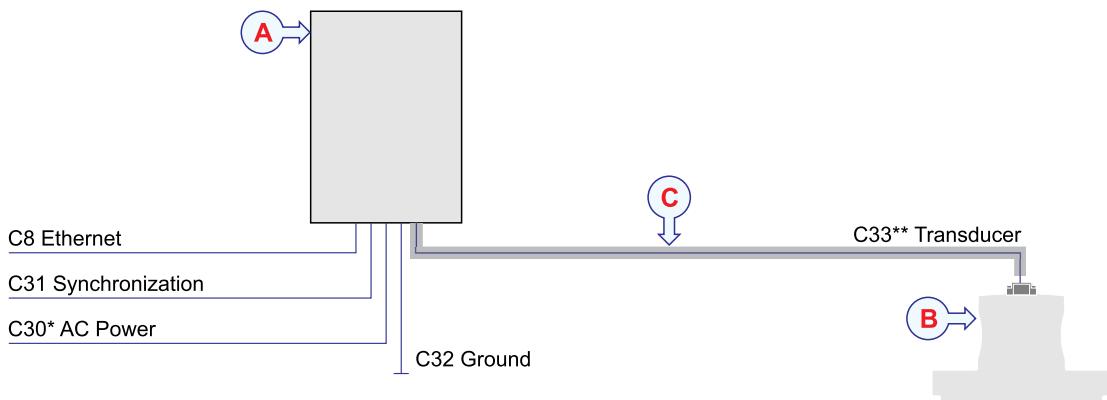
Related topics

[Cable plans, page 96](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

EC150-3C cable plan

The cables are used to connect the Power Supply Unit to the transducer and to the Processor Unit. Synchronization is an optional feature.



- A *Power supply*
- B *Transducer*
- C *Steel conduit*

Comments

Cables identified with an asterisk (*) are system cables. These cables are supplied with the EK80 delivery.

It is very important that a high-quality Ethernet cable is used. You must use CAT-5E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair) quality or better. Using a cable with lower bandwidth capacity will reduce performance.

The transducer cable is 40 metres long. The cable can not be extended. The cable can be cut to match the installation requirements. Make sure that the cable length is minimum 15 metres.

Related topics

[Cable plans, page 96](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

List of cables

A set of cables is required to connect the system units to each other, and to the relevant power source(s). Additional cables are required to connect the EK80 system to peripheral devices.

Cables identified with an asterisk (*) are system or commercial cables. These cables are provided in the delivery or with the relevant item. One transducer cable is provided with each transducer.

Topside cables

Cable	Type	From/To	Minimum requirements
C1*	AC Power cable	From display to AC power outlet	2 x 1.5 mm ² + 1.5 mm ² Ground
C2*	AC Power cable	From computer to AC power outlet	2 x 1.5 mm ² + 1.5 mm ² Ground
C3	Ground cable	From display to vessel ground	1 x 6 mm ²
C4	Ground cable	From computer to vessel ground	1 x 6 mm ²
C5*	Video cable	From computer to display	
	This is a commercial cable. The display cable is often physically attached to the display, and terminated in the “computer end” with a male connector. If the cable is not attached, it is normally provided with the display.		
C6*	Computer cable	From computer to keyboard	
C7*	Computer cable	From computer to mouse (or other pointing device)	
C8	Ethernet cable	From computer to transceiver	CAT5-E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair)
C9	Ethernet cable	From computer to local area network (LAN)	CAT5-E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair)
C10	Serial cable	From computer to external device(s)	2 x 4 x 0.5 mm ²
C11–14	Not used		

Sonar room cables

Cable	Type	From/To	Minimum requirements
C8	Ethernet cable	From computer to transceiver	CAT5-E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair)
C15	Ground cable	From transceiver to vessel ground	1 x 6 mm ²
C16*	DC Power cable	From power supply unit to transceiver	
The DC power cable from the WBT power supply to the transceiver is provided with the power supply. The Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) can be powered by a large capacity battery. The battery must be placed close to the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) to minimize power loss in the cable.			

Cable	Type	From/To	Minimum requirements
C17*	DC Power cable	From power supply unit to AC power outlet	2 x 1.5 mm ² + 1.5 mm ² Ground
C18	Synchronization cable	From Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) AUXILIARY socket to external synchronisation system.	4 x 0.5 mm ²
	If you use more than one Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) in your EK80 system, all synchronization input signals to the AUXILIARY ports must be provided by the same source.		
C19	Not used		
C20**	Transducer cable	From transceiver to transducer	
	The transducer cable is provided with the transducer.		
C21*	AC Power cable	From WBT Cabinet to AC power outlet	2 x 1.5 mm ² + 1.5 mm ² Ground
C22-24	Not used		
C25*	AC Power cable	From Ethernet switch to AC power outlet	2 x 1.5 mm ² + 1.5 mm ² Ground
	The power cable on the Ethernet switch may comprise a separate power supply.		
C26-29	Not used		

EC150-3C cables

Cable	Type	From/To	Minimum requirements
C8	Ethernet cable	From power supply unit to computer	CAT5-E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair)
	It is very important that a high-quality Ethernet cable is used. You must use CAT-5E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair) quality or better. Using a cable with lower bandwidth capacity will reduce performance.		
C30*	AC Power cable	From power supply unit to AC power outlet	2 x 1.5 mm ² + 1.5 mm ² Ground
C31	Synchronization cable	From Power Supply Unit to synchronization system	2 x 2 x 0.5 mm ²
	Synchronization is an optional feature. We strongly recommend that each signal cable is equipped with galvanic isolation. Galvanic isolation reduces the risk of noise.		
C32	Ground cable	From Power Supply Unit to vessel ground	1 x 6 mm ²
C33**	Transducer cable	From Power Supply Unit to transducer	
	The transducer cable is provided with the transducer. The transducer cable enters the Power Supply Unit through the cable gland at the bottom of the cabinet. The transducer cable is 40 metres long. The cable can not be extended. The cable can be cut to match the installation requirements. Make sure that the cable length is minimum 15 metres.		

Comments

- Do not make the connection using the existing local area network (LAN).

- The grounding cable for the WBT Cabinet is not listed. The grounding cable is a special braided wire that is physically connected to the cabinet. It is connected to vessel ground by means of the cabinet's shock absorbers.
- More than one serial line cable may be required to connect the computer to external devices. To identify these cables, use postfix letters. (C10A, C10B, C10C...).
- The EK80 system is often a part of a project delivery. For such deliveries, specific project cable drawings are established to show all the main cables, and how the various products are connected. In such project cable drawings, the EK80 system cables may be identified as **EK80/Cx**.

Installing the EK80 cables

Topics

- [Prerequisites for cable installation, page 105](#)
- [Installing the topside cables, page 106](#)
- [Installing the transceiver cables, page 108](#)
- [Processor Unit rear connectors, page 110](#)
- [Wide Band Transceiver \(WBT\) connectors, page 112](#)
- [Using a steel conduit to protect the transducer cable, page 113](#)
- [Splicing the transducer cable, page 115](#)

Prerequisites for cable installation

Correct wiring is crucial for the operational performance of the EK80 system. Electrical connections can only be made by skilled personnel (ship electricians, technicians or engineers). The installation shipyard must prepare detailed drawings of the electrical system, and identify each cable. Observe the basic cable requirements.

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for cable installation tasks. This includes different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper, a soldering iron, etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment. Depending on the tasks at hand, additional tools may be required.

Refer to the cable plans and the list of cables. Detailed information about cable specifications, termination and connectors are provided in the relevant cable drawings. Unless otherwise specified, all cables are supplied with the EK80 delivery. In order to ease the access for maintenance purposes, and to allow for vibration, make sure that some slack is provided for each cable.

Note

All electronic installations and corresponding wiring must be in accordance with the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society.

Only skilled and authorized personnel can install the EK80 cables.

Kongsberg Maritime will not accept any responsibility for errors, malfunctions or damage to system or personnel caused by improper wiring.

Related topics

[Installing the EK80 cables, page 105](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Installing the topside cables

The topside/bridge cables include those used to connect the computer and the display to each other, to AC mains power, and to external devices. A high capacity Ethernet cable connects the computer to the transceiver.

Procedure

- 1 Connect the power cables.
 - a Connect the power cable from the display to the AC power outlet. (C1)
 - b Connect the power cable from the computer to the AC power outlet. (C2)

Standard commercial AC mains cables are used. Each cable is supplied with the relevant unit. The typical cable length is between 1,5 and 2 meters. If this is too short you must use an extension cable (not recommended), mount a new power outlet within range, or make your own power cable with sufficient length.

For more information, see the cable details:

 - [AC power cable using IEC C13 inline socket, page 144](#)
- 2 Connect the ground cables.
 - a If applicable, connect the ground cable from the display to vessel ground. (C3)
 - b Connect the ground cable from the computer to vessel ground. (C4)

These cables must be provided by the installation shipyard. For more information, see the cable details:

 - [Ground cable, page 146](#)
- 3 Connect the video cable from the computer to the display. (C5)

The display cable is often physically attached to the display, and terminated in the “computer end” with a male connector. If the cable is not attached, it is normally provided with the display.

The graphic adapter on the rear side of the Processor Unit provides two DVI connectors, one for HDMI and two for Mini DisplayPort. Choose the connector that fits your display cable.

Keep the display cable as short as possible. If the cable is too long, it may pick up electric noise, and this will reduce the image quality.

For more information, see the cable details:

 - [Processor Unit graphic adapter, page 120](#)

To learn more about the various video standards, explore these Wikipedia pages.

- [DVI](#)
- [HDMI](#)
- [DisplayPort](#)

- 4 Connect the cable from the computer to the keyboard. (C6)
- 5 Connect the cable from the computer to the mouse (or other pointing device). (C7)
- 6 Connect the Ethernet cable from the computer to the transceiver. (C8)

Note _____

It is very important that a high-quality Ethernet cable is used. You must use CAT-5E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair) quality or better. Using a cable with lower bandwidth capacity will reduce performance. Do not make the connection using the existing local area network (LAN).

Depending on your operational requirements, one or more Wide Band Transceivers (WBT) can be used in the complete EK80 system. If you use more than one transceiver, a high capacity Ethernet switch is required.

For more information, see the cable details:

- [RJ45 High speed Ethernet cable \(1000Base-t\), page 154](#)

- 7 Connect the Ethernet cable from the computer to the local area network (LAN). (C9)

For more information, see the cable details:

- [RJ45 High speed Ethernet cable \(1000Base-t\), page 154](#)

- 8 Connect the serial cables from the computer to the relevant external devices. (C10)

For more information, see the cable details:

- [Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)

- 9 If applicable, connect the signal cable from the Processor Unit to the synchronization system. (C10)

For more information, see the cable details:

- [K-Sync interface to generic RS-232 synchronization input, page 155](#)

- [Simrad TU40 interface to generic RS-232 synchronization input, page 158](#)

Related topics

[Installing the EK80 cables, page 105](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Installing the transceiver cables

The transceiver cables include those used to connect the EK80 units to AC mains power, as well as the control cables between the units. A high capacity Ethernet cable connects the topside computer to the transceiver.

Procedure

1 Connect the power cables.

If a WBT Cabinet is used:

- a Connect the power cable from the WBT Cabinet to the AC power outlet. (C21)
- b Verify that each Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) is connected to the power distributor at the bottom of the cabinet.

If a WBT Cabinet is *not* used:

- a Connect the power cable from each power supply unit to the relevant transceiver. (C16)
- b Connect the power cable from each power supply unit to the AC power outlets. (C17)

Standard commercial AC mains cables are used. Each cable is supplied with the relevant unit. The typical cable length is between 1,5 and 2 meters. If this is too short you must use an extension cable (not recommended), mount a new power outlet within range, or make your own power cable with sufficient length.

For more information, see the cable details:

- [AC power cable using IEC C13 inline socket, page 144](#)

2 Connect the ground cables.

If a WBT Cabinet is used:

- a Verify that ground strap from the WBT Cabinet to vessel ground is secured.
- b Verify that each Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) is grounded inside the WBT Cabinet.

If a WBT Cabinet is *not* used:

- a Connect the ground cable from each transceiver to vessel ground. (C15)

This cable must be provided by the installation shipyard. For more information, see the cable details:

- [Ground cable, page 146](#)

- 3 If you wish to use the synchronization method offered by the **AUXILIARY** socket on the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT), make the necessary connection. (C18)
For more information, see the cable details:
 - [Synchronizing the EK80 system by means of the Auxiliary port, page 140](#)
- 4 Connect the transducer cables from each transducer to the relevant transceiver.

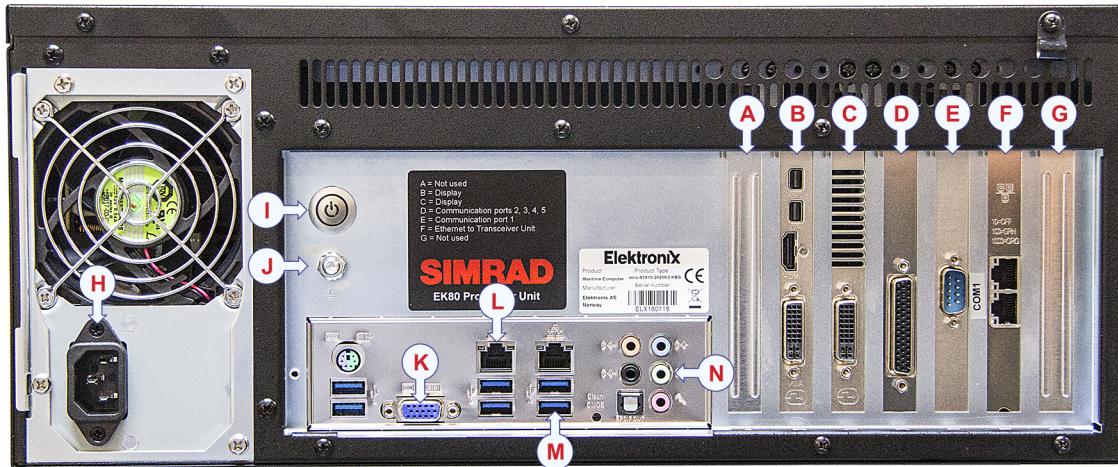
Related topics

[Installing the EK80 cables, page 105](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Processor Unit rear connectors

The rear panel on the Processor Unit holds connectors for the various EK80 cables. Additional connectors are provided on the front panel. These are not used.



A Not used

B Video cable: From computer to display (C5)

This is a commercial cable. The display cable is often physically attached to the display, and terminated in the “computer end” with a male connector. If the cable is not attached, it is normally provided with the display.

If you need to use a DVI-to-SVGA adapter to connect your display, you must use the left DVI-I output. This is the only output that supports the SVGA signals.

C Video cable

D Serial cables: From computer to external device(s) (C10)

E Serial cables: From computer to external device(s) (C10)

F Ethernet cable: From computer to transceiver (C8)

Only the top Ethernet socket is used to communicate with the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).

It is very important that a high-quality Ethernet cable is used. You must use CAT-5E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair) quality or better. Using a cable with lower bandwidth capacity will reduce performance. Do not make the connection using the existing local area network (LAN).

G Not used

H AC Power cable: From Processor Unit to uninterruptible power supply (UPS) (C2)

I Power On/Off

J Ground cable: From computer to vessel ground (C4)

K Not used

- L** Ethernet cable: From computer to local area network (LAN) (C9)
If you wish to connect the Processor Unit to the ship's local area network, use the left Ethernet socket on the connection panel. Do not use the adapter in Slot F.
- M** USB (Universal Serial Bus) sockets
From computer to keyboard (C6)
From computer to mouse (or other pointing device) (C7)
- N** Audio cable: Not used

Related topics

[Installing the EK80 cables, page 105](#)
[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) connectors

All connectors for the system cables are located on the side panel on the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).



- A** Ground cable: From transceiver to vessel ground (C15)
- B** Transducer cable: From transceiver to transducer (C20)
- C** Ethernet cable: From transceiver to computer (C8)
- D** DC Power cable: From transceiver to power supply unit (C16)
- E** Auxiliary connector for synchronization (Optional)

The Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) can be powered by a large capacity battery. The battery must be placed close to the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) to minimize power loss in the cable.

Related topics

- [Installing the EK80 cables, page 105](#)
- [Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Using a steel conduit to protect the transducer cable

A steel conduit must be used to protect the transducer cable. The steel conduit must preferably be straight. Start the conduit immediately above the transducer, and terminate it well above the water line.

It is strongly recommended to lay a steel conduit from the cable gland above the transducer to the transceiver, and to pull the transducer cable through this conduit. The conduit serves two purposes. It will protect the cable, and shield it from electric noise. Depending on how the steel conduit is terminated over the transducer, it may also secure the watertight integrity of the vessel.

There are several reasons for this.

- It will make it easier at a later stage to replace the transducer.
- It will protect the cables.
- Noise and interference from other electrical equipment is greatly reduced.
- The risk of flooding is greatly reduced when the steel conduit is terminated above the water line.

With a steel conduit the installation will satisfy the European Union regulations for electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) interference. Without a steel conduit, there is a risk of reduced performance.

Steel conduit quality and shielding

The steel conduit must be unbroken and watertight from the transducer to above the water line. From there, the cable can be pulled further, or a junction box can be installed to facilitate further connections.

Note

The steel conduit must act as a continuous electrical screen all the way.

If two or more transducers are installed close to each other it is possible to pull their cables in the same steel conduit, provided the conduit diameter is increased accordingly. However, for easy replacement it is recommended that each transducer has its own steel conduit.

Steel conduit minimum dimensions

The dimensions of the steel conduit must be specified and/or verified by the relevant maritime authority and/or classification society. The minimum dimensions are:

- **Inside diameter:** 35 mm
- **Wall thickness:**
 - Galvanized: 4.5 mm
 - Not galvanized: 6 mm

Related topics

[Installing the EK80 cables, page 105](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Splicing the transducer cable

If you need to extend the transducer cable, you must splice it correctly. This is very important, as any splice is very vulnerable for noise.

Cable can be spliced using two different methods:

- Splicing using a grounded junction box
- Splicing using a junction box that is isolated from vessel's ground

The following items are required.

- A metal junction box with cable glands designed for electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). The junction box must contain a suitable terminal block. The terminal block must provide solid fastening of the cable ends as well as sufficient insulation between the wires.
- The necessary length of transducer cable.

The cable between the junction box and the transceiver must be supplied by Kongsberg Maritime, and this must be the same type as used on the transducer.

Electrical installations can only be done by certified electricians. All necessary tools and instruments required must be available. The installation shipyard must prepare detailed drawings of the electrical system, and identify each cable.

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks. This includes different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper, a soldering iron, etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

Note

Do not solder the wires together using only electrical tape for insulation. This will result in electrical noise and reduced operational performance.

Topics

[Splicing the cable using a junction box isolated from vessel's ground, page 115](#)

[Splicing the cable using a grounded junction box, page 116](#)

Splicing the cable using a junction box isolated from vessel's ground

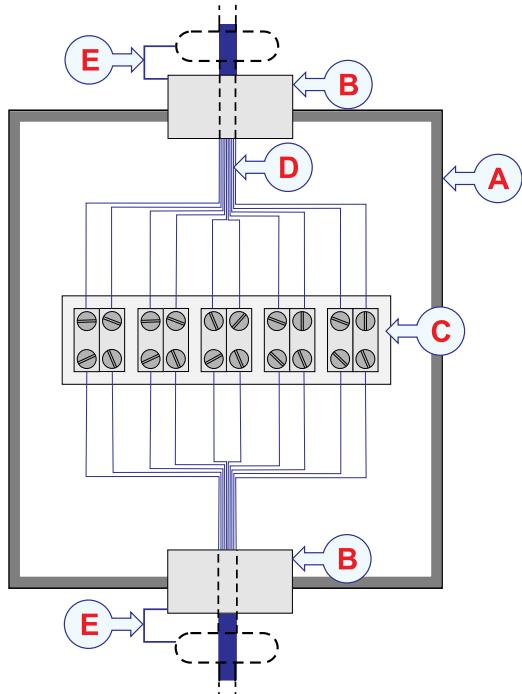
Do not solder the wires together using only electrical tape for insulation. This will result in electrical noise and reduced operational performance.

Do not connect the cable screen to vessel ground.

- A** The junction box is isolated from vessel ground.
- B** Cable gland
- C** Terminal block
- D** Cable
- E** Cable screen (*Do not connect the cable screen to vessel ground.*)

Procedure

- 1 Mount the junction box in a suitable location.
- 2 Terminate the steel conduits containing the transducer cable as close to the junction box as possible.
- 3 Make sure that the junction box chassis is not connected to vessel ground.
Use additional insulation if this is necessary to isolate the junction box completely.
- 4 Remove the insulation from the transducer cable. Connect the individual wires to the terminal block.
- 5 Remove the insulation from the extension cable. Connect the individual wires to the terminal block.
- 6 Make sure that you have connected the wires 1:1, and that the colours match.
- 7 Connect the cable screens to the cable glands in the junction box.



Related topics

- [Splicing the transducer cable, page 115](#)
[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

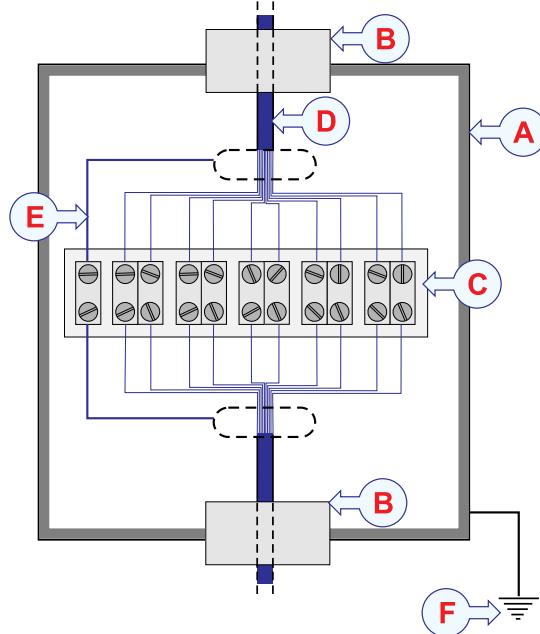
Splicing the cable using a grounded junction box

Do not solder the wires together using only electrical tape for insulation. This will result in electrical noise and reduced operational performance.

- A** Junction box
- B** Cable gland
- C** Terminal block
- D** Cable
- E** Cable screen (*Do not connect the cable screen to vessel ground.*)
- F** The junction box may be connected to vessel ground.

Procedure

- 1 Mount the junction box in a suitable location.
 - 2 Terminate the steel conduit containing the transducer cable to the junction box housing, or as close to the junction box as possible.
 - 3 Feed the cables through the cable glands.
 - 4 Remove the insulation from the transducer cable. Connect the individual wires to the terminal block.
 - 5 Remove the insulation from the extension cable. Connect the individual wires to the terminal block.
 - 6 Make sure that you have connected the wires 1:1, and that the colours match.
 - 7 Connect the screens from both cables together.
 - 8 Make sure that the cable screens do not have any electrical connection to the junction box housing or the cable gland.
- If necessary, insulate the screens.



Related topics

- [Splicing the transducer cable, page 115](#)
- [Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Connections to specific hardware items

Topics

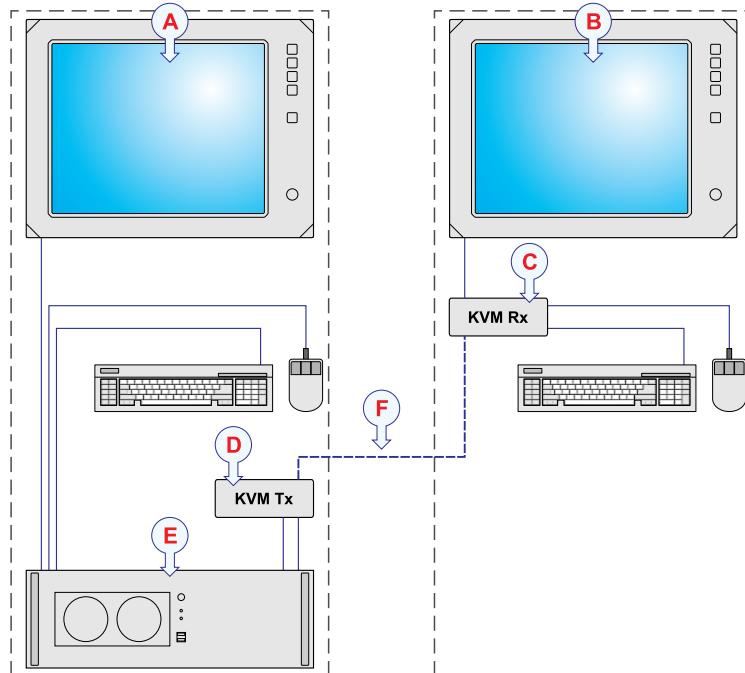
- [KVM \(Keyboard Video Mouse\) principle for a remote operating position, page 118](#)
- [Processor Unit graphic adapter, page 120](#)
- [Processor Unit serial adapter, page 122](#)
- [Serial line splitter Øverland UPC-3005, page 126](#)
- [Serial line splitter Øverland UPC-5000P, page 130](#)

KVM (Keyboard Video Mouse) principle for a remote operating position

The Black Box DKM system offers a flexible and modular KVM extension system that allows you to extend video, keyboard and mouse long distances from the host computer.

- A Local user**
- B Remote user**
- C KVM Receiver**
- D KVM Transmitter**
- E Computer**
- F The communication between the two operating positions is made using an Ethernet cable.**

The KVM (Keyboard Video Mouse) technology offers a simple way to remote control the EK80 system from a secondary position. In a typical situation, KVM units allow you to use the EK80 system from the bridge even though the computer and main operating station is located in a laboratory or instrument room several decks below.



The communication between the two operating positions is made using an Ethernet cable. It is very important that a high-quality Ethernet cable is used. You must use CAT-5E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair) quality or better. The maximum length of the

Ethernet cable between the KVM units is specified by the KVM manufacturer. Unless otherwise specified, this cable must be provided by the installation shipyard.

Note

Unless specified in a contract, a KVM (Keyboard Video Mouse) system is not included in the standard EK80 delivery. These are commercial items that can be purchased locally.

KVM Modular housing

Each KVM Transmitter and Receiver is provided as a printed circuit board, and these must be placed in a modular housing unit. Depending on type, each housing unit can accept two or more circuit boards. The housing unit contains an integrated power supply. For redundancy purposes it will also operate from an external 5VDC power supply. The housing unit can be installed on a desktop, on the bulkhead or in a 19" rack using dedicated adapters.



KVM Modular Receiver board

Each KVM Modular Receiver board is mounted in a dedicated housing unit at the remote operating position. The receiver distributes the video signal to the display, and allows you to connect a keyboard and a mouse.

KVM Modular Transmitter board

Each KVM Modular Transmitter board is mounted in a dedicated housing unit close to the EK80 Processor Unit. The transmitter accepts the video signal from the Processor Unit. It also connects with a USB cable to provide keyboard and mouse functionality to the remote position. Each transmitter can be connected to one receiver.

More information

For more information, refer to the end-user documentation provided by the manufacturer.

Related topics

[Cable plans, page 96](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Processor Unit graphic adapter

The graphic adapter used by the Enix Processor Unit is the ER93F manufactured by TUL Embedded.

Description

The manufacturer's website offers the following description of the ER39F graphic adapter.

The ER93F Graphic Card is provided with two DVI, two Mini DP and one HDMI port, allowing system customers to implement multi-display output without additional video converters or splitters. The graphic card's complete range of output ports is perfect for developing new system products or upgrading an existing product. The ER93F is particularly suitable for upgrading existing digital signage equipment or arcade machine. Apart from the variety of output ports, the two sets of Mini DP and DVI outputs allow old systems to be upgraded directly to multi-display solutions.

The ER93F Graphic Card uses the embedded E6760 graphics chip from AMD and incorporates 128-bit 1GB GDDR5 memory in MCM BGA packaging. Industrial-grade passive electronic components are used throughout the entire card and it has been tested between -20 ~ 55°C to ensure ideal system compatibility and reliability. For industrial and automation industry customers, this resolves any doubt about compatibility and stability on production selection and system configuration.

www.tulembedded.com, March 2015

- **Manufacturer:** TUL Embedded
- **Manufacturer's website:** <http://www.tulembedded.com>

Important

Keep the display cable as short as possible. If the cable is too long, it may pick up electric noise, and this will reduce the image quality.



*(Photo downloaded from
www.tulembedded.com, 2015)*

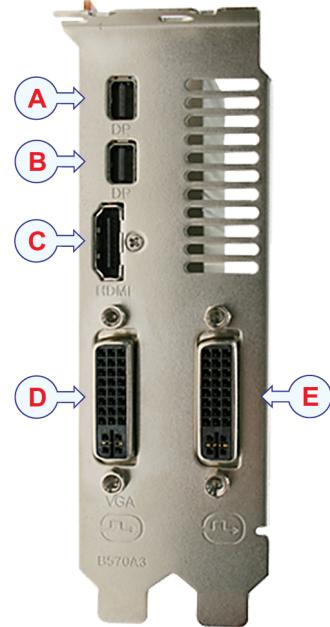
Graphic output formats

The outputs from the graphic adapters are positioned as follows:

- A** Mini DisplayPort output
- B** Mini DisplayPort output
- C** HDMI output
- D** DVI-I output
- E** DVI-D output

Note

The two DVI outputs are not identical. If you wish to connect a standard VGA display using a DVI-to-VGA adapter, you must use the left output (D).



(Photo downloaded from
www.tulembedded.com,
2015)

Graphic output resolutions

The following output resolutions are provided.

- **Mini DisplayPort:** Maximum resolution 2560 x 1600 px
- **HDMI:** Maximum resolution 1920 x 1200 px
- **DVI-I/D:** Maximum resolution 2560 x 1600 px
- **VGA (using adapter):** Maximum resolution 2048 x 1536 px

Tip

To learn more about the various video standards, explore these Wikipedia pages.

- [DVI](#)
- [HDMI](#)
- [DisplayPort](#)

Related topics

[Cable plans, page 96](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Processor Unit serial adapter

The Moxa CP114EL-I adapter is used in the Processor Unit to provide serial communication.

Topics

- [Moxa CP114EL-I overview, page 122](#)
- [Moxa CP114EL-I connectors, page 123](#)
- [Setting up the Moxa CP114EL-I serial ports, page 124](#)

Moxa CP114EL-I overview

The Processor Unit is equipped with a Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter board. The serial adapter offers four serial ports.

The Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter supports RS-232, RS-422 and RS-485 (both 2 and 4-wire). The connections to the board are made using a converter cable with four 9-pin male D-subminiature connectors. The converter cable is supplied with the Processor Unit.

- **Manufacturer:** Moxa
- **Manufacturer's website:** <https://www.moxa.com>



Serial line support

The serial adapter supports the following interface formats.

- **Port 1:** RS-232 / RS-422 / RS-485
- **Port 2:** RS-232 / RS-422 / RS-485
- **Port 3:** RS-232 / RS-422 / RS-485
- **Port 4:** RS-232 / RS-422 / RS-485

In order to set up the serial ports to match your interface requirements, use the dedicated software utility in the device driver. There are neither jumpers nor DIP switches on the circuit board.

Related topics

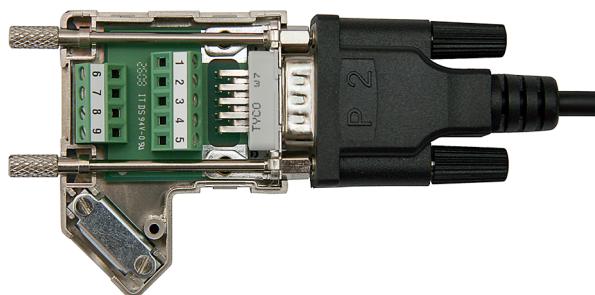
- [Cable plans, page 96](#)
- [Processor Unit serial adapter, page 122](#)
- [Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Moxa CP114EL-I connectors

The serial lines are provided as a large D-Subminiature connector on the rear side of the computer.

Adapter

A dedicated adapter cable is provided with the EK80 delivery. The adapter splits the large circuit board connector to four 9-pin D-Subminiature connectors. To make the individual connections easier, 9-pin D-Subminiature connectors with screw terminals are included in the delivery. Nuts to establish firm connections are also provided.



Pin configuration

Moxa CP114EL-I connectors / Adapter cable				
Pin	RS-232	RS-422	RS-485 (4-wire)	RS-485 (2-wire)
1	DCD	TXD-(A)	TXD-(A)	
2	RxD	TXD+(B)	TXD+(B)	
3	TxD	RXD+(B)	RXD+(B)	Data-(B)
4	DTR	RXD-(A)	RXD-(A)	Data-(A)
5	Ground	Ground	Ground	Ground
6	DSR	-	-	-
7	RTS	-	-	-
8	CTS	-	-	-
9		-	-	-

Related topics

[Cable plans, page 96](#)

[Processor Unit serial adapter, page 122](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Setting up the Moxa CP114EL-I serial ports

The interface ports provided by the **Moxa CP114EL-I** serial adapter board are configured using a dedicated driver application in the operating system.

Prerequisites

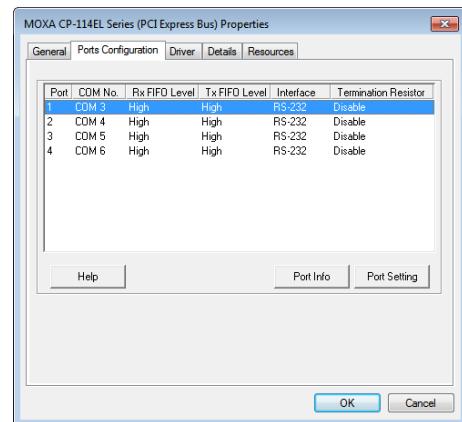
This procedure is made for the Microsoft® Windows® 7 operating system. It is assumed that you are familiar with this operating system. Operation in Microsoft® Windows® 10 is very similar.

Context

As long as you do not change the Processor Unit to another computer, or replace the serial adapter in your Processor Unit, you will only need to do this once.

Note

This information is intended for certified maintenance technicians and service engineers from Kongsberg Maritime, or from a certified dealer, distributor or agent. It is assumed that you are familiar with the Windows® operating systems, computer technology, and interface principles. We strongly advise our end users not to alter the parameters described.



Procedure

- 1 Select Start→Control Panel→System.
- 2 On the left side, select **Device Manager**.
- 3 In the **Device Manager** dialog box:
 - a Expand the **Multi-port serial adapters** option.
 - b Double-click **Moxa CP114EL Series (PCI Express Bus)** to open the configuration utility.
 - c Observe that the dedicated properties dialog box opens.
- 4 Open tab **Ports Configuration**, and select the serial port you wish to configure.
- 5 Select **Port Setting** to open the configuration dialog box

- 6 Set up the interface parameters for the chosen port to suit your preferences.

Tip _____

*Unless you are familiar with interface parameters offered, change only the **Interface** parameter to the required format. Leave the other settings with their default values.*

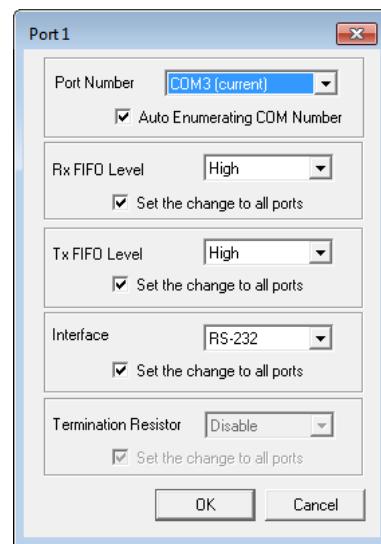
- 7 Click **OK** repeatedly to save your settings and exit the utility.

Related topics

[Cable plans, page 96](#)

[Processor Unit serial adapter, page 122](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)



Serial line splitter Øverland UPC-3005

On large installations with many hydroacoustic systems, these often require the same navigational information from a single sensor. Information such as current depth or speed is provided on serial format. One or more serial line splitters can be used to distribute the information from a single sensor to several different recipients.

The Øverland UPC-3005 is a serial line splitter with one input and eight outputs.

Topics

[UPC-3005 Serial line splitter description, page 126](#)

[UPC-3005 Technical specifications, page 127](#)

[UPC-3005 Connections, page 128](#)

[UPC-3005 Dimensions, page 129](#)

UPC-3005 Serial line splitter description

The Øverland UPC-3005 is a serial line splitter with one input and eight outputs.

UPC 3005 is a serial line splitter with 1 signal input, 3 x RS-232 and 5 x RS-422 outputs.

The powersupply and both signal inputs are galvanic isolated from the outputs.

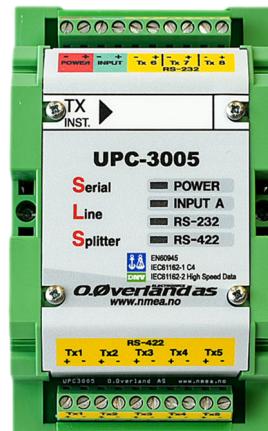
All outputs are Short Circuit Protected.

Information from the manufacturer's website, copied January 2017

The serial line splitter is fitted with a DIN rail for easy mounting and replacement.

Note

The serial line splitter requires a dedicated power supply providing 15 to 30 VDC.



For more information about this serial line splitter, consult the manufacturer's website.

- **Manufacturer:** Øverland
- **Manufacturer's website:** <http://www.overland.no>

Related topics

[Serial line splitter Øverland UPC-3005, page 126](#)

[Cable plans, page 96](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

UPC-3005 Technical specifications

The Øverland UPC-3005 serial line splitter offers one input and eight RS-232 and RS-422 outputs.

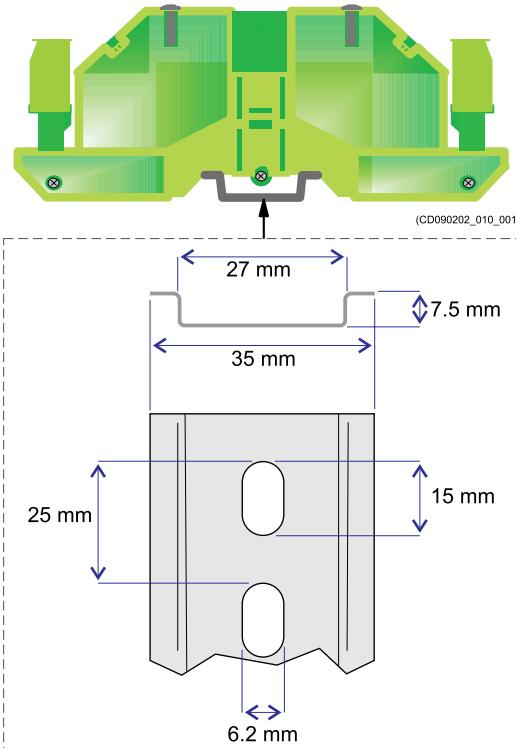
- **Power requirements:** +15 - 30 VDC (2 W)
- **Input:** NMEA0183, RS-232, RS422, RS484, Current loop
- **Outputs:**
 - 5 x RS-422, (Maximum 50 mA)
 - 3 x RS-232

All outputs from the serial line splitter are short circuit protected.

- **Installation:** The serial line splitter is fitted with a DIN rail for easy mounting and replacement.
- **Outline dimensions:**
 - Length: 130 mm
 - Width: 80 mm
 - Height: 50 mm

Note _____

This information was copied from the manufacturer's documentation. The technical specifications may be changed without prior notice. To ensure that your information is correct, always consult the manufacturer's own documents.



Related topics

[Serial line splitter Øverland UPC-3005, page 126](#)

[Cable plans, page 96](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

UPC-3005 Connections

The Øverland UPC-3005 serial line splitter offers one input and eight RS-232 and RS-422 outputs. The serial line splitter requires a dedicated power supply providing 15 to 30 VDC.

- A** Power requirements: +15 - 30 VDC
- B** Input
- C** Outputs: 3 x RS-232
- D** Outputs: 5 x RS-422

Note

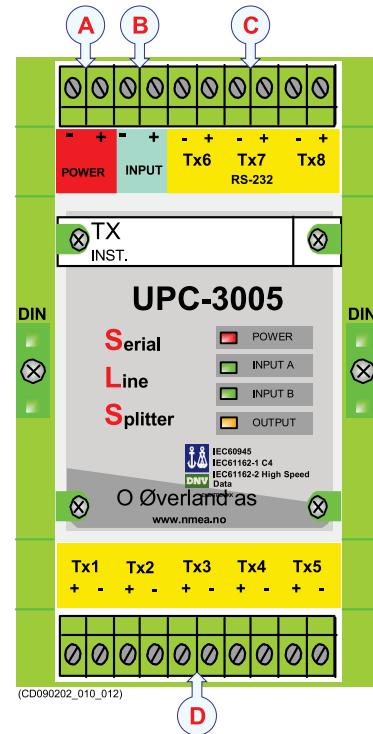
This information was copied from the manufacturer's documentation. The technical specifications may be changed without prior notice. To ensure that your information is correct, always consult the manufacturer's own documents.

Related topics

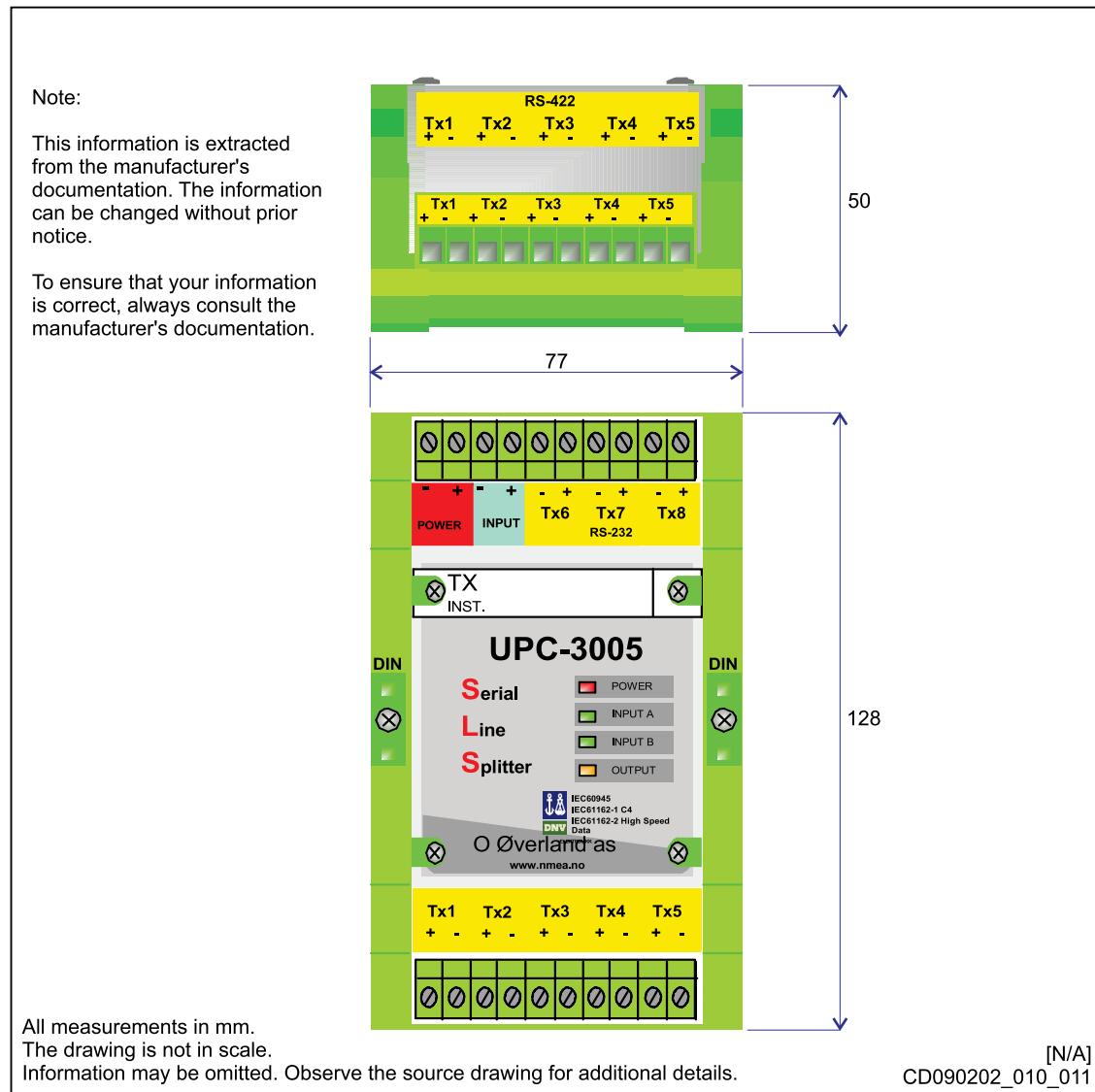
[Serial line splitter Øverland UPC-3005, page 126](#)

[Cable plans, page 96](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)



UPC-3005 Dimensions



Related topics

[Serial line splitter Øverland UPC-3005, page 126](#)

[Cable plans, page 96](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Serial line splitter Øverland UPC-5000P

On large installations with many hydroacoustic systems, these often require the same navigational information from a single sensor. Information such as current depth or speed is provided on serial format. One or more serial line splitters can be used to distribute the information from a single sensor to several different recipients.

The Øverland UPC-5000P is a serial line splitter with two separate inputs and fifteen outputs.

Topics

[UPC-5000P Serial line splitter description, page 130](#)

[UPC-5000P Technical specifications, page 131](#)

[UPC-5000P Connections, page 132](#)

[UPC-5000P Dimensions, page 133](#)

UPC-5000P Serial line splitter description

The Øverland UPC-5000P is a serial line splitter with two separate inputs and fifteen outputs.

Dual power input with autoswitch.

The two inputs **A** and **B** are separated with **A** as the primary input. If there is data on both **A** and **B** inputs, input **A** is used. Input **B** is used only if input **A** is idle. The power supply and both signal inputs are galvanic isolated from the outputs.

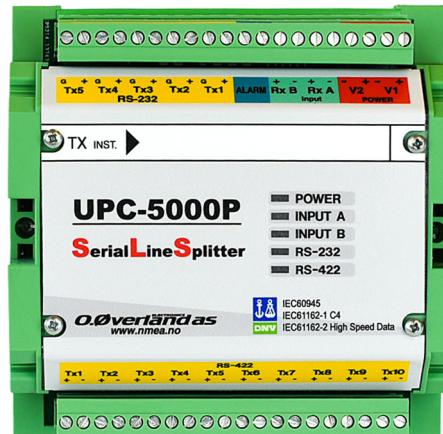
All outputs are short circuit protected.

Information from the manufacturer's data sheet, copied May 2014

The serial line splitter is fitted with a DIN rail for easy mounting and replacement.

Note

The serial line splitter requires a dedicated power supply providing 15 to 30 VDC.



For more information about this serial line splitter, consult the manufacturer's website.

- **Manufacturer:** Øverland
- **Manufacturer's website:** <http://www.overland.no>

Related topics[Serial line splitter Øverland UPC-5000P, page 130](#)[Cable plans, page 96](#)[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)**UPC-5000P Technical specifications**

The Øverland UPC-5000P serial line splitter offers two separate inputs and fifteen RS-232 and RS-422 outputs.

- **Power requirements:**

- Primary +15 - 30 VDC (2 W)
- Secondary +15 - 30 VDC (2 W)

- **Input A (Primary):** NMEA0183, RS-232, RS422, RS484, Current loop

- **Input B (Secondary):** NMEA0183, RS-232, RS422, RS484, Current loop

- **Outputs:**

- 10 x RS-422, (Maximum 50 mA)
- 5 x RS-232

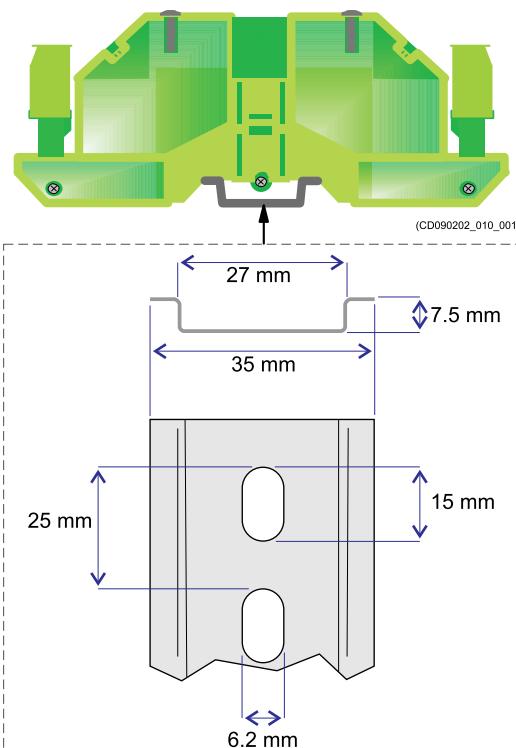
All outputs from the serial line splitter are short circuit protected.

- **For Current Loop input:** 100 Ω Parallel

- **Installation:** The serial line splitter is fitted with a DIN rail for easy mounting and replacement.

- **Outline dimensions:**

- Length: 128 mm
- Width: 128 mm
- Height: 50 mm

**Note**

This information was copied from the manufacturer's documentation. The technical specifications may be changed without prior notice. To ensure that your information is correct, always consult the manufacturer's own documents.

Related topics[Serial line splitter Øverland UPC-5000P, page 130](#)[Cable plans, page 96](#)[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

UPC-5000P Connections

The Øverland UPC-5000P serial line splitter offers two separate inputs and fifteen RS-232 and RS-422 outputs. The serial line splitter requires a dedicated power supply providing 15 to 30 VDC.

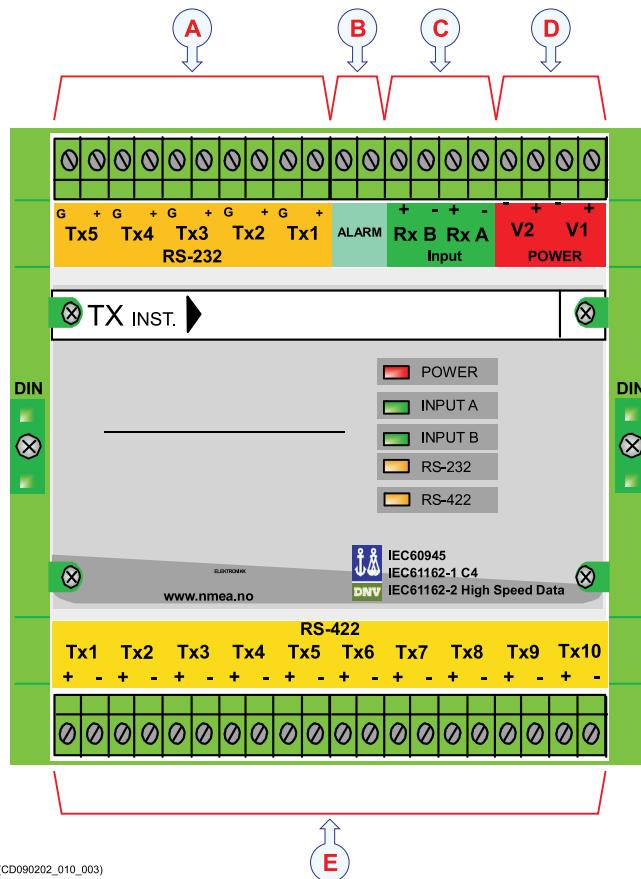
- A** Outputs: 5 x RS-232
- B** Relay NO/NC by internal strap
- C** Input
- D** Power requirements: +15 - 30 VDC
- E** Outputs: 10 x RS-422

Note _____

This information was copied from the manufacturer's documentation. The technical specifications may be changed without prior notice. To ensure that your information is correct, always consult the manufacturer's own documents.

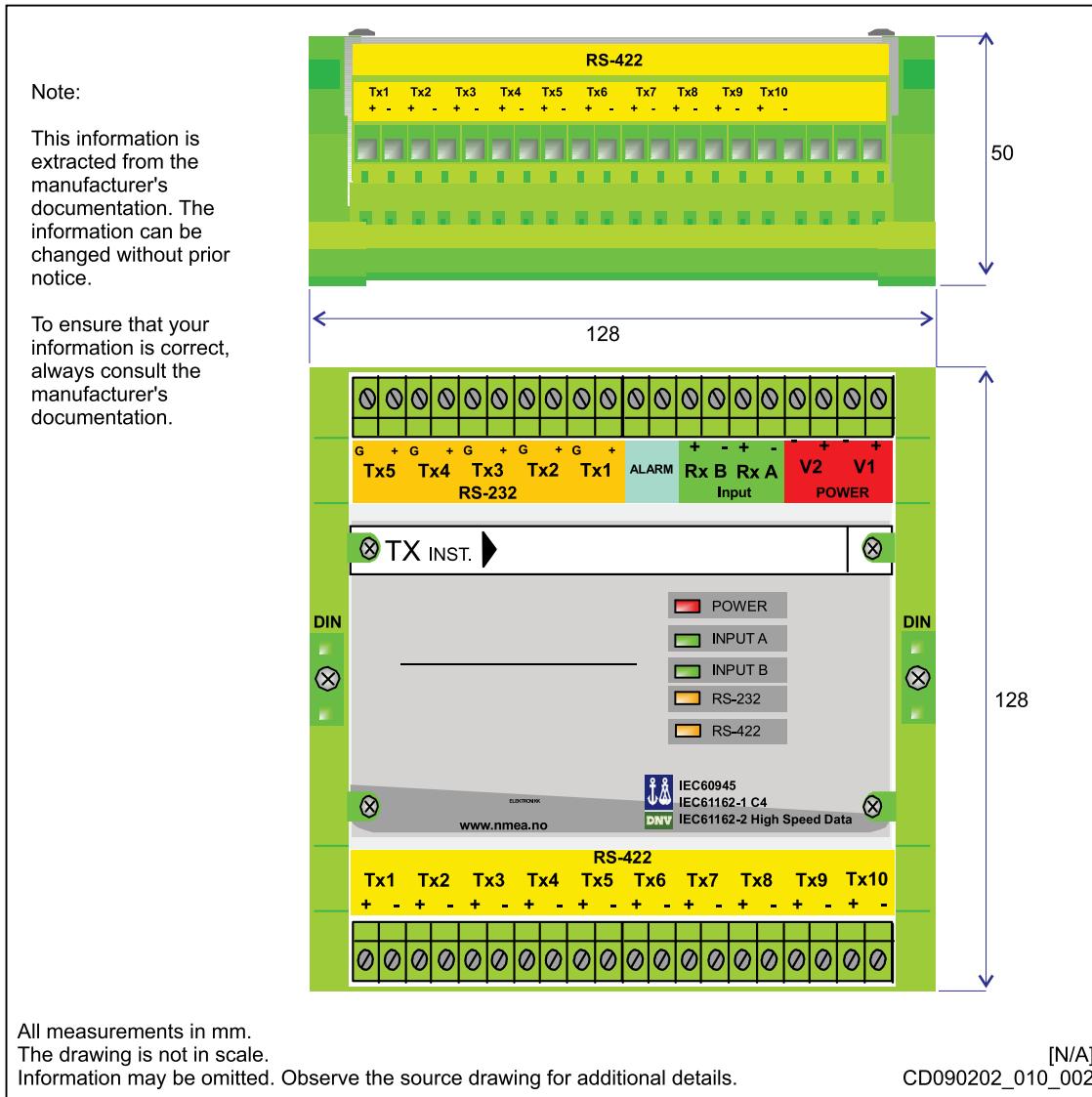
Related topics

- [Serial line splitter Øverland UPC-5000P, page 130](#)
- [Cable plans, page 96](#)
- [Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)



(CD090202_010_003)

UPC-5000P Dimensions



Related topics

- [Serial line splitter Øverland UPC-5000P, page 130](#)
- [Cable plans, page 96](#)
- [Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Setting up the EK80 system for synchronized operation

Topics

- [About synchronization, page 134](#)
- [Synchronization modes, page 135](#)
- [Synchronization using Clear To Send \(CTS\) and Request To Send \(RTS\) signals, page 136](#)
- [Synchronization sequences, page 136](#)
- [Synchronizing the EK80 by means of a serial port, page 137](#)
- [Synchronizing the EK80 system by means of the Auxiliary port, page 140](#)

About synchronization

Whenever more than one hydroacoustic system are installed on a vessel, interference may occur. With only two systems, interference can be avoided if one of the hydroacoustic systems can control the transmissions of the other system. If multiple systems are used, they can be connected to a common synchronisation system that controls all the transmissions.

In physics, interference is the phenomenon in which two waves superpose each other to form a resultant wave of greater or lower amplitude. Interference usually refers to the interaction of waves that are correlated or coherent with each other, either because they come from the same source or because they have the same or nearly the same frequency. Interference effects can be observed with all types of waves, for example, light, radio, acoustic, surface water waves or matter waves.

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wave_interference — April 2016

The Simrad EK80 may be set up to be synchronized with other hydroacoustic instruments. Synchronization is necessary to prevent several hydroacoustic systems from transmitting simultaneously. Individual transmission is often a necessity to prevent interference.

Related topics

- [Setting up the EK80 system for synchronized operation, page 134](#)
- [Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Synchronization modes

The purpose of the synchronization modes are to set up the EK80 system to operate alone, or as a "master" or "slave" in a synchronized system.

Whenever more than one hydroacoustic system is installed on a vessel, interference may occur. To avoid interference, you have these options:

- The systems are all connected to a common synchronization system.
- One of the acoustic systems is set up as "master", and controls the transmissions on the other systems.

The EK80 system offers functionality for remote transmit synchronization. It can be set up to operate in either *Master* or *Slave* mode.

The following synchronization modes are available:

- *Stand-alone*

This synchronization mode is used when the EK80 system is working by itself. Synchronization is turned off. It is the default setting. The EK80 system operates using the current settings for ping interval. The operation is independent of any trigger signals arriving at the synchronization port.

The **Synchronization Delay** setting is not applicable when synchronization is switched off.

- *Master*

Master mode is used if the EK80 system shall operate as the controlling unit in a synchronized system. Any peripheral hydroacoustic system(s) are only permitted to transmit when enabled by the EK80 system. The EK80 system operates using the current settings for ping interval. It also sends trigger signals to the peripheral system(s).

This mode is unavailable if you set **Synchronization Port** to *Transceiver Auxiliary Port*.

- *Slave*

The *Slave* mode is used if the EK80 system shall transmit only when permitted by a peripheral system. When the *Slave* mode is selected, the EK80 system will not transmit ("ping") unless an external trigger appears on the chosen synchronization port. The peripheral system may be any other hydroacoustic product (for example an echo sounder or sonar), or even a dedicated synchronization system.

Related topics

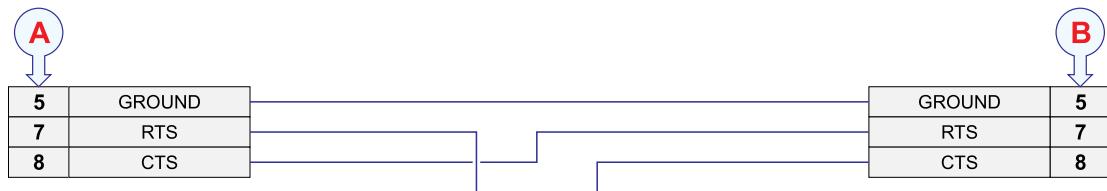
[Setting up the EK80 system for synchronized operation, page 134](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Synchronization using Clear To Send (CTS) and Request To Send (RTS) signals

In many applications, the synchronization interface is based on an RS-232 serial port. Only the Clear to Send (CTS) and Request to Send (RTS) signals on the serial interface are used.

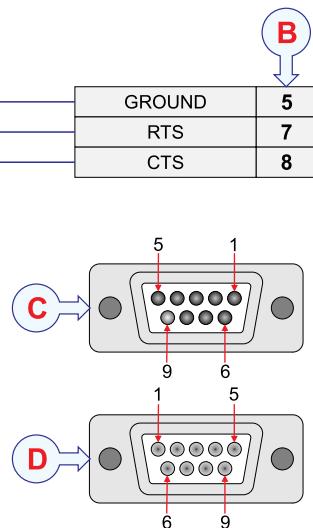
RS-232 uses two signal levels to distinguish between a logical "1" (also called "High"), and a logical "0" (also called "Low"). The EK80 system triggers on logical high.



- A** Local connection
- B** Connection on remote device
- C** Female 9-pin D-Subminiature connector
- D** Male 9-pin D-Subminiature connector

Note _____

RS-422 communication ports can not be used for synchronization purposes. The port you wish to use must be set to RS-232.



Related topics

[Setting up the EK80 system for synchronized operation, page 134](#)
[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Synchronization sequences

In many applications, the synchronization interface is based on an RS-232 serial port. When you connect two systems for synchronisation using the Clear to Send (CTS) and Request to Send (RTS) signals, one system must set up as a "Master", and the other as a "Slave". When the EK80 system is "Master" in a hydroacoustic system, the synchronization can take place in *Free running* or *Wait for slave* modes.

Slave mode

When the EK80 system is set up in *Slave* mode, it must receive a trigger signal from a peripheral system every time it shall be permitted to transmit. This trigger signal is connected to a serial port on the Processor Unit, and the Clear To Send (CTS) signal is used to give the EK80 system an "event" message. The message is processed and will - if the previous ping has been finished - send a new ping.

To acknowledge the trigger, the EK80 system sets the Ready To Send (RTS) signal to a logic "low" before the ping. This indicates that the EK80 system is "busy".

Once the transmission and reception sequence ends, the EK80 system sets the Ready To Send (RTS) signal to a logic "high". This indicates that the EK80 system is ready for the next ping.

Master mode

When the EK80 system is "Master" in a hydroacoustic system, the synchronization can take place in *Free running* or *Wait for slave* modes.

- Synchronization in *Free running* mode

When in *Free running* mode, the EK80 system will ping as fast as possible, setting its Ready to Send (RTS) signal to a logic "high" at start of each ping, and back to logic "low" at the end of the ping. The "Slave" system is triggered when the Ready to Send (RTS) signal goes from "low" to "high".

- Synchronization in *Wait for slave* mode

When in *Wait for slave* mode, the EK80 system will wait for a logic "high" Clear to Send (CTS) signal from the "Slave" system before it starts a new ping sequence. This is the "ready to ping" acknowledge from the "Slave" system.

Note

If you use the EK80 system as "Master" to control two "Slave" systems, you must connect a single cable (plus ground) from the Ready to Send (RTS) signal on the Master system to the Clear to Send (CTS) inputs on both "Slave" systems. The return signals from the Ready to Send (RTS) outputs on the "Slave" systems can not be connected.

Related topics

[Setting up the EK80 system for synchronized operation, page 134](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Synchronizing the EK80 by means of a serial port

If you want to use the EK80 system as a master or slave in a synchronized system, you must set it up for such operation. To do this, you must select which communication port to use for the synchronization interface, and you must select the requested synchronization mode.

Prerequisites

You have an RS2-232 interface port on your computer that allows you to use the CTS/RTS connections.

For "slave" operation, a remote system (for example *K-Sync*) must be available to provide trigger pulses. For "master" operation, a remote hydroacoustic system (sonar, echo sounder) is connected. This remote system must be set up in "slave" mode.

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks. This includes different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper, a soldering iron, etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

Context

Whenever more than one hydroacoustic system is installed on a vessel, interference may occur. To avoid interference, you have these options:

- The systems are all connected to a common synchronization system.
- One of the acoustic systems is set up as "master", and controls the transmissions on the other systems.

The EK80 system offers functionality for remote transmit synchronization. It can be set up to operate in either *Master* or *Slave* mode.

Tip

The Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) offers an AUXILIARY port that can be used for synchronisation purposes. This synchronization method may be more stable than the traditional CTS/RTS connection to a serial port.

The Synchronization Delay functionality is unavailable if you use the AUXILIARY port on your Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) to synchronize the EK80 system.

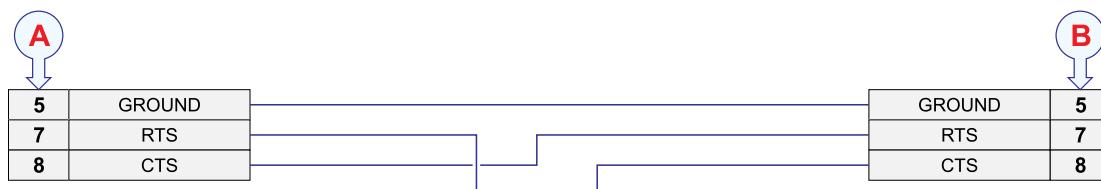
When you work in the **Installation** dialog box, you must always select **Apply** to save the changes made on a page. You must do this before you continue working on a different page.

Procedure

- 1 Connect the synchronization cable from the remote system to an available communication port on your computer.

This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter. Observe the applicable requirements related to cabling. Make sure that the total length of the serial line cable does not exceed approximately 50 meters. If a longer cable is required, you may need to use buffer amplifiers.

If the computer is not fitted with a suitable serial line connector, use a USB-to-serial converter. Several types are commercially available. Note that most USB-to-serial converters will introduce some latency. They may also introduce jitter in the communication. The amount of jitter depends on the quality of the converter.



A Local connection on the computer**B Connection on remote device**

- 2 Turn on the EK80 system and set it to normal use.
- 3 Open the **Setup** menu.
- 4 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 5 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Synchronization**.

6 Select Synchronization Mode.

- *Stand-alone*

This synchronization mode is used when the EK80 system is working by itself. Synchronization is turned off. It is the default setting. The EK80 system operates using the current settings for ping interval. The operation is independent of any trigger signals arriving at the synchronization port.

The **Synchronization Delay** setting is not applicable when synchronization is switched off.

- *Master*

Master mode is used if the EK80 system shall operate as the controlling unit in a synchronized system. Any peripheral hydroacoustic system(s) are only permitted to transmit when enabled by the EK80 system. The EK80 system operates using the current settings for ping interval. It also sends trigger signals to the peripheral system(s).

This mode is unavailable if you set **Synchronization Port** to *Transceiver Auxiliary Port*.

- *Slave*

The *Slave* mode is used if the EK80 system shall transmit only when permitted by a peripheral system. When the *Slave* mode is selected, the EK80 system will not transmit ("ping") unless an external trigger appears on the chosen synchronization port. The peripheral system may be any other hydroacoustic product (for example an echo sounder or sonar), or even a dedicated synchronization system.

- 7 Select **Synchronization Delay**.

This delay parameter is used differently depending on the chosen synchronization mode.

- *Stand-alone*

The **Synchronization Delay** setting is not applicable when synchronization is switched off.

- *Master*

In *Master* mode, the EK80 system waits for the delay time after the external trigger signal has been sent to the slaves before transmitting the ping. This is often referred to as a *pre-trigger*.

Note

This delay will only work when the synchronization is set up using a serial port.

- *Slave*

In *Slave* mode, the EK80 system waits for the delay time after the external trigger signal has arrived before transmitting the ping. This is often referred to as a *post-trigger*.

8 From the list of ports available, select **Synchronization Port**.

This is the interface port currently used to transmit or receive synchronization signals. It must be an RS-232 serial port. Since the synchronization function only uses the *Request To Send (RTS)* and *Clear To Send (CTS)* signals on a serial port, you may be able to use a port that is already assigned other interface purposes. For the same reason, you do not need to define any baud rate.

9 At the bottom of the page, select **Apply** to save your settings.

10 Continue your work in the **Installation** dialog box, or select **OK** to close it.

Related topics

[Setting up the EK80 system for synchronized operation, page 134](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

[Interfacing peripheral equipment, page 235](#)

Synchronizing the EK80 system by means of the Auxiliary port

The Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) offers an **AUXILIARY** port that can be used for synchronisation purposes. This synchronization method may be more stable than the traditional CTS/RTS connection to a serial port.

Prerequisites

Unless the physical connections already have been made with a suitable cable, you need the following items:

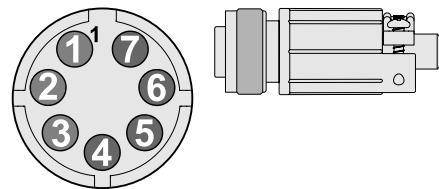
- Cable
- Plug

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for cable installation tasks. This includes different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper, a soldering iron, etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment. Depending on the tasks at hand, additional tools may be required.

Context

The **AUXILIARY** socket on the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) can be used to interface an external synchronization system.

The socket fits a Conxall 7-pin Mini-Con-X® shielded plug. The connections are made on pins **2**, **3** and **5**. The connector is seen from the solder side. The plug can be ordered from the manufacturer or purchased from Kongsberg Maritime. Use part number 387563.



- **Manufacturer:** Switchcraft Conxall
- **Manufacturer's website:** <http://www.conxall.com>

Pin number	1	2	3	4
Signal	Synchronization TX Status	Synchronization Output	Synchronization Input	Future use
Pin number	5	6	7	
Signal	Digital ground	Not used	Not used	

The parameters on the **Synchronization** page allow you to choose which communication port to use for the physical connection to the external system, and which synchronization mode to use. The **Synchronization** page is located in the **Installation** dialog box on the **Setup** menu.

Note

*If you use more than one Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) in your EK80 system, all synchronization input signals to the **AUXILIARY** ports must be provided by the same source. Individual synchronization of a single Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) is not supported.*

*If you use more than one computer in your EK80 system, the synchronization inputs to the **AUXILIARY** ports can not be used. This functionality is not supported.*

*The **Synchronization Delay** functionality is unavailable if you use the **AUXILIARY** port on your Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) to synchronize the EK80 system.*

Procedure

- 1 Connect the dedicated cable from the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) to the external synchronisation system.
This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter. Observe the applicable requirements related to cabling.
- 2 Turn on the EK80 system and set it to normal use.
- 3 Open the **Setup** menu.

- 4 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 5 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Synchronization**.
- 6 From the list of ports available, select **Transceiver Auxiliary Port**.
- 7 Observe that when **Transceiver Auxiliary Port** is selected, only *Slave* synchronization mode is permitted.

The *Slave* mode is used if the EK80 system shall transmit only when permitted by a peripheral system. When the *Slave* mode is selected, the EK80 system will not transmit ("ping") unless an external trigger appears on the chosen synchronization port. The peripheral system may be any other hydroacoustic product (for example an echo sounder or sonar), or even a dedicated synchronization system.

- 8 At the bottom of the page, select **Apply** to save your settings.
- 9 Continue your work in the **Installation** dialog box, or select **OK** to close it.

Related topics

[Setting up the EK80 system for synchronized operation, page 134](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

[Interfacing peripheral equipment, page 235](#)

Cable drawings and specifications

Topics

- [AC power cable using IEC C13 inline socket, page 144](#)
- [Ground cable, page 146](#)
- [RS-232 serial line connection using three wires, page 147](#)
- [RS-232 serial line connection using five wires, page 148](#)
- [RS-422 serial line connection using five wires, page 149](#)
- [RS-232 used as synchronization trigger \(input or output\), page 150](#)
- [RS-485 serial line connection using two or four wires, page 151](#)
- [Moxa CP114EL-I Serial line adapter, page 152](#)
- [RJ45 High speed Ethernet cable \(1000Base-t\), page 154](#)
- [Battery power cable, page 155](#)
- [K-Sync interface to generic RS-232 synchronization input, page 155](#)
- [Simrad TU40 interface to generic RS-232 synchronization input, page 158](#)
- [Auxiliary connector for synchronization, page 160](#)
- [Single beam low power transducer connection to a circular transducer socket, page 161](#)
- [Split beam transducer connection to an Amphenol socket, page 163](#)
- [Split beam transducer connection for single beam use on an Amphenol socket, page 166](#)
- [Burton underwater connectors on split beam transducers for deep water, page 169](#)
- [About serial lines, page 171](#)

AC power cable using IEC C13 inline socket

This cable is used to connect any unit or device to AC mains supply. The power cable is commercial. It is normally used for 115 and 230 VAC. The inline socket and the plug both comply to the IEC60320 standard.



(CD0803_001_002)

- A *IEC13 line socket - may be fitted with a locking device*
- B *CEE 7/7 male power plug*
- C *Live (normally identified with Blue insulation)*
- D *Neutral (normally identified with Brown insulation)*
- E *Ground (normally identified with Yellow or Yellow/Green insulation)*

A standard commercial AC mains cable is used. The power cable is normally terminated with an female IEC C13 inline socket. The AC mains end is terminated in an AC connector suitable for the local standard and/or the output sockets on an uninterruptible power supply (UPS). If this is not the case, you must replace the AC connector.

The typical cable length is between 1,5 and 2 meters. If this is too short you must use an extension cable (not recommended), mount a new power outlet within range, or make your own power cable with sufficient length. If you use an uninterruptible power supply (UPS), you can also move the UPS to a different location within range.

Note

There are substantial differences between countries nomenclature related to power plugs and sockets. Observe local standards and regulations.

Minimum cable requirements

- **Conductors:** 2 x 1.5 mm² + 1.5 mm² Ground
- **Screen:** None
- **Voltage:** 750 V
- **Maximum outer diameter:** Defined by the plugs and/or the gable gland

Related topics

[Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

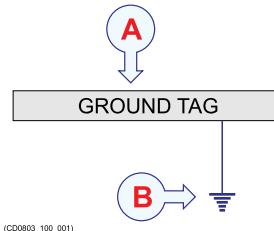
Ground cable

Correct grounding is essential for safe operation and maximum performance.

A *Ground tag on unit*

B *Vessel ground*

The ground connection is made using a thick stranded (or yellow/green) cable making a solid connection between the cabinet and the bulkhead. It is normally provided with a green/yellow colour. The grounding cable must be connected to vessel ground in the fuse box, or other common grounding point.



Minimum cable requirements

- **Conductors:** 1 x 6 mm²
- **Screen:** None
- **Voltage:** 60 V
- **Maximum outer diameter:** Not applicable

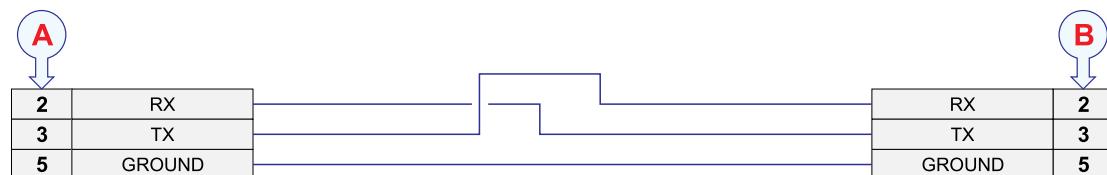
Related topics

[Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

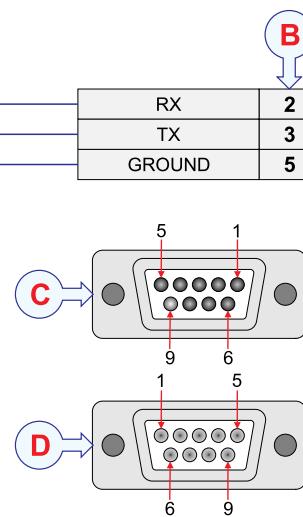
RS-232 serial line connection using three wires

An RS-232 serial line connection using three (3) wires and NMEA datagrams is a common way to connect the EK80 system to external devices.



- A Local connection
- B Connection on remote device
- C Female 9-pin D-Subminiature connector
- D Male 9-pin D-Subminiature connector

Unless otherwise specified, this cable must be provided by the installation shipyard. Note that this cable does not support all the signals in the standard RS-232 specification.



Minimum cable requirements

- **Conductors:** 2 x 4 x 0.5 mm²
- **Screen:** Overall braided
- **Voltage:** 60 V
- **Maximum outer diameter:** Defined by the plugs and/or the gable gland

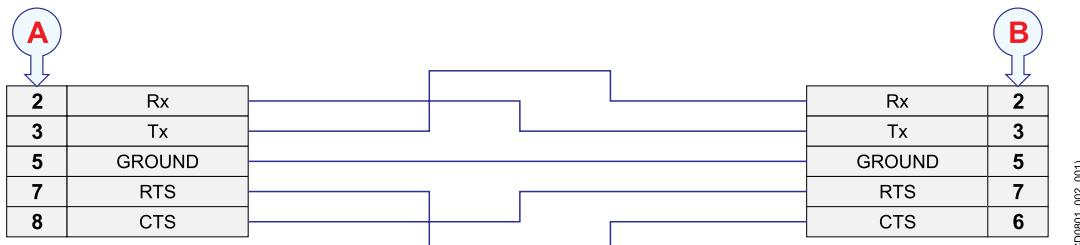
If you need to install a very long cable, increase the cross section.

Related topics

- [Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)
- [Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

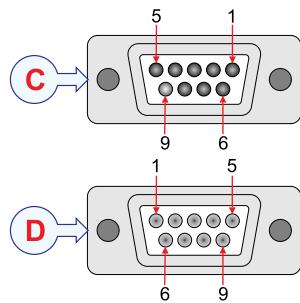
RS-232 serial line connection using five wires

An RS-232 serial line connection using five (5) wires and NMEA datagrams is a common way to connect the EK80 system to external devices.



- A Local connection
- B Connection on remote device
- C Female 9-pin D-Subminiature connector
- D Male 9-pin D-Subminiature connector

Unless otherwise specified, this cable must be provided by the installation shipyard. Note that this cable does not support all the signals in the standard RS-232 specification.



Minimum cable requirements

- **Conductors:** 2 x 4 x 0.5 mm²
- **Screen:** Overall braided
- **Voltage:** 60 V
- **Maximum outer diameter:** Defined by the plugs and/or the gable gland

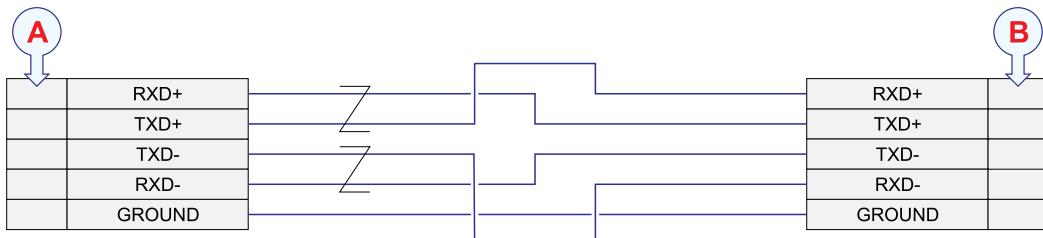
If you need to install a very long cable, increase the cross section.

Related topics

- [Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)
- [About serial lines, page 171](#)
- [Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

RS-422 serial line connection using five wires

An RS-422 serial line connection can transmit data at rates as high as 10 million bits per second, and may be sent on cables as long as 1500 meters.



A *Local connection*

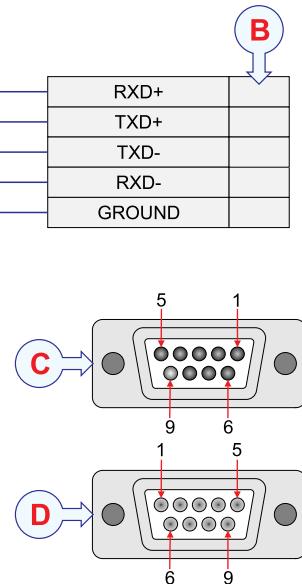
B *Connection on remote device*

For more information, refer to the end-user documentation provided by the manufacturer.

C *Female 9-pin D-Subminiature connector*

D *Male 9-pin D-Subminiature connector*

Unless otherwise specified, this cable must be provided by the installation shipyard.



Minimum cable requirements

- Conductors:** 2 x 5 x 0.5 mm²
- Screen:** Overall braided
- Voltage:** 60 V
- Maximum outer diameter:** Defined by the plugs and/or the gable gland

If you wish to use RS-422 or RS-485 serial communication, use a cable with twisted pairs. If you need to install a very long cable, increase the cross section.

Related topics

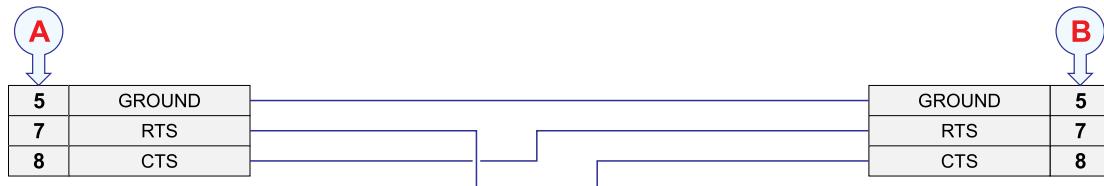
[Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)

[About serial lines, page 171](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

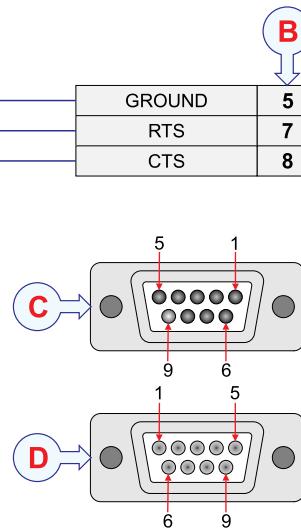
RS-232 used as synchronization trigger (input or output)

An RS-232 serial line connection using the Request To Send (RTS) and Clear To Send (CTS) signals is common way to connect the EK80 system to external devices for synchronization purposes.



- A** Local connection
- B** Connection on remote device
- C** Female 9-pin D-Subminiature connector
- D** Male 9-pin D-Subminiature connector

This cable takes the control signals on a RS-232 serial line, and uses these as an external trigger. It provides interface with any peripheral unit that requires or controls transmit/receive synchronization. Note that this cable does not support all the signals in the standard RS-232 specification.



Note

This synchronization method can only be used with RS-232 communication. You can only connect two systems together.

Unless otherwise specified, this cable must be provided by the installation shipyard.

Minimum cable requirements

- **Conductors:** 2 x 4 x 0.5 mm²
- **Screen:** Overall braided
- **Voltage:** 60 V
- **Maximum outer diameter:** Defined by the plugs and/or the gable gland

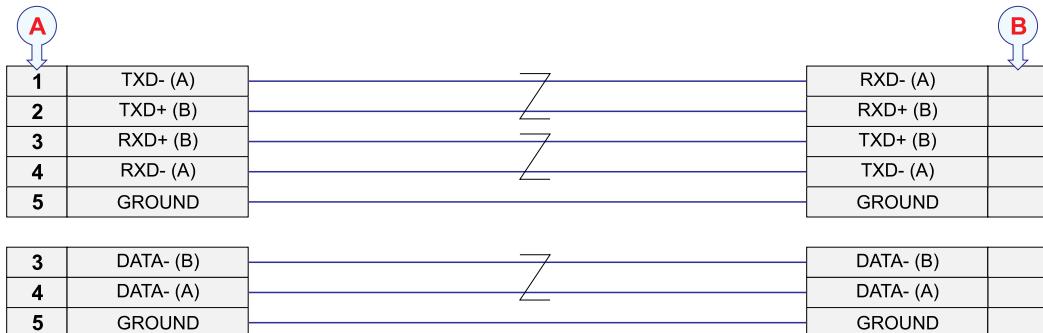
If you need to install a very long cable, increase the cross section.

Related topics

- [Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)
- [About serial lines, page 171](#)
- [Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

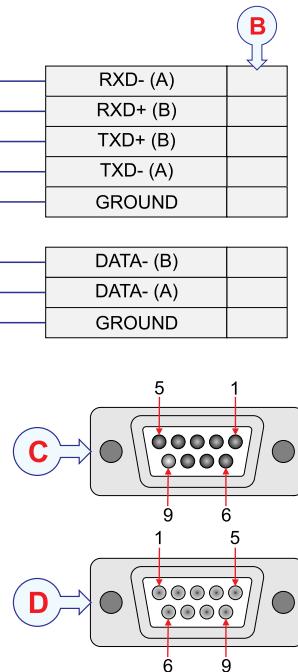
RS-485 serial line connection using two or four wires

An RS-485 serial line connection using two or four wires is common way to connect the EK80 system to external devices. This format is recommended if the serial cable needs to be very long.



- A *Local connection to the serial adapter*
- B *Connection on remote device (For more information, refer to the end-user documentation provided by the manufacturer.)*
- C *Female 9-pin D-Subminiature connector*
- D *Male 9-pin D-Subminiature connector*

Unless otherwise specified, this cable must be provided by the installation shipyard.



Minimum cable requirements

- **Conductors:** 2 x 5 x 0.5 mm²
- **Screen:** Overall braided
- **Voltage:** 60 V
- **Maximum outer diameter:** Defined by the plugs and/or the cable gland

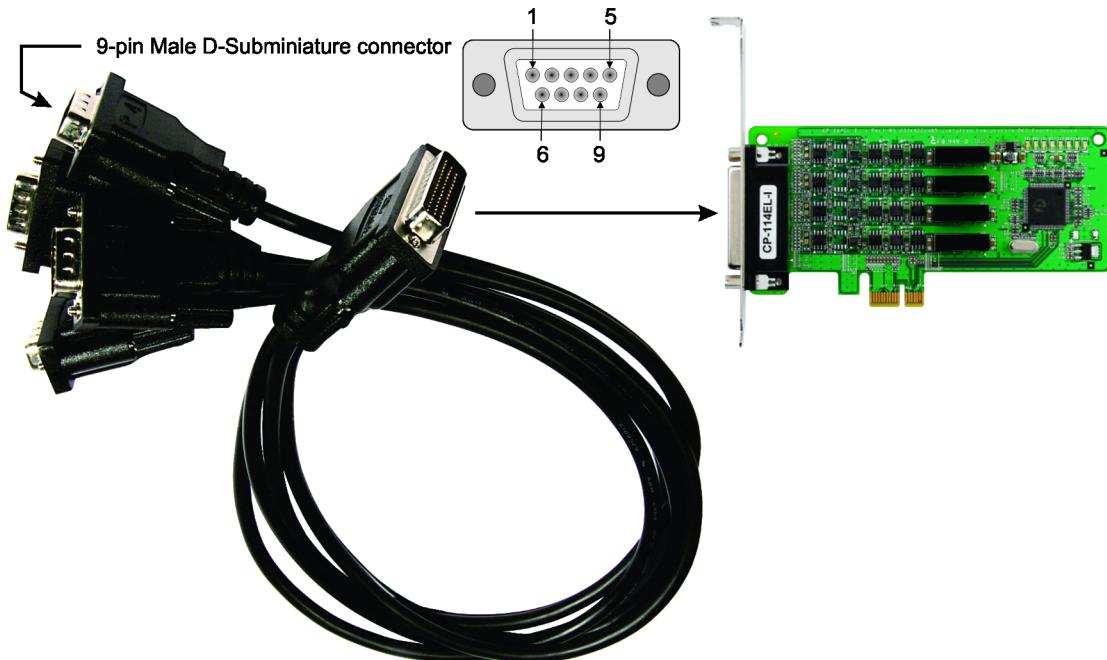
Use a cable with twisted pairs. If you need to install a very long cable, increase the cross section.

Related topics

- [Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)
- [About serial lines, page 171](#)
- [Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Moxa CP114EL-I Serial line adapter

The Processor Unit is equipped with a Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter board. The serial adapter offers four serial ports. The serial lines are provided as a large D-Subminiature connector on the rear side of the computer.



The Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter supports RS-232, RS-422 and RS-485 (both 2 and 4-wire). The connections to the board are made using a converter cable with four 9-pin male D-subminiature connectors. The converter cable is supplied with the Processor Unit.

- **Manufacturer:** Moxa
- **Manufacturer's website:** <https://www.moxa.com>

Unless otherwise specified, this cable must be provided by the installation shipyard. If you wish to use RS-422 or RS-485 serial communication, use a cable with twisted pairs.

Note

Observe that long runs of unshielded cable will pick up noise easily. This is because the RS-232 signals are not balanced.



Maximum length for an RS-232 serial cable is typically 60 meters with 2400 bps data rate, however this depends on the cable quality. Always check the cable manufacturers specifications for the actual "shunt capacitance". A common figure is 47.5 pF/m, which gives a maximum cable length of about 50 meters.

Even though a standard exist for RS-232 pin configuration, certain manufacturer may still choose their own connector pins for the various signals used. In order to make the

RS-232 connection to your peripheral device work properly, you must always consult the relevant instructions provided by the device manufacturer.

Pin configuration

Moxa CP114EL-I connectors / Adapter cable				
Pin	RS-232	RS-422	RS-485 (4-wire)	RS-485 (2-wire)
1	DCD	TXD-(A)	TXD-(A)	
2	RxD	TXD+(B)	TXD+(B)	
3	TxD	RXD+(B)	RXD+(B)	Data-(B)
4	DTR	RXD-(A)	RXD-(A)	Data-(A)
5	Ground	Ground	Ground	Ground
6	DSR	-	-	-
7	RTS	-	-	-
8	CTS	-	-	-
9		-	-	-

Minimum cable requirements

- **Conductors:** 2 x 5 x 0.5 mm²
- **Screen:** Overall braided
- **Voltage:** 60 V
- **Maximum outer diameter:** Defined by the plugs and/or the gable gland

If you wish to use RS-422 or RS-485 serial communication, use a cable with twisted pairs. If you need to install a very long cable, increase the cross section.

Related topics

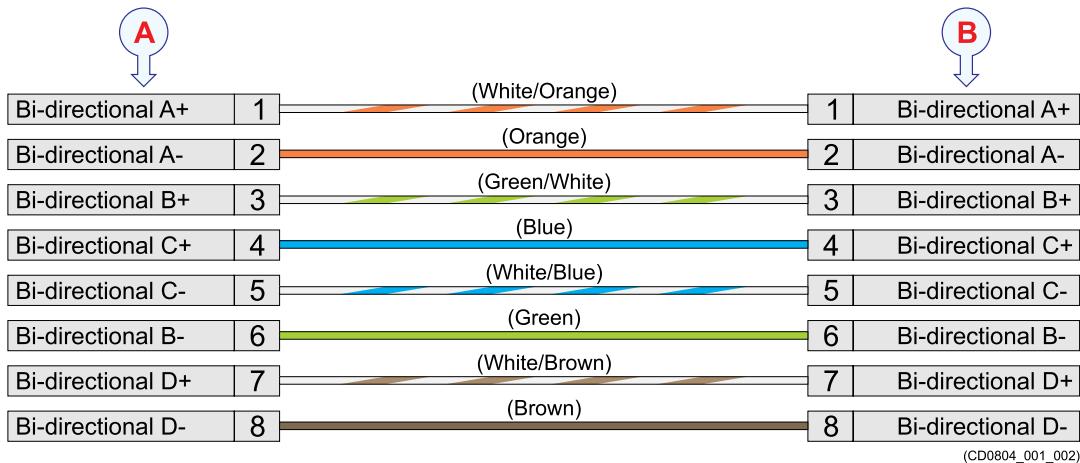
[Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)

[About serial lines, page 171](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

RJ45 High speed Ethernet cable (1000Base-t)

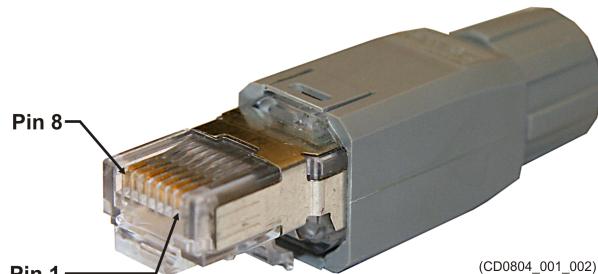
Most high speed data connections between the EK80 system units are made using Ethernet cables. These cables may also be used between the EK80 and peripheral equipment.



A *Local Ethernet connection*

B *Connection on external network device*

Ethernet cables are available commercially in different lengths, colours and categories. Normally, CAT-5E and CAT-6 cables are used in local area networks with bandwidths exceeding 100 Mbit.



Minimum cable requirements

It is very important that high-quality Ethernet cables are used. You must use CAT-5E quality or better. Using cables with lower bandwidth capacity will reduce performance.

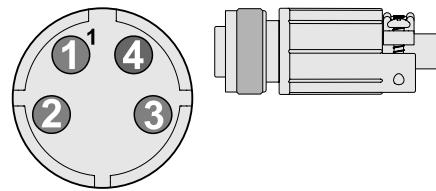
Related topics

- [Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)
- [Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Battery power cable

A suitable cable must be provided if you want to operate the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) from a battery.

The power connector is mounted on the side panel of the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT). The socket fits a Conxall 4-pin Mini-Con-X® shielded plug. One spare plug is included with the delivery. You can use this plug if you wish to operate the transceiver from a battery. The plug can be ordered from the manufacturer or purchased from Kongsberg Maritime. Use part number 390616.



- **Manufacturer:** Switchcraft Conxall
- **Manufacturer's website:** <http://www.conxall.com>
- **True manufacturer's part number:** SF6382-4SG-520

Pin configuration

Pin number	1	2	3	4
Voltage	+12 VDC	0 VDC	0 VDC	+12 VDC

Minimum cable requirements

- **Conductors:** 2 x 1.5 mm²
- **Screen:** None
- **Voltage:** 60 V
- **Maximum outer diameter:** Not applicable

Related topics

[Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)

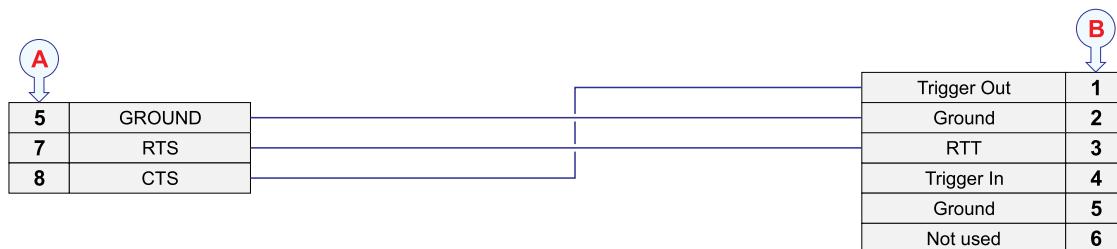
[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

K-Sync interface to generic RS-232 synchronization input

For transmission synchronization purposes, the K-Sync will interface a generic RS-232 serial line communication port using the CTS (Clear To Send) and RTS (Request To Send) signals.

The synchronized product is connected to the IO Module inside the K-Sync Synchronizing Unit. Each IO Module in the K-Sync Synchronizing Unit provides six connectors and a configuration board for physical adjustments of the communication parameters.

Pin number	Signal	Signal description
1	Trigger Out	This signal is transmitted to the system that needs to be synchronized. Trigger Out allows the system to transmit ("ping").
2	Ground	Mandatory! This ground is connected to pin 5 inside the IO Module.
3	RTT	Ready to Transmit: Ready to Transmit (RTT) is a return signal from the hydroacoustic system that is synchronized. The Ready to Transmit (RTT) signal means that the hydroacoustic system is ready for the next trigger.
4	Trigger In	This signal is received from the system that needs to be synchronized. Trigger In is "active" while the system is transmitting.
5	Ground	Mandatory! This ground is connected to pin 2 inside the IO Module.
6	Not used	



A Local connection on the computer

B Connections on the K-Sync IO Module

A Connectors 1 through 6 as indicated by the arrows.

Note that each of the two connector elements can be pulled out of the IO Module for easy access.

B Configuration board

Unless otherwise specified, this cable must be provided by the installation shipyard.

Cable specifications

Cable requirements may vary depending on the specific sonar you interface. Please consult the installation manual of the equipment for specific cable requirements.

Related topics

[Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)



CD029400_102_04

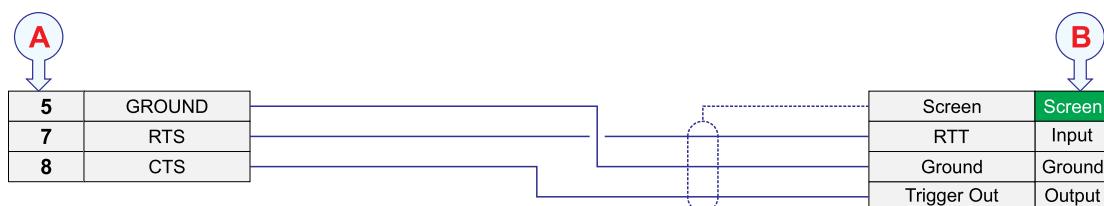
Simrad TU40 interface to generic RS-232 synchronization input

For transmission synchronization purposes, the Simrad TU40 will interface a generic RS-232 serial line communication port using the CTS (Clear To Send) and RTS (Request To Send) signals.

The Trigger Unit provides one output and one input for each hydroacoustic system that needs to be synchronized. Each system is connected to the IO Module inside the Trigger Unit. Each IO Module in the Trigger Unit comprises an analog input module, a digital output module and a solid state relay module.

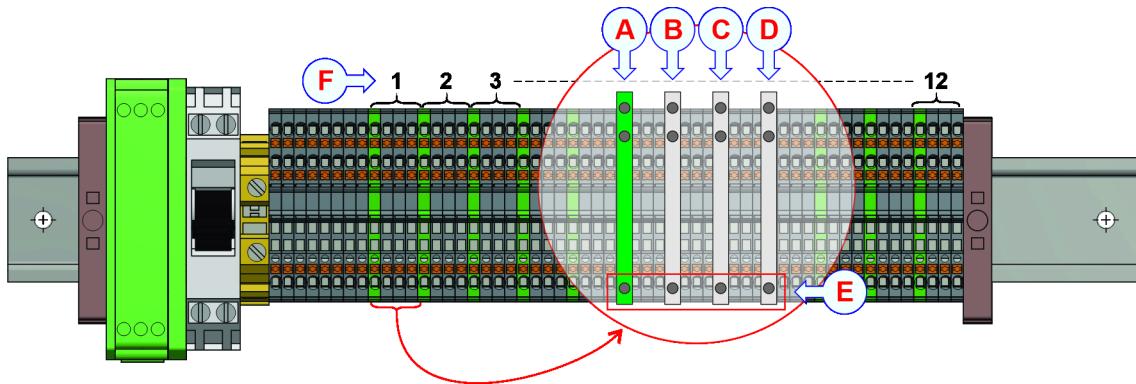
Pin	Signal	Trigger Unit	Signal description
Screen(Green)	Screen	A	Cable screen
Input	RTT	B	Ready to Transmit: Ready to Transmit (RTT) is a return signal from the hydroacoustic system that is synchronized. The Ready to Transmit (RTT) signal means that the hydroacoustic system is ready for the next trigger.
Ground	Ground	C	Signal ground
Output	Trigger Out	D	This signal is transmitted to the system that needs to be synchronized. Trigger Out allows the system to transmit ("ping").

Trigger Unit = Connections on the terminal block in the Trigger Unit



A Local connection on the computer

B Connections on the terminal block in the Trigger Unit (From left)



- A** Screen (Cable screen) (Green)
- B** Input (Ready to Transmit (RTT))
- C** Ground (Signal ground)
- D** Output (Trigger Out)
- E** Make the connections here.
- F** Channels (From left)

Minimum cable requirements

Unless otherwise specified, this cable must be provided by the installation shipyard. If you need to install a very long cable, increase the cross section.

- **Conductors:** 2 x 2 x 0.5 mm²
- **Screen:** Overall braided
- **Voltage:** 60 V
- **Maximum outer diameter:** Defined by the plugs and/or the gable gland

Related topics

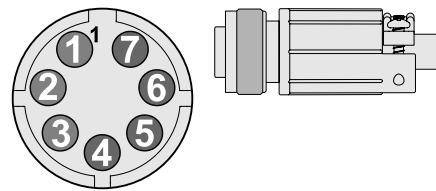
- [Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)
- [Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Auxiliary connector for synchronization

The Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) is fitted with a dedicated socket for auxiliary interfaces.

The **AUXILIARY** socket on the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) can be used to interface an external synchronization system.

The socket fits a Conxall 7-pin Mini-Con-X® shielded plug. The connections are made on pins **2**, **3** and **5**. The plug can be ordered from the manufacturer or purchased from Kongsberg Maritime. Use part number 387563.



- Manufacturer:** Switchcraft Conxall
- Manufacturer's website:** <http://www.conxall.com>
- True manufacturer's part number:** SF6282-7SG-520

Pin number	1	2	3	4
Signal	Synchronization TX Status	Synchronization Output	Synchronization Input	Future use
Pin number	5	6	7	
Signal	Digital ground	Not used	Not used	

Minimum cable requirements

- Conductors:** 4 x 0.5 mm²
- Screen:** Overall braided
- Voltage:** 60 V
- Maximum outer diameter:** Defined by the plugs and/or the gland

If you need to install a very long cable, increase the cross section.

Related topics

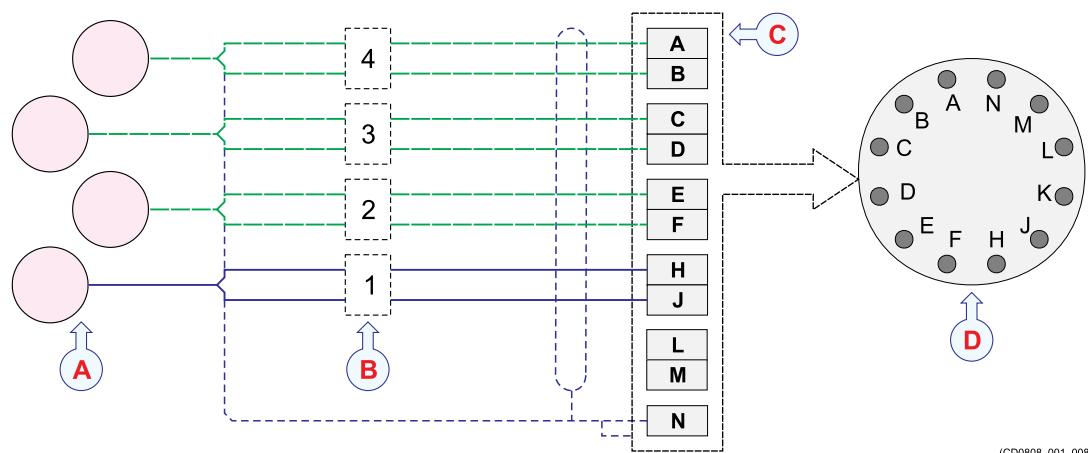
[Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Single beam low power transducer connection to a circular transducer socket

Maximum four single beam low power transducers can be connected to terminals A through J on the circular 12-pin Amphenol transducer socket (Type 97-12-19S). This socket is used on the General Purpose Transceiver (GPT), and on several versions of the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).

The other end of the cable is permanently fixed to the transducer.



A Transducers

B License identification

C Connectors on the 12-pin Amphenol socket

D Circular 12-pin Amphenol socket (As seen towards the socket (face view))

The cable screen must be connected to the housing on the transducer plug.

Note

The black wires in the transducer cable are not for grounding. You must never connect these together. You must never connect any of them to vessel ground.

If you need to extend the transducer cable, you must splice it correctly. This is very important, as any splice is very vulnerable for noise. Cable can be spliced using two different methods:

- Splicing using a grounded junction box
- Splicing using a junction box that is isolated from vessel's ground

Refer to the dedicated procedures.

We strongly recommend that you install the transducer cable in a steel conduit.

Cable connections versus software licenses

When more than one transducer shall be connected to the transceiver, your software license must support this. If necessary, additional licenses must be purchased. If you have only one license, connect your transducer to sockets H and J on the 12-pin Amphenol socket. For additional licenses, connect as follows:

License 1		License 2		License 3		License 4	
H	J	E	F	C	D	A	B

Minimum cable requirements

Not applicable. If you need an extension cable, contact your dealer (or Kongsberg Maritime) for support.

Related topics

[Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

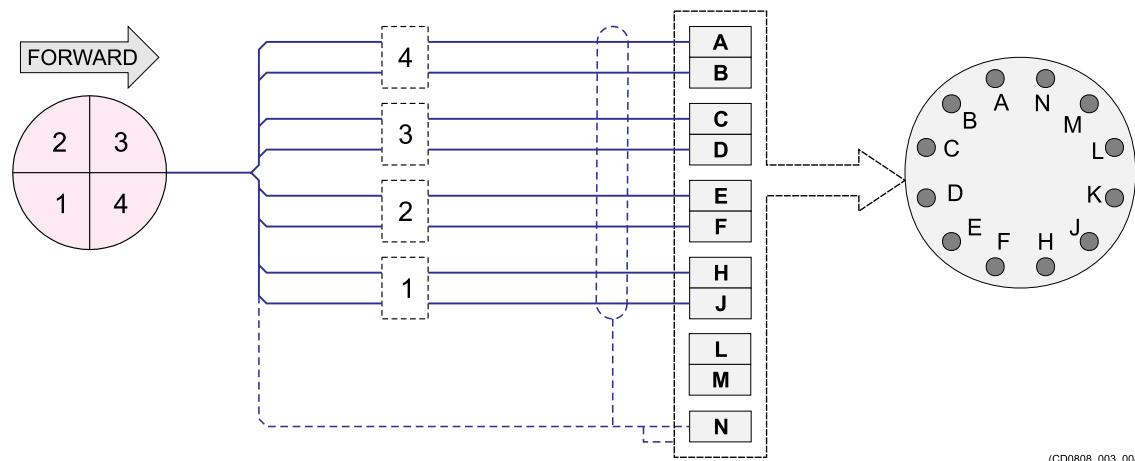
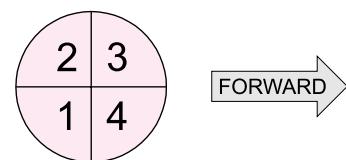
[201575 Transducer connector assembly and wiring, page 326](#)

Split beam transducer connection to an Amphenol socket

A split beam transducer is connected to terminals A through J on the circular 12-pin Amphenol transducer socket (Type 97-12-19S). This socket is used on the General Purpose Transceiver (GPT), and on several versions of the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).

The other end of the cable is permanently fixed to the transducer.

The transducer is designed with the individual elements organized in four separate sectors. It is very important that the transducer is correctly installed with the sectors positioned as shown in the illustration (seen from above). Each sector is connected to a dedicated transceiver channel. In this context, the phrase *transceiver channel* is used to describe one single pathway through the transceiver. This pathway contains one transmitter, one preamplifier and the necessary transmit/receive switching circuitry.



Note

We strongly recommend that you install the transducer cable in a steel conduit.

Depending on production date, the transducer can be delivered with two different cable types. On older transducers the cable contains black and white conductors. On new transducers the cable contains colour coded conductors.

Cable with colour coded conductors

Cable with colour coded conductors			
Sector	Cable colours	Terminal on socket	Transceiver channel
1	White	H	1
	Black	J	
2	Green	E	2
	Black	F	
3	Yellow	C	3
	Black	D	
4	Blue	A	4
	Black	B	
Digital output	Red	L	
Digital ground	Black	M	
Cable screen	Screen	N	

Cable with only black and white conductors

The cable has four pairs of white and black conductors. The different sectors are defined by small numbers marked with white text on each black conductor. These are numbered 1 to 4 to identify the transducer sectors. The numbers on the black conductors are the same as four sectors as seen in the illustration and table. The different numbers are quite small and you may need a magnifying glass to see them.

Note

Since the white conductors are not numbered, it is very important to find the pairs that are twisted together.

Cable with only black and white conductors			
Sector	Cable colours	Terminal on socket	Transceiver channel
1	White	H	1
	Black	J	
2	White	E	2
	Black	F	
3	White	C	3
	Black	D	
4	White	A	4
	Black	B	
Cable screen	Screen	N	

Connecting to the Amphenol socket

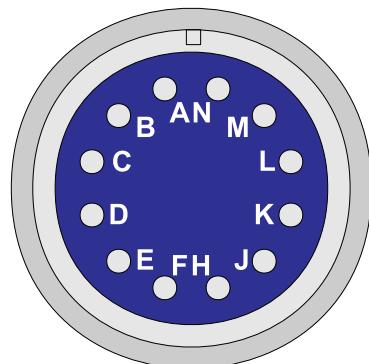
The cable screen must be connected to the housing on the transducer plug.

Note _____

The black wires in the transducer cable are not for grounding. You must never connect these together. You must never connect any of them to vessel ground.

The software license controls how the transducer is connected to the transceiver. The **License Details** text box explains which transceiver channels that are used. Each channel available is listed with the relevant operational frequency and power capacity. For more information, refer to the context-sensitive on-line help.

Illustration: The connector is seen from the solder side.



(CD019501_011_005)

Splicing the transducer cable

If you need to extend the transducer cable, you must splice it correctly. This is very important, as any splice is very vulnerable for noise. Cable can be spliced using two different methods:

- Splicing using a grounded junction box
- Splicing using a junction box that is isolated from vessel's ground

Refer to the dedicated procedures.

Minimum cable requirements

Not applicable. If you need an extension cable, contact your dealer (or Kongsberg Maritime) for support.

Note _____

*The software license controls how the transducer is connected to the transceiver. The **License Details** text box explains which transceiver channels that are used. Each channel available is listed with the relevant operational frequency and power capacity. For more information, refer to the context-sensitive on-line help.*

Related topics

[Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

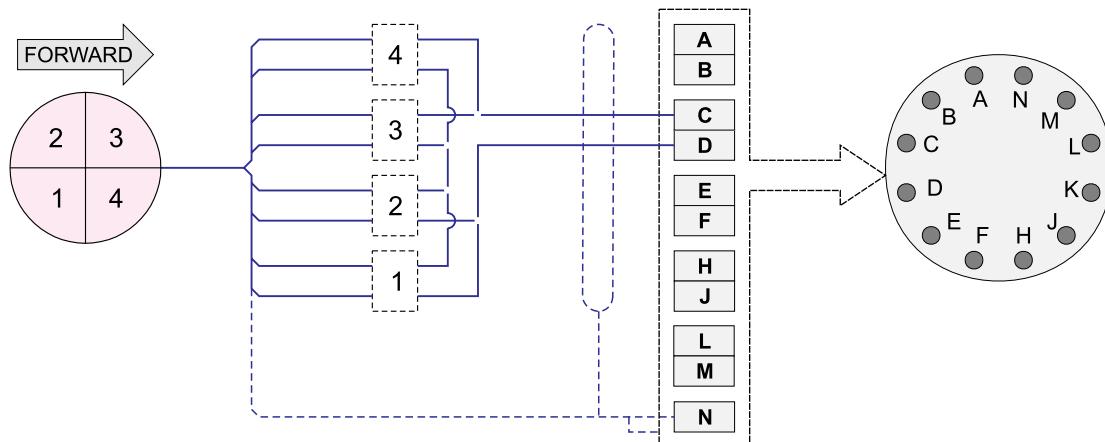
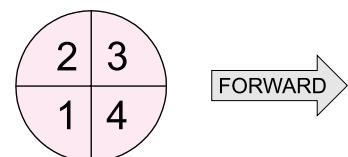
[201575 Transducer connector assembly and wiring, page 326](#)

Split beam transducer connection for single beam use on an Amphenol socket

A split beam transducer can be connected to sockets A and D on a circular 12-pin Amphenol transducer socket (Type 97-12-19S). This allows you to use the transducer as a single beam unit.

The other end of the cable is permanently fixed to the transducer.

The transducer is designed with the individual elements organized in four separate sectors. It is very important that the transducer is correctly installed with the sectors positioned as shown in the illustration (seen from above). Each sector is connected to a dedicated transceiver channel. In this context, the phrase *transceiver channel* is used to describe one single pathway through the transceiver. This pathway contains one transmitter, one preamplifier and the necessary transmit/receive switching circuitry.



Note

We strongly recommend that you install the transducer cable in a steel conduit.

Depending on production date, the transducer can be delivered with two different cable types. On older transducers the cable contains black and white conductors. On new transducers the cable contains colour coded conductors.

Cable with colour coded conductors

Cable with colour coded conductors			
Sector	Cable colours	Terminal on socket	Transceiver channel
1	White	H	1
	Black	J	
2	Green	E	2
	Black	F	
3	Yellow	C	3
	Black	D	
4	Blue	A	4
	Black	B	
Digital output	Red		
Digital ground	Black		
Cable screen	Screen	N	
Do not connect <i>Digital output</i> and <i>Digital ground</i> to the transceiver socket.			

Cable with only black and white conductors

The cable has four pairs of white and black conductors. The different sectors are defined by small numbers marked with white text on each black conductor. These are numbered 1 to 4 to identify the transducer sectors. The numbers on the black conductors are the same as four sectors as seen in the illustration and table. The different numbers are quite small and you may need a magnifying glass to see them.

Note

Since the white conductors are not numbered, it is very important to find the pairs that are twisted together.

Cable with only black and white conductors			
Sector	Cable colours	Terminal on socket	Transceiver channel
1	White	H	1
	Black	J	
2	White	E	2
	Black	F	
3	White	C	3
	Black	D	
4	White	A	4
	Black	B	
Cable screen	Screen	N	

Connecting to the Amphenol socket

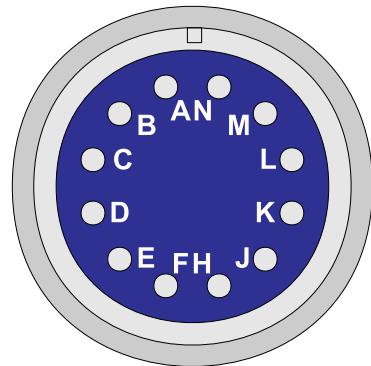
The cable screen must be connected to the housing on the transducer plug.

Note _____

The black wires in the transducer cable are not for grounding. You must never connect these together. You must never connect any of them to vessel ground.

The software license controls how the transducer is connected to the transceiver. The **License Details** text box explains which transceiver channels that are used. Each channel available is listed with the relevant operational frequency and power capacity. For more information, refer to the context-sensitive on-line help.

Illustration: The connector is seen from the solder side.



(CD019501_011_005)

Splicing the transducer cable

If you need to extend the transducer cable, you must splice it correctly. This is very important, as any splice is very vulnerable for noise. Cable can be spliced using two different methods:

- Splicing using a grounded junction box
- Splicing using a junction box that is isolated from vessel's ground

Refer to the dedicated procedures.

Minimum cable requirements

Not applicable. If you need an extension cable, contact your dealer (or Kongsberg Maritime) for support.

Related topics

[Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

[201575 Transducer connector assembly and wiring, page 326](#)

Burton underwater connectors on split beam transducers for deep water

A selection of the Simrad transducers have been designed to operate in deep water. These are intended for installation in subsea constructions, with autonomous transceivers, or inside a towed body. Several of the Simrad transducers for deep water operation have been fitted with subsea connectors from Burton.

Deep water transducers are fitted with only a short cable, and this is terminated in a female underwater connector.

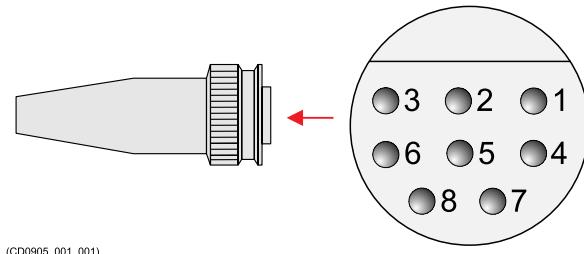
When the transducer is installed, the design of the subsea device must include a watertight junction box with the matched male panel socket. The transducer cable must then be fed from the junction box to the vessel or land station, or to a transceiver built into the subsea unit. Without a local transceiver, adequate protection must be provided to support the transducer cable.

Burton connector

The Burton connector used on the cable is an 8-pin Series 55.

The 5500 Series is an extremely rugged and reliable underwater electrical connector. It is the standard Burton connector series with pins in the receptacles and sockets in the plugs. The pin and socket relationship is due to the fact that in most applications, power runs from the plug into the receptacle. For safety reasons, it is desirable never to have power available on the pin side.

Burton subsea connectors, #CI-Subsea 102010, 2014



For more information about the connectors, refer to the manufacturer's website:

<http://www.cooperinterconnect.com>

Subsea female connector used on the cable

Burton subsea female 8-pin connector (Series 55): **370-076837**

True manufacturer's part number: **5501-2008-0005**

Suggested panel male connector

Burton male panel 8-pin connector (with flange mount): **370-084169**

True manufacturer's part number: **5506-2008-0004**

Pin configuration

Pin on connector	Sectors	Pin on GPT connector	Sector position
1	Sector 1 (+)	H	Aft starboard
4	Sector 1 (-)	J	
2	Sector 2 (+)	E	Aft port
5	Sector 2 (-)	F	
3	Sector 3 (+)	C	Fore port
6	Sector 3 (-)	D	
7	Sector 4 (+)	A	Fore starboard
8	Sector 4 (-)	B	

Related topics[Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

About serial lines

A preferred method to establish communication between the EK80 system and peripheral devices, is by means of serial lines. Several serial line standards are available, each with different qualities.

Unless otherwise specified, these cables must be provided by the installation shipyard.

RS-232 serial communication

An RS-232 serial port was once a standard feature of a personal computer, used for connections to modems, printers, mice, data storage, uninterruptible power supplies, and other peripheral devices. However, RS-232 is hampered by low transmission speed, large voltage swing, and large standard connectors. [...] Nevertheless, RS-232 devices are still used, especially in industrial machines, networking equipment and scientific instruments.

<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/RS-232> (September 2015)

Maximum length for an RS-232 serial cable is typically 60 meters with 2400 bps data rate, however this depends on the cable quality. Always check the cable manufacturers specifications for the actual "shunt capacitance". A common figure is 47.5 pF/m, which gives a maximum cable length of about 50 meters.

Note

Most RS-232 cables do not support all the signals in the standard RS-232 specification. Observe that long runs of unshielded cable will pick up noise easily. This is because the RS-232 signals are not balanced.

Even though a standard exist for RS-232 pin configuration, certain manufacturer may still choose their own connector pins for the various signals used. In order to make the RS-232 connection to your peripheral device work properly, you must always consult the relevant instructions provided by the device manufacturer.

For more information about the RS-232 serial communication standard, see (for example):

- <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/RS-232>

RS-422 serial communication

While RS-232 is the most common serial interface for communicating with external devices using the NMEA standard, it only allows for one transmitter and one receiver on each line.

RS-422 provides a mechanism for transmitting data up to 10 Mbits/s. This interface format uses a balanced signal on two wires. This increases both the maximum baud rate and the physical length of the cable, and it reduces the noise. With a high quality cable, you can use RS-422 on distances up to 1500 meters even in noisy environments. RS-422 is also specified for multi-drop applications. This means that one transmitter can send data to up to 10 receivers.

Note

There are no common standard for RS-422 pin configuration. Any manufacturer may choose their own connector pins for the various signals used. In order to make the RS-422 connection to your peripheral device work properly, you must always consult the relevant instructions provided by the device manufacturer.

Use a cable with twisted pairs.

For more information about the RS-422 serial communication standard, see (for example):

- <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/RS-422>

RS-485 serial communication

RS-485 (also known as TIA-485-A) is a standard defining the electrical characteristics of drivers and receivers for use in balanced digital multipoint systems. The standard is published by the Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance (TIA/EIA). Digital communications networks implementing the RS-485 standard can be used effectively over long distances and in electrically noisy environments. Multiple receivers may be connected to such a network in a linear, multi-drop configuration.

RS-485 offers data transmission speeds of 35 Mbit/s up to 10 m and 100 kbit/s at 1200 m. Since it uses a differential balanced line over twisted pair (like RS-422), it can span relatively large distances (typically up maximum 1200 m). In contrast to RS-422, which has a single driver circuit which cannot be switched off, RS-485 drivers need to be put in transmit mode explicitly by asserting a signal to the driver. This allows RS-485 to implement linear bus topologies using only two wires. The equipment located along a set of RS-485 wires are interchangeably called nodes, stations or devices.

RS-485, like RS-422, can be made full-duplex by using four wires. Since RS-485 is a multi-point specification, however, this is not necessary in many cases.

Note

There are no common standard for RS-485 pin configuration. Any manufacturer may choose their own connector pins for the various signals used. In order to make the RS-485 connection to your peripheral device work properly, you must always consult the relevant instructions provided by the device manufacturer.

Use a cable with twisted pairs.

For more information about the RS-485 serial communication standard, see (for example):

- <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/RS-485>

Related topics

- [Cable drawings and specifications, page 143](#)
- [RS-232 serial line connection using five wires, page 148](#)
- [RS-422 serial line connection using five wires, page 149](#)
- [RS-232 used as synchronization trigger \(input or output\), page 150](#)
- [RS-485 serial line connection using two or four wires, page 151](#)
- [Moxa CP114EL-I Serial line adapter, page 152](#)
- [Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Basic cable requirements

It is very important that all systems cables are installed correctly. All cables must be properly supported and protected, and all relevant precautions must be made to prevent unwanted noise.

Topics

- [Cable trays, page 174](#)
- [Radio frequency interference, page 175](#)
- [Physical protection of cables, page 175](#)
- [Grounding of system cables, page 176](#)
- [Cable connections and terminations, page 176](#)
- [Cable identification, page 177](#)
- [Cable glands and termination procedures, page 177](#)

Cable trays

All permanently installed cables associated with the system must be supported and protected along their entire lengths using conduits and/or cable trays.

The only exception to this rule is over the final short distance (maximum. 0.5 meters) as the cables run into the cabinets/units to which they are connected. These short service loops are to allow the cabinets to move on their shock mounts, and to allow maintenance and repair.

- 1 Wherever possible, cable trays must be straight, accessible and placed so as to avoid possible contamination by condensation and dripping liquids (oil, etc.). They must be installed away from sources of heat, and must be protected against physical damage. Suitable shields must be provided where cables are installed in the vicinity of heat sources.
- 2 Unless it is absolutely unavoidable, cables should not be installed across the vessel's expansion joints. If the situation is unavoidable, a loop of cable having a length proportional to the possible expansion of the joint must be provided. The minimum internal radius of the loop must be at least twelve times the external diameter of the cable.
- 3 Where a service requires duplicate supply lines, the cables must follow separate paths through the vessel whenever possible.
- 4 Signal cables must not be installed in the same cable tray or conduit as high-power cables.
- 5 Cables containing insulation materials with different maximum-rated conductor temperatures should not be bunched together (that is, in a common clip, gland,

conduit or duct). When this is impractical, the cables must be carefully arranged such that the maximum temperature expected in any cable in the group is within the specifications of the lowest-rated cable.

- 6 Cables with protective coverings which may damage other cables should not be grouped with other cables.
- 7 Cables having a copper sheath or braiding must be installed in such a way that galvanic corrosion by contact with other metals is prevented.
- 8 To allow for future expansion of the system, all cables should be allocated spare conductor pairs. Also, space within the vessel should be set aside for the installation of extra cables.

Related topics

[Basic cable requirements, page 174](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Radio frequency interference

All cables that are to be permanently installed within 9 m (30 ft) of any source of Radio Frequency (RF) interference such as a transmitter aerial system or radio transmitters, must, unless shielded by a metal deck or bulkhead, be adequately screened

Suitable screening can be established using sheathing, braiding or other suitable material. In such a situation flexible cables should be screened wherever possible.

It is important that cables, other than those supplying services to the equipment installed in a radio room, are not installed through a radio room, high power switch gear or other potential sources of interference. Cables which must pass through a radio room must be screened by a continuous metal conduit which must be bonded to the screening of the radio room at its points of entry and exit.

Related topics

[Basic cable requirements, page 174](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Physical protection of cables

Cables exposed to the risk of physical damage must be enclosed in a steel conduit or protected by a metal casing unless the cable's covering (for example armour or sheath) is sufficient to protect it from the damage risk.

Cables exposed to an exceptional risk of mechanical damage (for example in holds, storage-spaces and cargo-spaces) must be protected by a suitable casing or conduit, even when armoured, if the cable covering does not guarantee sufficient protection for the cables.

Metallic materials used for the physical protection of cables must be suitably protected against corrosion.

Related topics

[Basic cable requirements, page 174](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Grounding of system cables

All metallic cable coverings (armour, metallic sheathing and other protection) must be electrically connected to the vessel's hull at both ends except in the case of final sub-circuits where they should be connected at the supply end only.

Grounding connections should be made using a conductor which has a cross-sectional area appropriate for the current rating of the cable, or with a metal clamp which grips the metallic covering of the cable and is bonded to the hull of the vessel. These cable coverings may also be grounded by means of glands specially intended for this purpose and designed to ensure a good ground connection. The glands used must be firmly attached to, and in good electrical contact with, a metal structure grounded in accordance with these recommendations.

Electrical continuity must be ensured along the entire length of all cable coverings, particularly at joints and splices. In no case should the shielding of cables be used as the only means of grounding cables or units.

Metallic casings, pipes and conduits must be grounded, and when fitted with joints these must be mechanically and electrically grounded locally.

Related topics

[Basic cable requirements, page 174](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Cable connections and terminations

All cable connections are shown on the applicable cable plan and/or interconnection diagrams.

Where the cable plan shows cable connections outside an equipment box outline, the connections are to be made to a plug or socket which matches the plug or socket on that particular item of equipment.

Where two cables are connected in series via a junction box or terminal block, the screens of both cables must be connected together, but not grounded.

Care must be taken to ensure that the correct terminations are used for all cable conductors, especially those that are to be connected to terminal blocks. In this case, crimped sleeve-terminations must be fitted to prevent the conductor core from fraying and making a bad connection with the terminal block. It is also of the utmost importance

that where crimped terminations are used, the correct size of crimp and crimping tool are used. In addition, each cable conductor must have a minimum of 15 cm slack (service loop) left before its termination is fitted.

Related topics

- [Basic cable requirements, page 174](#)
- [Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Cable identification

Cable identification codes corresponding to the cable number shown in the cable plan must be attached to each of the external cables.

The identification codes should be positioned on the cable in such a way that they are readily visible after all panels have been fitted.

In addition, each cable conductor should be marked with the terminal board number or socket to which it is connected.

Related topics

- [Basic cable requirements, page 174](#)
- [Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Cable glands and termination procedures

Cable glands are used to attach and secure the end of a cable to the equipment. Cable glands may also be used for sealing cables passing through bulkheads or gland plates.

Related topics

- [Basic cable requirements, page 174](#)
- [Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

About cable glands

Cable glands are used whenever a cable passes through a watertight bulkhead or into a cabinet, to seal the opening through which the cable passes and to protect the cable from abrasion on the edges of the hole.

There are many different types of cable gland on the market. The cable glands are not supplied with the system.

Note

Even though the cabinets from Kongsberg Maritime may be prepared for specific types of cable glands, the installation shipyard will be responsible for selecting cable gland types and installing them.

A cable gland (in the U.S. more often known as a cable connector or fitting) is a device designed to attach and secure the end of a cable to the equipment. A cable gland provides strain-relief and connects by a means suitable for the type and description of cable for which it is designed—including provision for making electrical connection to the armour or braid and lead or aluminium sheath of the cable, if any. Cable glands may also be used for sealing cables passing through bulkheads or gland plates.

Cable glands are mechanical cable entry devices and can be constructed from metallic or non-metallic materials. They are used throughout a number of industries in conjunction with cable and wiring used in electrical instrumentation and automation systems.

Cable glands may be used on all types of electrical power, control, instrumentation, data and telecommunications cables. They are used as a sealing and termination device to ensure that the characteristics of the enclosure which the cable enters can be maintained adequately.

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cable_gland (February 2014)

Related topics

[Basic cable requirements, page 174](#)

[Cable glands and termination procedures, page 177](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Preparing cables for termination

Whenever a cable shall penetrate a cabinet or a bulkhead using a cable gland, the termination of the cable must be prepared.

Prerequisites

Electrical installations can only be done by certified electricians. All necessary tools and instruments required must be available. The installation shipyard must prepare detailed drawings of the electrical system, and identify each cable.

Context

Cable glands are used whenever a cable passes through a watertight bulkhead or into a cabinet, to seal the opening through which the cable passes and to protect the cable from abrasion on the edges of the hole. The cable glands are not supplied with the EK80.

Note

There are many different types of cable gland on the market. This procedure describes the types used (now and previously) as standard in the units manufactured by Kongsberg Maritime. Even though the cabinets from Kongsberg Maritime may be prepared for specific types, the installation shipyard will be responsible for selecting cable gland types and installing them.

Procedure

- 1 Ensure all the cables to be connected are completely isolated from any power sources.
For safety reasons, switch off and remove the power supply fuses from any units or systems into which the cables are already connected.
- 2 Select the cable to be connected into the cabinet, and select the cable gland through which the cable is to pass.

Note _____

A minimum of 5 cm (recommended 5 to 10 cm) of cable slack must be allowed, both inside and outside the unity or cabinet, when you install cables. This is to allow for vibration damping, maintenance and measurement errors. Always double-check your measurements before taking any irreversible actions.

- 3 Measure the maximum length of cable.
 - a If the cable has already been installed in conduits: Measure the maximum length of cable required to reach from the final cable clip outside the cabinet to the terminal block(s) inside the cabinet. Add 20 cm, and remove the excess cable.
 - b If the cable has not been installed in conduits: Measure the maximum length of wire required to reach from the cable gland to the terminal block(s) inside the cabinet. Add 20 cm, and mark the cable.

Note _____

The outer insulation on the cable will extend into the cable gland to a point approximately 5 mm outside the outer surface of the cabinet wall.

- 4 Carefully remove the outer insulation from the required cable length.
Be careful! Do not damage the screen!
- 5 Leaving an appropriate length of the screen exposed from the insulation, cut off the remainder.

Related topics

- [Basic cable requirements, page 174](#)
[Cable glands and termination procedures, page 177](#)
[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Securing and terminating cables

Once a cable has been prepared for termination, it must be connected to a unit or cabinet.

Prerequisites

Electrical installations can only be done by certified electricians. All necessary tools and instruments required must be available. The installation shipyard must prepare detailed drawings of the electrical system, and identify each cable.

Context

Observe the relevant cable plans, cable lists and/or interconnection drawings for the EK80.

Procedure

- 1 Referring to the wiring diagram and ensuring that there is 5 to 10 cm slack cable inside the cabinet, prepare and connect the cable cores to the appropriate terminals and/or plugs within or onto the cabinet.
- 2 Secure the cable using cable clips.
- 3 Check the terminal connections against the wiring diagram to ensure they are correct. Follow the same procedure for all the cables and cable glands.
- 4 Check the cabinet to ensure all tools and rubbish are removed, then close the cabinet door.
- 5 Take the appropriate safety measures, then replace the fuses and apply power to the system.
- 6 Perform a relevant system test to ensure the installation has been made successfully.

Related topics

[Basic cable requirements, page 174](#)

[Cable glands and termination procedures, page 177](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

Using multi-diameter cable sealing

Cable sealing systems are available from several manufacturers, and multi-diameter types are becoming increasingly popular due to their ease of use.

Prerequisites

Electrical installations can only be done by certified electricians. All necessary tools and instruments required must be available. The installation shipyard must prepare detailed drawings of the electrical system, and identify each cable.

Illustration:

Sealing system example; the finished assembly

Context

Only a brief description of the sealing system will be presented here. Further information with relevant technical specifications and installation descriptions must be obtained from the manufacturer.



Roxtec modules (Image from Roxtec website)

The illustrations and examples here are provided by the following manufacturer:

Roxtec International AB
Box 540
S-371 23 Karlskrona, SWEDEN

- <http://www.roxtc.com>

Illustration:

Roxtec steps (Image from Roxtec website)

The Roxtec system is available with a large number of various modules and compression units. The system complies with current screening and EMC requirements.

Procedure

- 1 Cut an opening in the structure (bulkhead, cabinet etc) you wish to penetrate.

The hole must be large enough to fit one of the standard rectangular or circular frames provided by the sealing system manufacturer.

Note

The chosen solution must comply with the fire and/or pressure demands for the vessel. If the sealing is to be used under water, both pressure and material requirements must be taken into consideration.

- 2 Mount the frame.

- 3 Pull the cable(s) through the frame.

In most cases the opening will be large enough to accept the plugs on the cables.

- 4 Secure each cable with a square sealing module.

- 5 Adjust the module to fit the cable's outer diameter.

- 6 When the required number of modules are installed, tighten the assembly with a compression unit.

Further requirements

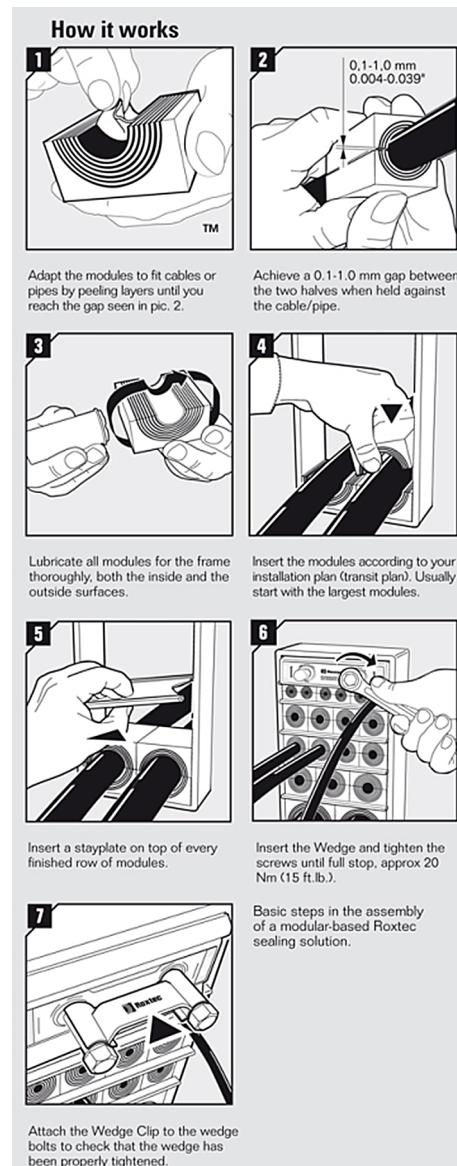
For a complete installation procedure, refer to the relevant documentation provided by the manufacturer.

Related topics

[Basic cable requirements, page 174](#)

[Cable glands and termination procedures, page 177](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)



Dimensional surveying

The Simrad EK80 Wide band scientific echo sounder is a precision instrument. In order to provide data that are both detailed and correct you must align, position and calibrate the sensors and each transducer on your vessel.

Topics

[Quality assurance of the EK80 data, page 184](#)

[Surveying the transducer and the navigation sensors, page 186](#)

[Dimensional survey accuracy requirements for ADCP operations, page 188](#)

[Dimensional survey accuracy requirements for echo sounding operations, page 189](#)

[Vessel coordinate system, page 189](#)

Quality assurance of the EK80 data

The Simrad EK80 Wide band scientific echo sounder is a precision instrument for scientific measurements.

The EK80 has been designed for target strength measurements of objects in the water column. To obtain precision data that are both detailed and correct, it is necessary to align the transducer, measure the location and offset of each sensor in relation to the vessel's coordinate system, and calibrate the complete system prior to use.

Note

Modest accuracy requirements apply when your EK80 system is only used to investigate objects in the water column. When used for acoustic Doppler current profiler (ADCP) measurements the accuracy requirements are increased.

The quality assurance tasks required for the EK80 system include:

- Aligning the transducer during installation
- Dimensional surveying
- Calibration

The alignment and dimensional surveying must be done during the system installation with the vessel in dry dock. The first calibration is normally done at sea during the Sea Acceptance Test. We strongly recommend that calibration is repeated before and after each survey. This is important for achieving high-quality measurement results.

Alignment

The alignment tasks required for the EK80 transducer include:

- Measure and adjust the transducer to ensure that it has been mounted horizontally within the given tolerances.
- Measure and adjust the transducer to ensure correct orientation.

Note

Modest accuracy requirements apply when your EK80 system is only used to investigate objects in the water column. If this is the case the alignment of the transducer can be omitted.

When used for acoustic Doppler current profiler (ADCP) measurements the accuracy requirements are increased. Aligning the transducer for correct installation within the given tolerances requires professional skills.

Dimensional surveying

The dimensional surveying tasks recommended for the EK80 system include:

- Define the vessel coordinate system.

The vessel coordinate system is established to define the relative physical locations of system units and sensors. When you have several different sensors and transducers on your vessel, and you wish each of them to provide accurate data, you need to know their relative physical positions.

- Define the location of the *origin* in the coordinate system.

The *origin* is the common reference point where all three axis in the vessel coordinate system meet. All physical locations of the vessel's sensors (radar and positioning system antennas, echo sounder and sonar transducers, motion reference units, etc.) are referenced to the origin.

- Define the vessel's centre line.

- Measure the physical location of each sensor (or sensor antenna). Place it in the coordinate system.

By means of the vessel coordinate system, the physical location of every sensor can be defined using three numerical values for X, Y and Z. These values must define the vertical and horizontal distances from a single reference point; the origin. The accuracy of the three numerical values for X, Y and Z defines the accuracy of the sensor data.

- Measure the physical location and orientation of the transducer. Place it in the coordinate system.

Note

Determining the relative positions and orientations of the sensors and the transducer with high accuracy is important. This requires professional surveying done by qualified and trained personnel using proven equipment and methods for maritime dimensional surveying. We recommend that you use third-party consultants with well proven experience with vessel dimensional control. Sufficient time and satisfactory work conditions must be given to the survey work. The installation engineers from Kongsberg Maritime are neither equipped nor trained to do dimensional surveying.

The information provided by the dimensional survey is entered into the EK80 software as installation parameters.

Calibration

If an existing sensors have been replaced, or a new sensor has been added to the vessel, a new calibration is required. A new calibration may also be required if the EK80 software is updated. Refer to the software release note.

The information provided by the calibration is entered into the EK80 software as operational parameters. This is done automatically.

Note

Calibration must be taken seriously. The final verification of correct installation can only be done during calibration at sea. Installation and operational parameters that do not meet the accuracy requirements may lead to a malfunctioning EK80 system. To achieve the best results, the calibration must be planned and done carefully. If the accuracy requirements are not met, and this is found to be the reason for a malfunctioning system, the vessel will most likely need to be dry docked in order to repeat the dimensional survey.

Related topics

[Dimensional surveying, page 183](#)

Surveying the transducer and the navigation sensors

An overall procedure specifying the main tasks is provided. The detailed knowledge about how to do the measurements is offered by the consultants doing the work.

Prerequisites

Determining the relative positions and orientations of the sensors and the transducer with high accuracy is important. This requires professional surveying done by qualified and trained personnel using proven equipment and methods for maritime dimensional surveying. We recommend that you use third-party consultants with well proven experience with vessel dimensional control. Sufficient time and satisfactory work conditions must be given to the survey work. The installation engineers from Kongsberg Maritime are neither equipped nor trained to do dimensional surveying.

We strongly recommend that you make the dimensional survey measurements when the vessel is in dry dock.

Context

All measurements must be made after the installation of the transducer and the navigation sensors. The following measurements must be made for each sensor:

- Physical position with reference to the vessel coordinate system (X, Y and Z) and the chosen origin.
- Angular values (pitch and roll)
- Heading with reference to the centre line

Note

Modest accuracy requirements apply when your EK80 system is only used to investigate objects in the water column. When used for acoustic Doppler current profiler (ADCP) measurements the accuracy requirements are increased.

For all measurements, observe the relevant accuracy requirements.

Procedure

- 1 Define the vessel coordinate system.
- 2 Define the location of the *origin* in the coordinate system. If required, identify the location with a physical marking.
- 3 Set out the required coordinate reference points throughout the vessel.
- 4 Define the vessel's centre line. If required, identify the line with physical markings.
- 5 Measure the physical location and orientation of the transducer.
- 6 Measure the physical location and rotation angles of the motion reference unit (MRU).
- 7 Measure the physical location and rotation angles of the heading sensor.
- 8 Measure the physical location and rotation angles of the global positioning system (GPS) antenna.
- 9 Measure the physical location and rotation angles of other relevant sensors (or sensor antennas).

Result

All results from the dimensional survey measurements must be summarized in a report by the consultants doing the work.

Further requirements

We strongly recommend that calibration surveys are done at regular intervals. As a minimum, calibration must be done prior to any large and/or important survey. If an existing sensors have been replaced, or a new sensor has been added to the vessel, a new calibration is required. A new calibration may also be required if the EK80 software is updated. Refer to the software release note.

Related topics

[Dimensional surveying, page 183](#)

Dimensional survey accuracy requirements for ADCP operations

Minimum accuracy requirements are defined for the dimensional survey. Higher accuracy will provide better survey results.

Modest accuracy requirements apply when your EK80 system is only used to investigate objects in the water column. When used for acoustic Doppler current profiler (ADCP) measurements the accuracy requirements are increased. The accuracy requirements provided have been determined from considerations on how they contribute to the total EK80 accuracy. Any errors in these measurements should not contribute significantly to depth or position errors in the soundings.

Note

The given accuracies are maximum values. If easily achievable, better accuracies should be obtained.

Transducer

- **Position (x,y):** ± 0.05 m
- **Position (z):** ± 0.02 m
- **Pitch:** $\pm 0.10^\circ$
- **Roll:** $\pm 0.025^\circ$
- **Heading:** $\pm 0.1^\circ$

Motion Reference Unit (MRU)

- **Position (x,y):** ± 0.05 m
- **Position (z):** ± 0.05 m
- **Pitch:** $\pm 0.05^\circ$
- **Roll:** $\pm 0.02^\circ$
- **Heading:** $\pm 0.05^\circ$

Heading sensor

- **Heading:** $\pm 0.1^\circ$

Global positioning system (GPS) (Antenna)

- **Horizontal position (x,y):** ± 0.05 m
- **Vertical position (z):** ± 0.005 m

Waterline reference mark

- **Position (z):** ± 0.005 m

Related topics

[Dimensional surveying, page 183](#)

Dimensional survey accuracy requirements for echo sounding operations

No specific requirements have been defined for the dimensional survey.

Related topics

[Dimensional surveying, page 183](#)

Vessel coordinate system

The vessel coordinate system is established to define the relative physical locations of system units and sensors.

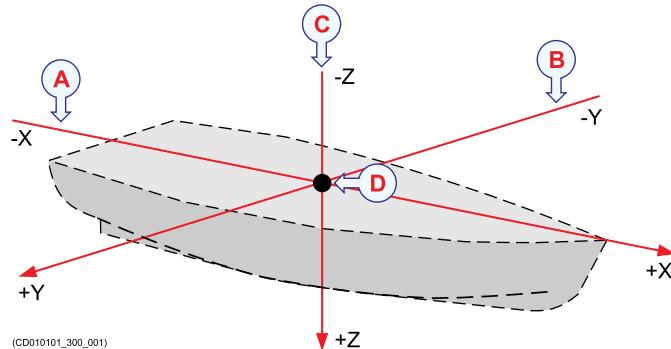
When you have several different sensors and transducers on your vessel, and you wish each of them to provide accurate data, you need to know their relative physical positions. The antenna of a position sensor is typically mounted high above the superstructure, while a motion sensor is located close to the vessel's centre of gravity. Both of these are physically positioned far away from the transducer, which may be located closer to the bow. Very often, the information from one sensor depends on data from another. It is then important that the relevant measurements are compensated for these relative distances.

Example

If you wish to measure the actual water depth, you will need to know the vertical distance from the echo sounder transducer to the water line. Since the vessel's displacement changes with the amount of cargo, fuel etc, the physical location of the water line on the hull must either be measured at a regular basis, or measured with a second sensor.

In order to establish a system to measure the relative distance between sensors, a virtual coordinate system is established. This coordinate system uses three vectors; X, Y and Z.

- A** *The X-axis is the longitudinal direction of the vessel, and in parallel with the deck.
A positive value for X means that a sensor or a reference point is located ahead of the reference point (origin).*
- B** *The Y-axis is the transverse direction of the vessel, and in parallel with the deck.
A positive value for Y means that a sensor or a reference point is located on the starboard side of the reference point (origin).*
- C** *The Z-axis is vertical, and in parallel with the mast. A positive value for Z means that a sensor or a new reference point is located under the reference point (origin).*
- D** *Reference point (Ship Origin)*



(CD010101_300_001)

Coordinate system origin

The *origin* is the common reference point where all three axis in the vessel coordinate system meet. All physical locations of the vessel's sensors (radar and positioning system antennas, echo sounder and sonar transducers, motion reference units, etc.) are referenced to the origin. In most cases, the location of the vessel's "official" origin has been defined by the designer or shipyard. This origin is normally identified with a physical marking, and also shown on the vessel drawings.

Frequently used locations are:

- Aft immediately over the rudder (frame 0)
- Vessel's centre of gravity
- The physical location of the motion sensor

Coordinate system alternative origins

If necessary, other origin locations may be defined for specific products or purposes. One example is the *Navigation Reference Point* that is frequently used. Whenever a vessel is surveyed to establish accurate offset information, the surveyor may also establish an alternative origin location. Whenever relevant, any such alternative locations must be defined using offset values to the "official" origin established by the designer or shipyard. A commonly used alternative origin is the physical location of the vessel's motion sensor.

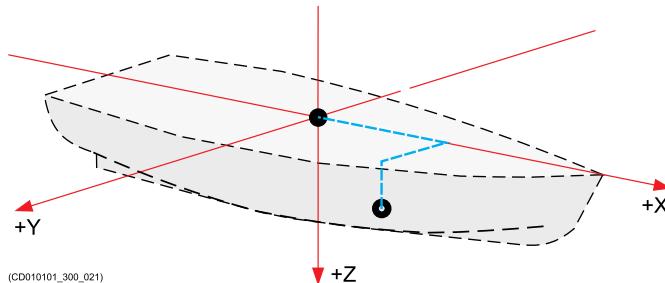
Defining the physical location of each sensor

By means of the vessel coordinate system, the physical location of every sensor can be defined using three numerical values for X, Y and Z. These values must define the

vertical and horizontal distances from a single reference point; the origin. The physical location of the motion reference unit (MRU) is often the most important sensor to define. For many systems, the vessel heading is also a critical measurement.

Illustration:

In this example, a second reference point has been established. It is defined with three positive offset values for X, Y and Z. All values are positive because the new reference point is in front of and below the origin, and on the starboard side.



The accuracy of the three numerical values for X, Y and Z defines the accuracy of the sensor data. If you require a high accuracy, for example for underwater positioning, underwater mapping or scientific measurements, you must have each sensor positioned using professional land surveying. For such use, a good alignment survey is critical for high quality results. Surveys are normally done by qualified and trained surveyors using proven survey equipment and methods.

Related topics

[Preparations, page 46](#)

[Dimensional surveying, page 183](#)

Setting to work

Topics

- [Setting to work summary, page 193](#)
- [Making sure that the EK80 is ready for operational use, page 195](#)
- [Turning on the EK80 system for the first time, page 206](#)
- [Installing and troubleshooting Network Time Protocol \(NTP\), page 221](#)
- [Configuring the EK80 system for normal operation, page 231](#)
- [Interfacing peripheral equipment, page 235](#)
- [Test procedures, page 263](#)
- [Turning off the EK80 system, page 283](#)
- [Installation remarks, page 285](#)

Setting to work summary

Once all the hardware units have been installed, and all the cables have been connected, the EK80 system can be turned on for the first time and set to work.

Prerequisites

Before you can set the EK80 system to work, the following prerequisites must be met:

- The system units have all been installed according to the instructions provided.
- All system cables are connected.
- All cable connections are made.
- Correct operating power is available.
- All peripheral devices that shall communicate with the EK80 system are available and operational.
- All relevant personnel and tools are available.

Context

Several sequential tasks are provided. Start with the first procedure, proceed with the next until all tasks have been done. Make sure that you only do the specific tasks provided, and in the given order. Many tasks here are explained in more detail in separate procedures.

Note

The installation shipyard must provide all necessary design and installation drawings, as well as the relevant work standards and mounting procedures.

Procedure

- 1 Do a thorough visual inspection to make sure that the EK80 system is ready for operational use.
 - a Make sure that all hardware units have been installed correctly.
 - b Make sure that all the cables have been connected correctly.
 - [Making sure that the EK80 is ready for operational use, page 195](#)
- 2 Turn on the EK80 system for the first time.
 - a Install the EK80 software and the relevant software licenses.
 - b Define the IP address on the Ethernet adapter.
 - c Optional: Install the NTP (Network Time Protocol).
These tasks are only applicable for a EK80 system fitted with relevant hardware for acoustic Doppler current profiler (ADCP) functionality.
 - d On the **Transducer Installation** page, install each transducer not automatically installed.

- e On the **Transceiver Installation** page, connect the transducer(s) to the transceiver(s).
 - [Turning on the EK80 system for the first time, page 206](#)
 - [Installing and troubleshooting Network Time Protocol \(NTP\), page 221](#)
 - [Configuring the EK80 system for normal operation, page 231](#)
- 3 Set up the interfaces with the external devices (navigation sensors and other peripherals).

To provide correct information, the EK80 system needs to communicate with external devices. All these interfaces must be set up in the user interface.

- [Interfacing peripheral equipment, page 235](#)
- 4 Make sure that the EK80 system is fully operational.
- To make sure that the EK80 system fulfils all operational and functional requirements, specific tests are provided.
- [Test procedures, page 263](#)
- 5 Fill in and sign the *Installation Remarks* form, and return it to Kongsberg Maritime.

Making sure that the EK80 is ready for operational use

Topics

- [Making sure that the AC mains supply voltage is correct, page 195](#)
- [Making sure that all EK80 system cables are properly connected, page 196](#)
- [Visual inspection of the display, page 197](#)
- [Visual inspection of the Processor Unit, page 199](#)
- [Visual inspection of the Wide Band Transceiver \(WBT\), page 200](#)
- [Visual inspection of the WBT Cabinet, page 202](#)
- [Visual inspection of the EC150-3C Power Supply Unit, page 204](#)

Making sure that the AC mains supply voltage is correct

The EK80 system operates on AC power from the vessel's mains supply. Before you connect AC power to any system unit, you must make sure that the voltage is correct.

Prerequisites

The EK80 system hardware units are installed as specified in this manual. The EK80 system is turned off. You need the following equipment:

- Multimeter

Procedure

For each system unit that operates on AC mains:

- 1 Make sure that the unit is connected to AC mains supply.
- 2 Make sure that the relevant system unit can operate on the mains power provided.
- 3 If necessary: Measure the voltage.
- 4 Make sure that each circuit breaker on the power circuit can handle the load when the EK80 system is turned on.

Result

Requirements	Results
Each EK80 unit can operate on the AC mains voltage available.	
Date and signature:	

Related topics

[Making sure that the EK80 is ready for operational use, page 195](#)

Making sure that all EK80 system cables are properly connected

The EK80 system relies on communication between each unit, and between the EK80 system and external devices. It is very important that all cables are correctly installed, that the proper cable types have been used, and that all cables are connected correctly.

Prerequisites

The EK80 system hardware units are installed as specified in this manual.

- The EK80 system is turned off.
- All system cables are installed.
- All cable connections are made.

You need the following equipment:

- Cable tester
- Multimeter

Context

All cabling is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter. Refer to the cable plan, the cable list and the basic cable requirements.

Procedure

- 1 For each cable in use on the EK80 system:
 - a Make sure that the cable is installed as specified in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter.
Pay special attention to signal cables. These must not be installed too close to power cables.
 - b Make sure that the terminations at each end of the cable are correct.
 - c Make sure that the cable is properly identified.
- 2 If possible, use a multimeter or a dedicated cable tester to check the continuity in each cable.
- 3 Use a qualification tester to make sure that each Ethernet cable is correctly wired, and meets the specifications related to quality and bandwidth.
- 4 If irregularities are found, write these down in the in the *Installation remarks* table.

Result

Requirements	Results
All cables are properly connected.	
All cables are properly identified with labels or other types of markings.	
Each Ethernet cable in use is correctly wired.	
Each Ethernet cable in use meets the quality requirements.	
Date and signature:	

Related topics

[Making sure that the EK80 is ready for operational use, page 195](#)

Visual inspection of the display

A visual inspection of the display is required to verify that the unit has not been physically damaged during the installation.

Prerequisites

The EK80 system hardware units are installed as specified in this manual. The EK80 system is turned off. You need the following equipment:

- Multimeter

Context

This test procedure is only applicable when the display is provided by Kongsberg Maritime as a part of the EK80 delivery.

Procedure

- 1 Make sure that the display is installed in the correct location, and that it is suitably orientated with respect to ambient light conditions and reflections.
- 2 Make sure that the physical installation of the unit has been completed.
 - a Make sure that the structure to which the display is fastened is substantial enough to hold the unit securely under all operating conditions.
 - b If applicable, make sure that the display (or the display mounting bracket) is bolted or welded securely to the deck and/or bulkhead.
 - c If applicable: Make sure that ample ventilation is provided to avoid overheating.
 - d Make sure that ample space is provided around the unit to allow for maintenance and replacement of parts.
 - e Make sure that the bolts, screws or studs that have been used are all of the correct size.
 - f Make sure that the correct flat and shake-proof washers have been used.

- g Make sure that all the nuts have been tightened properly.
 - h Make sure that all welds and brackets have been painted with the correct preservation medium to prevent corrosion.
- 3 Make sure that the unit is not physically damaged, and that the surfaces and paint-work are clean without dents or scratches.
- The physical handling during the installation may have caused some minor scratches to the surfaces or paint-work. This can be accepted. However, if rough handling has caused serious damage, this must be recorded with a written statement and necessary photos, so that corrective actions can be made.
- 4 Make sure that the unit is firmly connected to ship's ground.
- a The unit must be connected to the ship's ground with an earthing strap. The strap must be in addition to any incidental electrical contact made by the mounting lugs on the unit.
 - b Use a standard multimeter to check that the resistance between the unit and the ship's ground is approximately 0 (zero) Ω .
- 5 Make sure that cable installation has been completed.
- a Make sure that all cables leading to and from the unit have been properly mounted and secured.
 - b Make sure that enough slack has been provided on each cable to allow for maintenance and replacement.
- 6 Make sure that the unit has been identified with the relevant product label(s), and that one label includes the part and serial numbers.

Result

Requirements	Results
The display is correctly installed with easy access for maintenance and replacement of parts.	
The display is free from scratches, dents or other physical damage.	
Free access to all the connectors on the display is provided. All cables are properly mounted with enough slack.	
The display is properly grounded.	
Date and signature:	

Related topics

[Making sure that the EK80 is ready for operational use, page 195](#)

Visual inspection of the Processor Unit

A visual inspection of the Processor Unit is required to verify that the unit has not been physically damaged during the installation.

Prerequisites

The EK80 system hardware units are installed as specified in this manual. The EK80 system is turned off. You need the following equipment:

- Multimeter

Context

This test procedure is only applicable when the computer is provided by Kongsberg Maritime as a part of the delivery.

Procedure

- 1 Make sure that the computer is installed in the correct location, and that it is suitably oriented for replacement and cabling.
- 2 Make sure that the physical installation of the unit has been completed.
 - a Make sure that you have free access to rear and front side connectors on the computer for maintenance purposes.
 - b Make sure that ample space is provided to open/close DVD and/or CD lids (if relevant), and to insert and remove USB flash drives.
 - c If applicable: Make sure that ample ventilation is provided to avoid overheating.
 - d Make sure that ample space is provided around the unit to allow for maintenance and replacement of parts.
 - e Make sure that the bolts, screws or studs that have been used are all of the correct size.
 - f Make sure that the correct flat and shake-proof washers have been used.
 - g Make sure that all the nuts have been tightened properly.
 - h Make sure that all welds and brackets have been painted with the correct preservation medium to prevent corrosion.
- 3 Make sure that the unit is not physically damaged, and that the surfaces and paint-work are clean without dents or scratches.

The physical handling during the installation may have caused some minor scratches to the surfaces or paint-work. This can be accepted. However, if rough handling has caused serious damage, this must be recorded with a written statement and necessary photos, so that corrective actions can be made.

- 4 Make sure that the unit is firmly connected to ship's ground.

- a Make sure that the unit is securely connected to the ship's ground with an earthing strap. The strap must be in addition to any incidental electrical contact made by the mounting lugs on the unit.
 - b Use a standard multimeter to check that the resistance between the unit and the ship's ground is approximately 0 (zero) Ω .
- 5 Make sure that cable installation has been completed.
 - a Make sure that all cables leading to and from the unit have been properly mounted and secured.
 - b Make sure that enough slack has been provided on each cable to allow for maintenance and replacement.
 - 6 Make sure that the unit has been identified with the relevant product label(s), and that one label includes the part and serial numbers.

Result

Requirements	Results
The Processor Unit is correctly installed with easy access for maintenance and replacement of parts.	
The Processor Unit is new, clean and free from scratches, dents or other physical damage.	
Free access to all the connectors on the Processor Unit is provided. All cables are properly mounted with enough slack.	
The Processor Unit can be fully opened for access to the internal parts.	
The Processor Unit is properly connected to vessel ground.	
Date and signature:	

Related topics

[Making sure that the EK80 is ready for operational use, page 195](#)

Visual inspection of the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)

A visual inspection of the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) is required to verify that the unit has not been physically damaged during the installation. If more than one transceiver is used, each must be inspected separately.

Prerequisites

The EK80 system hardware units are installed as specified in this manual. The EK80 system is turned off. You need the following equipment:

- Multimeter

Context

The steps in this procedure must be repeated for each transceiver that is installed.

Procedure

- 1 Make sure that the transceiver is installed in the correct location, and that it is suitably oriented for easy maintenance and replacement of parts.
- 2 Make sure that the physical installation of the unit has been completed.
 - a Make sure that the room is provided with ample ventilation to prevent system units from overheating.
 - b Make sure that the compartment ("sonar room") is clean and dry.
 - c Make sure that the bulkhead structure to which the transceiver is fastened is substantial enough to hold the unit securely under all operating conditions.
 - d Make sure that ample ventilation is provided to avoid overheating.
 - e Make sure that you have free access to all the connectors on the transceiver for maintenance purposes.
 - f Make sure that the bolts, screws or studs that have been used are all of the correct size.
 - g Make sure that the correct flat and shake-proof washers have been used.
 - h Make sure that all the nuts have been tightened properly.
 - i Make sure that all welds and brackets have been painted with the correct preservation medium to prevent corrosion.
- 3 Make sure that the unit is not physically damaged, and that the surfaces and paint-work are clean without dents or scratches.

The physical handling during the installation may have caused some minor scratches to the surfaces or paint-work. This can be accepted. However, if rough handling has caused serious damage, this must be recorded with a written statement and necessary photos, so that corrective actions can be made.
- 4 Make sure that the unit is firmly connected to ship's ground.
 - a Make sure that the unit is securely connected to the ship's ground with an earthing strap. The strap must be in addition to any incidental electrical contact made by the mounting lugs on the unit.
 - b Use a standard multimeter to check that the resistance between the unit and the ship's ground is approximately 0 (zero) Ω .
- 5 Make sure that cable installation has been completed.
 - a Make sure that all cables leading to and from the unit have been properly mounted and secured.
 - b Make sure that enough slack has been provided on each cable to allow for maintenance and replacement.
- 6 Make sure that the unit has been identified with the relevant product label(s), and that one label includes the part and serial numbers.

Result

Requirements	Results
The transceiver is correctly installed with easy access for maintenance and replacement of parts.	
The transceiver is free from scratches, dents or other physical damage.	
Free access to all the connectors on the transceiver are provided. All cables connected to the transceiver are properly mounted with enough slack.	
The welds and brackets that support the transceiver are strong enough to hold the unit securely in place under all operating conditions. The welds and brackets have been painted with the correct preservation medium to prevent corrosion.	
The transceiver is properly grounded.	
Date and signature:	

Related topics

[Making sure that the EK80 is ready for operational use, page 195](#)

Visual inspection of the WBT Cabinet

A visual inspection of the WBT Cabinet is required to verify that it has not been physically damaged during the installation.

Prerequisites

The EK80 system hardware units are installed as specified in this manual. The EK80 system is turned off. You need the following equipment:

- Multimeter

Procedure

- 1 Make sure that the WBT Cabinet is installed in the correct location, and that it is suitably oriented for easy maintenance and replacement of parts.
- 2 Make sure that the physical installation of the cabinet has been completed.
 - a Make sure that the room is provided with ample ventilation to prevent system units from overheating.
 - b Make sure that the compartment ("sonar room") is clean and dry.
 - c If applicable: Make sure that the bulkhead structure to which the cabinet is fastened is substantial enough to hold it securely in place under all operating conditions.
 - d If applicable: Make sure that all welds and brackets have been painted with the correct preservation medium to prevent corrosion.
 - e Make sure that the bolts, screws or studs that have been used are all of the correct size.

- f Make sure that the correct flat and shake-proof washers have been used.
 - g Make sure that all the nuts have been tightened properly.
- 3 If the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) units have been installed during the EK80 system installation:
- a Make sure that each drawer label has been positioned correctly and reflects the relevant transceiver.
 - b Make sure that all the power supplies have been installed on the dedicated bottom drawer(s).
 - c Make sure that all the power cables are fastened to the front vertical rail on the left side.
 - d Makes sure that all the transducer cables are installed on the same side of the WBT Cabinet, and the opposite side of the power cables.
 - e Makes sure that the entire installation allows for maintenance and replacements.
- How to install the cables in the WBT Cabinet is described on drawing 444425. The drawing can be downloaded from our website. The drawing is also included on the EK80 USB.
- 4 Make sure that the cabinet is not physically damaged, and that the paint-work is clean without dents or scratches.
- The physical handling during the installation may have caused some minor scratches to the surfaces or paint-work. This can be accepted. However, if rough handling has caused serious damage, this must be recorded with a written statement and necessary photos, so that corrective actions can be made.
- 5 Make sure that the cabinet is firmly connected to ship's ground.
- a Make sure that the cabinet is securely connected to the ship's ground with an earthing strap. The strap must be in addition to any incidental electrical contact made by the mounting lugs on the cabinet.
 - b Use a standard multimeter to check that the resistance between the cabinet and the ship's ground is approximately 0 (zero) Ω .
- 6 Make sure that the cabinet has been identified with the relevant product label(s).

Result

Requirements	Results
The cabinet is correctly installed with easy access for maintenance and replacement of parts.	
The cabinet is clean and free from scratches, dents or other physical damage.	
All transceivers, power supplies and cables have been installed according to the drawing.	
The welds and brackets that support the cabinet are strong enough to hold the unit securely in place under all operating conditions. The welds and brackets have been painted with the correct preservation medium to prevent corrosion.	

Requirements	Results
The cabinet is properly grounded.	
Date and signature:	

Related topics

[Making sure that the EK80 is ready for operational use, page 195](#)

Visual inspection of the EC150-3C Power Supply Unit

A visual inspection of the Power Supply Unit is required to verify that the unit has not been physically damaged during the installation.

Prerequisites

The EK80 system hardware units are installed as specified in this manual. The EK80 system is turned off. You need the following equipment:

- Multimeter

Context

The purpose of the Power Supply Unit is to provide the EK80 system with the necessary power for operation. The Power Supply Unit also controls the Ethernet communication between the transducer and the Processor Unit, as well as the synchronization with peripheral devices.

Procedure

- 1 Verify that the Power Supply Unit is installed in the correct location, and that it is suitably oriented for easy maintenance and replacement of parts.
- 2 Make sure that the physical installation of the unit has been completed.
 - a Make sure that ample space is provided around the unit to allow for maintenance and replacement of parts.
 - b Make sure that the cabinet door can be fully opened for unrestricted access.
 - c Make sure that the bolts, screws or studs that have been used are all of the correct size.
 - d Make sure that the correct flat and shake-proof washers have been used.
 - e Make sure that all the nuts have been tightened properly.
 - f Make sure that all welds and brackets have been painted with the correct preservation medium to prevent corrosion.

- 3 Make sure that the unit is not physically damaged, and that the surfaces and paint-work are clean without dents or scratches.
The physical handling during the installation may have caused some minor scratches to the surfaces or paint-work. This can be accepted. However, if rough handling has caused serious damage, this must be recorded with a written statement and necessary photos, so that corrective actions can be made.
- 4 Make sure that the unit has been identified with the relevant product label(s), and that one label includes the part and serial numbers.
- 5 Make sure that the unit is firmly connected to ship's ground.
 - a Make sure that the unit is securely connected to the ship's ground with an earthing strap. The strap must be in addition to any incidental electrical contact made by the mounting lugs on the unit.
 - b Use a standard multimeter to check that the resistance between the unit and the ship's ground is approximately 0 (zero) Ω .
- 6 Make sure that cable installation has been completed.
 - a Make sure that all cables leading to and from the unit have been properly mounted and secured.
 - b Make sure that enough slack has been provided on each cable to allow for maintenance and replacement.
- 7 Make sure that the unit is fitted with the correct fuse. (Rating: 6.3 A/230 VAC)

Result

Requirements	Results
The Power Supply Unit is correctly installed with easy access for maintenance and replacement of parts.	
The Power Supply Unit is free from scratches, dents or other physical damage.	
Free access to all the connectors on the Power Supply Unit is provided. All cables connected to the Power Supply Unit are properly mounted with enough slack.	
The Power Supply Unit can be fully opened, and you have full access to the circuit boards and modules inside the unit.	
The welds and brackets that support the Power Supply Unit are strong enough to hold the unit securely in place under all operating conditions. The welds and brackets have been painted with the correct preservation medium to prevent corrosion.	
The Power Supply Unit is properly grounded.	
This unit is fitted with the correct fuse. (Rating: 6.3 A/230 VAC)	
Date and signature:	

Related topics

[Making sure that the EK80 is ready for operational use, page 195](#)

Turning on the EK80 system for the first time

Topics

[Setting up summary, page 206](#)

[Installing the EK80 operating software, page 208](#)

[Turning on the EK80 system for *Passive* mode, page 209](#)

[Obtaining and installing the software license, page 210](#)

[Defining the IP address on the Processor Unit network adapter for communication with the transceiver, page 212](#)

[Installing one or more transducers, page 213](#)

[Installing transceiver channels, page 216](#)

[Adjusting the screen resolution, page 219](#)

Setting up summary

Before a new EK80 system can be put to use, it must be set up for operation.

Prerequisites

- The system units have all been installed according to the instructions provided.
- All cable connections have been made and checked.
- All system units have been inspected.
- The operational software is available.
- The software license is available.

Caution

You must never set the EK80 system to "ping" unless the transducer is submerged in water. Most transducers are damaged beyond repair if they transmit in open air. Prevent inadvertent use of the EK80 system whenever a transducer is not submerged.

Procedure

- 1 Do the following preparations.
 - a Turn on the computer.
 - b Make sure that you have administrative rights.
 - c Switch off any firewall applications.

- d Open the operating systems's *Network and Sharing Center*, and set the IP address for the network adapter used to communicate with the transceiver.
 - **IP Address:** 157.237.15.12
 - IP address for the transceiver network adapter.
 - Any address can be used, but 157.237.15.12 is recommended for legacy reasons. This is particularly important if your system contains old GPT transceivers.
 - **Subnet mask:** 255.255.255.0
 - You can leave **Subnet mask** blank and select **OK**. When you see an error message saying that the message subnet mask is missing, select **OK** again. A default subnet mask is then automatically generated.
 - 2 Install the software.
 - 3 Turn on each transceiver.
 - 4 Make sure that the Processor Unit is connected to the transceiver(s) using the Ethernet cable specified in the *Installation manual*.
If you use more than one transceiver, a high capacity Ethernet switch is required.
- Note** _____
- It is very important that high-quality Ethernet cables are used. You must use CAT-5E STP (Shielded Twisted Pair) quality or better. Using cables with lower bandwidth capacity will reduce performance.*
-
- 5 Start the EK80 program.
 - 6 On the **Software License** page, install the software license(s).
 - 7 On the **Transducer Installation** page, install each transducer not automatically installed.
 - 8 On the **Transceiver Installation** page, connect the transducer(s) to the transceiver(s).
 - 9 On the **Sensor Installation** page, set up the interfaces to the navigation sensors.
 - 10 In the **Environment** dialog box, select correct water temperature and salinity.
 - 11 Start normal operation.
 - a On the **File Setup** page, define the recording parameters.
 - b Set **Operation** to *Normal*.
 - c In the **Normal Operation** dialog box, set the operating parameters.
 - d Set **Ping Mode** to *Interval*.
 - e With the **Ping Interval** function, specify the ping rate that has been defined for the survey.
 - f Set **Ping** to *On*.

Further requirements

To obtain quantitative data, the EK80 must be calibrated.

Observe the summary procedure, and the complete description, in the EK80 *Reference manual* and on-line help.

Related topics

[Turning on the EK80 system for the first time, page 206](#)

[Setting to work, page 192](#)

Installing the EK80 operating software

If the Processor Unit is purchased from Kongsberg Maritime, the operational software is pre-installed and ready for use. If you want to use your own computer, you must install the software yourself.

Context

One or more valid software licenses are required to operate the EK80 system. The software licenses are installed after the software installation. The **Software License** page is provided for this purpose.

Note

Make sure that you have administrative rights on the computer. You need this to install the software. If you purchased your own computer, you must make sure that it meets the technical requirements for use with the EK80 system. Do this before you install the software.

Procedure

- 1 Turn on the Processor Unit.
- 2 Switch off any firewall applications.
- 3 Insert the software media.
- 4 Use a file manager application on the Processor Unit to access the software files.
- 5 Double-click `Setup.exe` to start the installation.

Note

If the operating system on your computer is not supported, the installation will stop with an error message. You must then upgrade your computer - or use a different one - to complete the software installation.

- 6 Allow the installation wizard to run. Follow the instructions provided.

We recommend that you install the software in the default folder suggested by the wizard. In the last dialog box you are permitted to remove old settings. Since this is your first installation of the software, you can disregard this option.

- 7 Once the software installation has been completed, double-click the icon on the desktop to start the program.
- 8 Depending on your operating system parameters, certain dialog boxes may open.
 - a The Windows® Firewall may open a dialog box requesting information about the network. Select **Public**, and then select **Allow access**.
 - b The operating system may also open other dialog boxes to verify that the EK80 software can run on the computer. You must permit this.

Further requirements

Observe the dedicated procedures for obtaining and installing the software licence(s).

Related topics

[Turning on the EK80 system for the first time, page 206](#)

[Setting to work, page 192](#)

Turning on the EK80 system for *Passive* mode

To use the EK80 system, you must first turn it on. In this situation we do not want the EK80 system to transmit, so we will leave it in *Passive* mode.

Prerequisites

This procedure assumes that the entire EK80 system installation has been inspected. All power sources have been measured and verified. All cables are connected and tested. The EK80 system software has been installed on the Processor Unit.

Context

The program is not automatically started when the Processor Unit is turned on. Double-click the desktop icon to start the program.

When the EK80 system is turned on and set to *Normal* operating mode, it will use the transducer to transmit acoustic pulses into the water.

Caution

You must never set the EK80 system to "ping" unless the transducer is submerged in water. Most transducers are damaged beyond repair if they transmit in open air. Prevent inadvertent use of the EK80 system whenever a transducer is not submerged.

Procedure

- 1 Make sure that each transceiver is turned on.
- 2 Turn on the display.
If required, refer to the instructions provided by the display manufacturer.
- 3 Turn on the computer.
Wait while the operating system loads.
- 4 On the computer desktop, double-click the EK80 icon to start the program.
- 5 Select user settings.

During the program load, a dialog box appears to let you choose from the current user settings available on the EK80. The dialog box is only visible a few seconds. You do not need to make a choice here. You can select your predefined user setting at any time by means of the **User Settings** dialog box on the **Main** menu.

- 6 Once the program has started, observe that the display presentation fills the entire screen.

Related topics

[Turning on the EK80 system for the first time, page 206](#)

[Setting to work, page 192](#)

Obtaining and installing the software license

To use the EK80 system with a transceiver you need a valid software license. Before you can use the EK80 system you must obtain a "license string" and install it on your computer. Without a license you will not be able to communicate with the transceiver.

Prerequisites

This procedure assumes that the operating software has been successfully installed on the computer.

Context

The software license is a 32 character hexadecimal string based on the transceiver's serial number. It defines several key parameters that control the functionality and behaviour of the transceiver(s) you use. Each software license code "unlocks" one transceiver for operational use with a set of predefined properties.

The software license is not linked to the physical computer. You can therefore easily move the software from one computer to another, just remember to make a copy of the license string.

Note

Once you receive your software license string(s), do not lose them. We suggest that you copy the information into a text file (for example Notepad), and add relevant information. Place the text file on the computer desktop, and make sure that backup copies are made.

In order to obtain a software license you must contact one of our dealers or distributors. You can also use the request form on our website, or contact our support department directly.

Note

This information is only valid if your EK80 is meant to operate with one (or more) of the following transceivers:

- *Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)*
 - *WBT Tube*
 - *WBT Mini*
 - *EC150-3C*
-

Procedure

- 1 Obtain the necessary information about your transceiver(s) and transducer(s).
Write down:
 - a The serial number for each transceiver.
 - b The beam type.
 - c Which transducers you have connected to each transceiver.
- 2 Send the information to one of our dealers or distributors.

You can also use the request form on our website, or contact our support department directly. You can use the following e-mail address:

- inboundsales.subsea@km.kongsberg.com

Once the software license string(s) have been returned to you (most likely by e-mail), you can install the licenses into the software.

- 3 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 4 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Software License**.

Observe that the **Software License** page opens.

- 5 Select **Type License String**, and type the license string into the dialog box.

If you do not have a computer keyboard connected to your EK80 system, select the **Keyboard** button to open an on-screen keyboard. If you have received the license string on an electronic format (e-mail or text file), you can copy the string from the source document and paste it into the **Type License String** dialog box.

- 6 Select **OK** to save the license string and close the **Type License String** dialog box.
- 7 Verify that the license string is placed in the **Currently active licenses** list.
If necessary, select the license string on the left side, and click the arrow button [>] to move it to the **Currently active licenses** list.
- 8 Select **Apply** and then **Close** to save all the parameters and close the **Installation** dialog box.

Related topics

- [Turning on the EK80 system for the first time, page 206](#)
[Setting to work, page 192](#)

Defining the IP address on the Processor Unit network adapter for communication with the transceiver

The computer and the transceiver(s) communicate on a high capacity Ethernet cable. If you use more than one transceiver, a high capacity Ethernet switch is required. On the computer, define the IP address and Subnet mask for the Ethernet port used to communicate with the transceiver(s). The EK80 system automatically assigns an IP address to a transceiver that is turned off and on.

Prerequisites

This procedure is made for the Microsoft® Windows® 10 operating system. It is assumed that you are familiar with this operating system.

Context

As long as you do not replace the Processor Unit with another computer, or change the network adapter, you only need to do this once.

Procedure

- 1 On the computer, close the EK80 program.
- 2 Open the **Network Connections** dialog box.
 - a In the bottom-left corner of your desktop, select the Windows® search function.
 - b In the search box, type "Network Connections", and open the **Network Connections** dialog box.
- 3 Right-click the network adapter you are going to use and select **Properties** on the shortcut menu.

- 4 On the list of connections, select **Internet Protocol 4 (TCP/IPv4)**, and then **Properties**.
- 5 Select **Use the following IP address**, and type the IP address and network mask.
 - **IP Address:** 157.237.15.12
IP address for the transceiver network adapter.
Any address can be used, but 157.237.15.12 is recommended for legacy reasons. This is particularly important if your system contains old GPT transceivers.
 - **Subnet mask:** 255.255.255.0
You can leave **Subnet mask** blank and select **OK**. When you see an error message saying that the message subnet mask is missing, select **OK** again. A default subnet mask is then automatically generated.
- 6 Select **OK** to save the selected settings, and then close all the dialog boxes.
- 7 Start the EK80 program.
- 8 Open the **Transceiver Installation** page.
 - a Open the **Setup** menu.
 - b On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.
 - c On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Transceiver**.
- 9 Under **Transceiver Browsing**, select the IP Address that you just specified for the Ethernet adapter, from the list.
- 10 At the bottom of the page, select **Apply** to save your settings.
- 11 Turn each transceiver off and on.

This forces the EK80 system to assign new IP addresses within the selected IP range.

Related topics

- [Turning on the EK80 system for the first time, page 206](#)
[Setting to work, page 192](#)

Installing one or more transducers

The transducers you want to use with the EK80 system must be "installed" as a part of the software configuration. Which transducers to use depends on the number of transceivers in your system, and the licenses you have for these. Unless you replace a broken transducer, or add a new, you only need to do this once.

Prerequisites

It is assumed that the EK80 software has been installed, and that all relevant license strings have been applied. You need to know the type and serial number of each transducer that you wish to install.

Context

Each transducer is added using the **Transducer Installation** page. The **Transducer Installation** page is located in the **Installation** dialog box.

You can only choose a transducer from the **Model** list. The **Model** list is generated from a system file provided with the EK80 software. It contains all the transducers that are compatible with the transceiver(s) you have. The list also includes the technical specifications for each transducer. You can not see this information, but it is used to set up the operating parameters. This allows each transceiver to optimise its performance for the individual transducer models.

If you cannot find your transducer in the list, contact your dealer, agent or Kongsberg Maritime to upgrade the relevant software component.

Note

*Just making changes and selecting **OK** at the bottom of the page will not install anything. Select what to install, define the relevant parameters, and then select **Add**.*

If your EK80 system shall only be used with an ADCP transceiver or transducer for current profiling, you do not need to install other transducers.

Procedure

- 1 Open the **Setup** menu.
- 2 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 3 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Transducer Installation**.
- 4 Select the transducer you wish to install from the **Model** list.

Note

Make sure that you select a transducer that is supported by your current license.

- 5 Insert the serial number.

This serial number is very important, because you will need it as a reference identification when the EK80 system is calibrated. Transducers with built-in "intelligence" will automatically provide this serial number.

- 6 Type the name you wish to use into the **Custom Name** box.

Type any name that you wish to use to identify the transducer. The name you select will only be used to identify the transducer in other dialog boxes. It is not used in the echo data that you export. If you do not have a computer keyboard connected to your EK80 system, select the **Keyboard** button to open an on-screen keyboard.

- 7 Select mounting method.
- 8 Specify the orientation of the transducer beam.
- 9 If relevant for your transducer installation, provide the accurate physical location of the transducer with reference to the vessel's coordinate system.

Note

These settings are intended for the installation of an ADCP transceiver or transducer for current profiling. The information is not used to adjust for installation misalignments, but will be included in the RAW files for post-processing purposes.

Use the centre of the transducer face as reference, and define the offset values related to the *Ship Origin*.

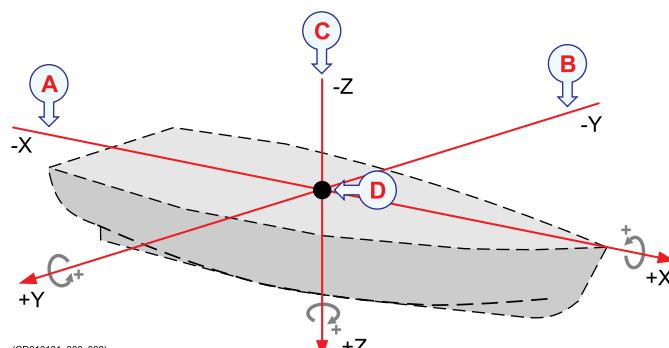
- a Select the offset value on the X axis (fore-and-aft direction) from the *Ship Origin*. Adjust with a positive value for X if the transducer is located ahead of the ship origin.
 - b Select the offset value on the Y axis (athwartship) from the *Ship Origin*. Adjust with a positive value for Y if the transducer is located on the starboard side of the ship origin.
 - c Select the offset value on the Z axis (vertical) from the *Ship Origin*. Adjust with a positive value for Z if the transducer is located under the ship origin.
- 10 If relevant for your transducer installation, provide the rotation angles.

Note

These settings are intended for the installation of an ADCP transceiver or transducer for current profiling. The information is not used to adjust for installation misalignments, but will be included in the RAW files for post-processing purposes.

- a Use the dimensional survey report to find relevant rotation angle information.
- b Insert the values.

- Specify an angle (in degrees) to compensate for any deviation from the X axis (fore-and-aft direction) in the vessel coordinate system.
- Specify an angle (in degrees) to compensate for any deviation from the Y axis (athwartship direction) in the vessel coordinate system.



- Specify an angle (in degrees) to compensate for any deviation from the Z axis (vertical direction) in the vessel coordinate system.
- Ship Origo

Keep in mind that in its default position (all axis set to 0 (zero)) the transducer points straight down with the orientation mark (arrow) pointing forward. This default position must always be used as reference for rotation adjustments. To set the angles correctly, observe this exercise.

11 Select **Add** to save the information you have provided.

The transducer is added to the list in the **Installed Transducers** box.

12 Repeat for each transducer that you want to install.

13 Continue your work in the **Installation** dialog box, or select **OK** to close it.

Result

Once a transducer has been installed, it is listed in the **Installed Transducers** box. To see the information you have collected about the transducer, select the relevant transducer in the list.

The **Edit** functionality on the **Transducer Installation** page makes it possible to change the information you have provided for the transducer. You cannot change the model identification and the serial number. The custom name is used several places in the user interface, and it can be changed.

The **Remove** functionality on the **Transducer Installation** page makes it possible to delete the information you have provided for the transducer. There is no "undo" functionality.

Related topics

[Turning on the EK80 system for the first time, page 206](#)

[Setting to work, page 192](#)

Installing transceiver channels

In order to use the EK80 system, the computer must be connected to one or more transceivers, and each of them must in turn be connected to one or more transducers. Each channel must be installed before it can be put to use. In this context, the term *channel* is used as a common term to identify the combination of transceiver, transducer and operating frequency.

Prerequisites

The EK80 system is installed as specified in the *Installation Manual*. All units are turned on.

- All cables are connected and tested.
- The software license for each transceiver is installed and activated.

- The Ethernet adapter in the computer is set up with a unique IP address.
- All relevant transducers are installed using the **Transducer Installation** page.

Context

The **Transceiver Installation** parameters control the installation and disconnection of transceivers. Every time the page is opened, the EK80 system software automatically searches the network for available transceivers.

The list in the upper part on the **Transceiver Installation** page shows you an overview of the transceivers and channels that are currently available. In this context, the term *channel* is used as a common term to identify the combination of transceiver, transducer and operating frequency. Each channel is identified by the transceiver type and serial number and the transducer(s) in use. The current status for each channel is also provided.

- **Busy:** The channel is already in use, probably by another echo sounder on the same network. You cannot connect to this channel.
- **Installed:** This channel is connected to your EK80 system.
- **Lost:** This channel cannot be used.
- **Available:** This channel is vacant and ready for use.

Note

*When you work in the **Installation** dialog box, you must always select **Apply** to save the changes made on a page. You must do this before you continue working on a different page.*

Procedure

- 1 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 2 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Transceiver**.
- 3 Install the channels(s).
 - a Observe that the transceiver(s) you have connected to the computer are listed.
Each transceiver is identified with type and serial number. The available channels on each transceiver are listed separately.
 - b For each channel, choose which transducer to connect to.
The list of transducers available for installation is defined by those you installed on the **Transducer** page.

Note

This is a critical task. Make sure that the correct transducer is selected.

- c At the bottom of the page, select **Apply** to save your settings.
- d Observe that the status for the relevant frequency channels change to *Installed*.

Tip

If no transceivers are listed:

- 1 Select **Browse** in the **Transceiver Browsing** box, and open the **Local IP Address** box.
- 2 Select the correct address for the Ethernet adapter you are using. Select **Apply**.
This will make the EK80 search the network for available transceivers.
- 3 Turn each transceiver off and on.

The EK80 system automatically assigns an IP address to a transceiver that is turned off and on.

*Select **Browse**.*

- 4 Make sure that the Ethernet communication between the units is operational.
- 5 If you are using an Ethernet switch, make sure that it works.
- 6 If you have changed the network settings, turn each transceiver off and on.
The EK80 system automatically assigns an IP address to a transceiver that is turned off and on.

-
- 4 At the bottom of the page, select **Apply** to save your settings.

- 5 Repeat until all the channels have been installed.

- 6 Continue your work in the **Installation** dialog box, or select **OK** to close it.

Result

When all channels have been installed, you can start normal operation.

Caution

You must never set the EK80 system to "ping" unless the transducer is submerged in water. Most transducers are damaged beyond repair if they transmit in open air. Prevent inadvertent use of the EK80 system whenever a transducer is not submerged.

Related topics

- [Turning on the EK80 system for the first time, page 206](#)
[Setting to work, page 192](#)

Adjusting the screen resolution

Some computers have graphic adapters that are not able to detect the resolution of the current display. This limitation can also be caused by the display cable, or by imperfections in a display matrix system. In such cases, you must use the functionality of the operating system to adjust the screen resolution.

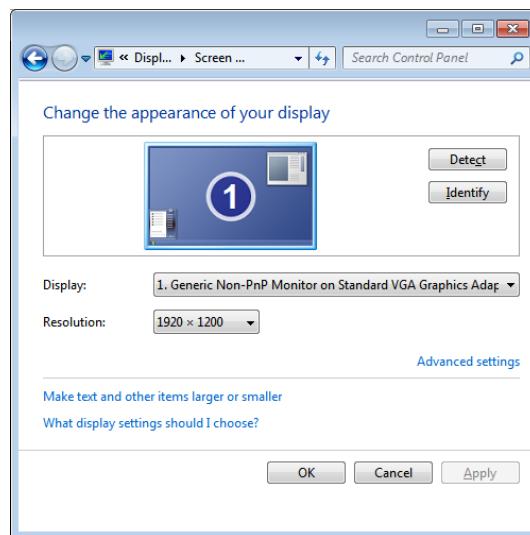
Prerequisites

This procedure is made for the Microsoft® Windows® 7 and 10 operating systems. It is assumed that you are familiar with these operating systems.

Context

As a general recommendation, you should set the screen resolution as high as possible. This will allow you more "space" in the EK80 presentation to offer more detailed information. The physical width of your top bar will also be extended, and free space for icons and navigational information.

Unless you change the hardware (computer, graphic adapter or display), you will only need to do this once.



Procedure

- 1 On the computer, close the EK80 program.
- 2 This procedure is made for the Microsoft® Windows® 7 operating system.
 - a In the bottom-left corner of your desktop, select the Windows® Start button.
 - b On the right-hand side of the Start menu, select Control Panel.
 - c Observe that the Control Panel opens.
 - d In the Control Panel dialog box, under Appearance and Personalization, select Adjust screen resolution.
 - e Change the display settings.
 - 1 Make sure that the correct display is shown.
 - 2 Change the resolution to maximum permitted resolution for the display.
 - 3 Select OK.
 - 4 Observe that the screen resolution changes.
 - 5 If you are satisfied with the new resolution, select Keep changes in the acknowledge dialog box.
 - f Click the [X] in the top right corner to close the Control Panel.

- 3 This procedure is made for the Microsoft® Windows® 10 operating system.
 - a In the bottom-left corner of your desktop, select the Windows® **Start** button.
 - b On the menu, select **Settings**.
 - c Observe that the **Windows Settings** dialog box opens.
 - d Select **System** in the top left corner of the **Windows Settings** dialog box.
 - e On the left side of the dialog box, select **Display**.
 - f Change the display settings.
 - 1 Make sure that the correct display is shown.
 - 2 Change the resolution to maximum permitted resolution for the display.
 - 3 Select **OK**.
 - 4 Observe that the screen resolution changes.
 - 5 If you are satisfied with the new resolution, select **Keep changes** in the acknowledge dialog box.
 - g Select [X] in the top right corner to close the **Windows Settings** dialog box.

Related topics

[Turning on the EK80 system for the first time, page 206](#)

[Setting to work, page 192](#)

Installing and troubleshooting Network Time Protocol (NTP)

NTP (Network Time Protocol) is a network protocol that enables you to synchronize the clocks on devices over a network. It uses one or more *NTP servers* to maintain a highly accurate time, and allows clients to query for this time. When clients query the server they automatically adjust their own internal clocks to mirror the NTP server. These tasks are only applicable for a EK80 system fitted with relevant hardware for acoustic Doppler current profiler (ADCP) functionality.

Topics

[Installing Network Time Protocol \(NTP\), page 221](#)

[Installing Network Time Protocol \(NTP\) monitor, page 225](#)

[Troubleshooting the Network Time Protocol \(NTP\) service, page 229](#)

Installing Network Time Protocol (NTP)

NTP (Network Time Protocol) is a network protocol that enables you to synchronize the clocks on devices over a network. It uses one or more *NTP servers* to maintain a highly accurate time, and allows clients to query for this time. When clients query the server they automatically adjust their own internal clocks to mirror the NTP server. The Network Time Protocol (NTP) application must be installed on the EK80 Processor Unit.

Prerequisites

To download the software you need a computer connected to the Internet.

Context

Installing an Network Time Protocol (NTP) application is a requirement if your EK80 Processor Unit is connected to acoustic Doppler current profiling (ADCP) hardware. The EK80 requires synchronized reception of the KM Binary datagram. The NTP application ensures that the EK80 and the ADCP hardware are synchronized to the vessel's master clock.

Note

The screen captures are taken from software version 4.2.8. The manufacturer may change these in later releases.

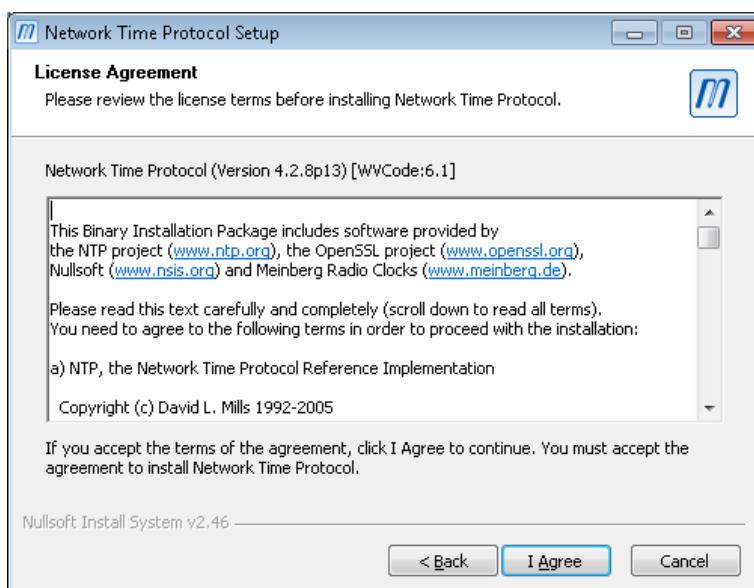
Procedure

- 1 Open a web browser.

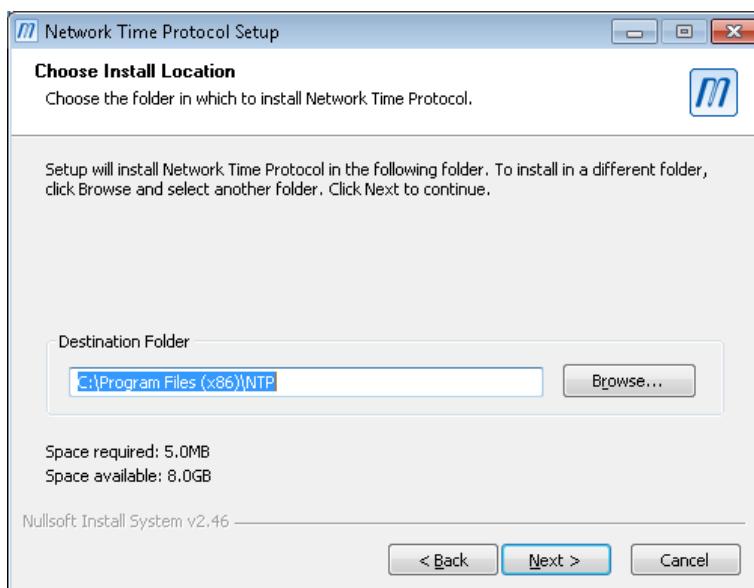
- 2 Type the following URL in the address field:

<https://www.meinbergglobal.com/english/sw/ntp.htm>

- 3 Download and install the latest release of the NTP application.
"NTP for Windows XP and newer, with IPv6 support"
Example: ntp-4.2.8p14-win32-setup.exe
- 4 Select **I agree** for license agreement.

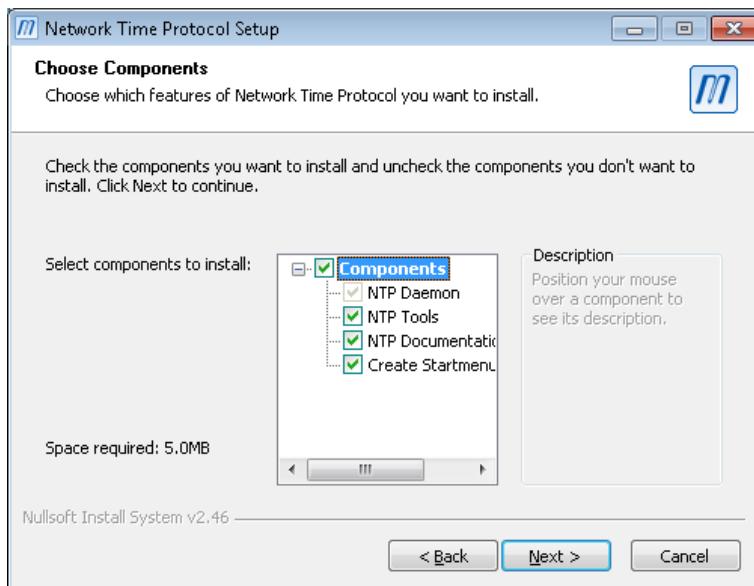


- 5 Keep the suggested Destination Folder for Installation Location.



Select **Next** to continue.

6 Select Installation Components.

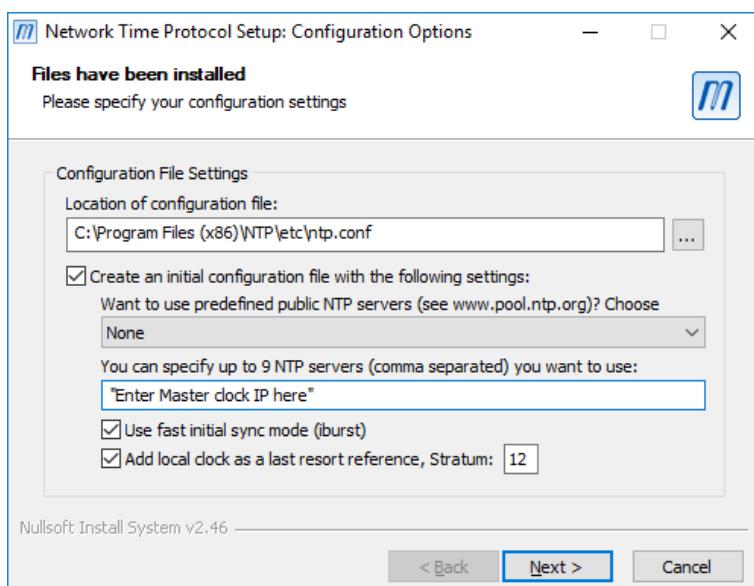


Select the following options by checking the check boxes:

- **NTP Dameon**
- **NTP Tools**
- **NTP Documentation**
- **Create Start menu**

Select **Next** to continue.

7 Select configuration file settings.

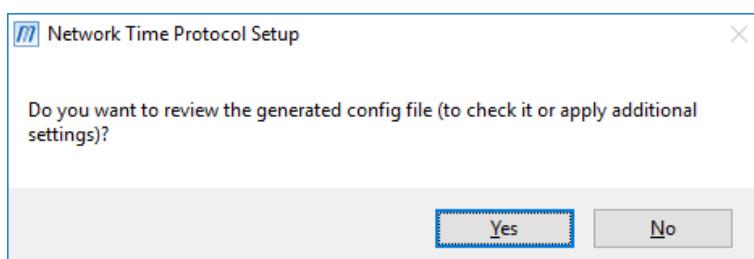


Select the following options by checking the check boxes:

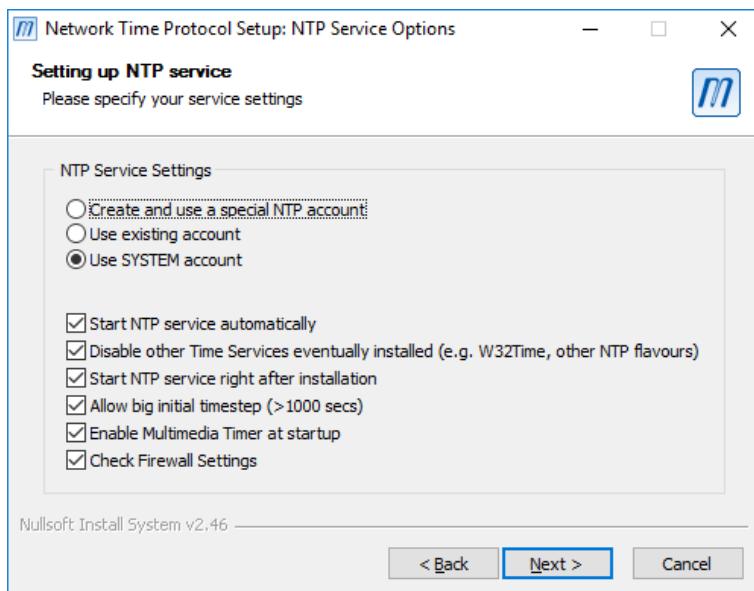
- **Location of configuration file:** C:\Program Files (x86)\NTP\etc\ntp.conf
- **Create an initial configuration file with the following settings**
- **Predefined public NTP servers:** None.
- **Specify the NTP server IP address:** 10.124.24.200 (Use the IP address of your Master clock, this is an example)
- **Use fast initial sync mode (iburst)**
- **Add local clock as a last resort reference, Stratum:** 12

Select Next to continue.

- 8 Select No for not reviewing the generated config file.



- 9 Select service settings in the **Setting up NTP service** page.



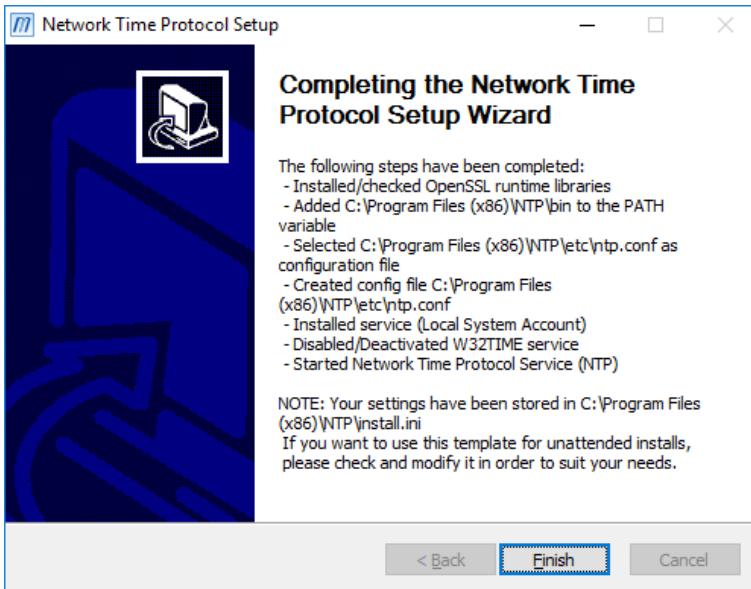
Select the following options by checking the check boxes:

- **SYSTEM account**
- **Start NTP service automatically**
- **Disable other Time Services eventually installed (e.g. W32Time, other NTP flavours)**
- **Start NTP service right after installation**
- **Allow big initial timestep (<1000 s)**

- **Enable Multimedia Timer at startup**
- **Check Firewall Settings**

Select **Next** to continue.

10 Select **Finish** to close the wizard.



Related topics

[Installing and troubleshooting Network Time Protocol \(NTP\), page 221](#)

Installing Network Time Protocol (NTP) monitor

The NTP Server Monitor is a software utility that runs on any Windows platform, workstation or server. It allows any number of NTP time servers to be constantly monitored. Any servers that are operating outside the preset tolerances are highlighted in the user interface.

Prerequisites

To download the software you need a computer connected to the Internet.

Context

The NTP Time Server Monitor allows you to configure and control the local NTP service. The current status of the local NTP service, as well as external NTP services, are displayed.

The NTP Timer server monitor software controls and oversees the NTP Service. It further simplified the handling of the NTP service.

Here is a small list of the abilities and features this tool offers:

- Switch between different configurations (ntp.conf files).

- Change the service settings without the need to open the device manager each time.
- Extract the NTP related application log entries and display them separately in a table.
- Display the current status of the running NTP service.
- The user can configure external NTP server, which are also queried by the NTP time server displayed.
- The configuration file of the NTP service (ntp.conf) can be edited within this program.

<https://www.meinbergglobal.com/english/sw/ntp-server-monitor.htm> (June 2020)

Note

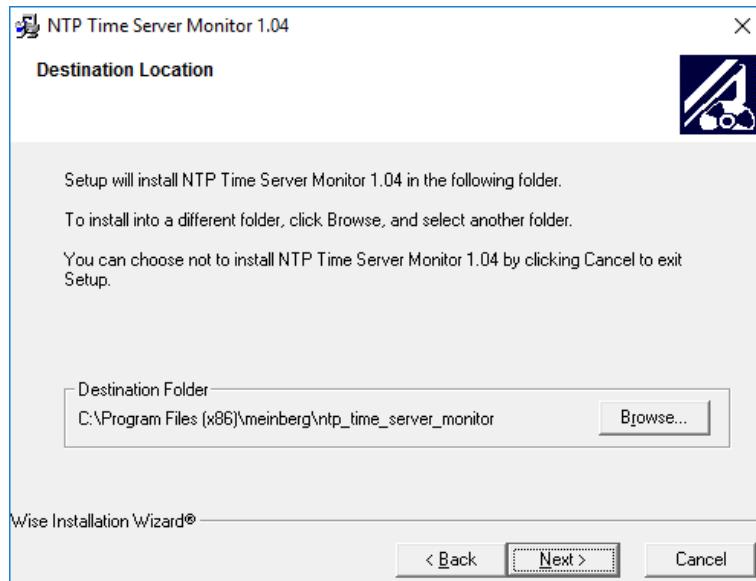
The screen captures are taken from software version 1.04. The manufacturer may change these in later releases.

Procedure

- 1 Open a web browser.
- 2 Type the following URL in the address field:
<https://www.meinbergglobal.com/english/sw/ntp-server-monitor.htm>
- 3 Download and install the latest release of the NTP application.
"NTP Time Server Monitor for Windows NT/2000/XP/Server 2003, Server 2008/Vista/7/8"
Example: ntp-time-server-monitor-1.04.exe

4 Select Destination Folder

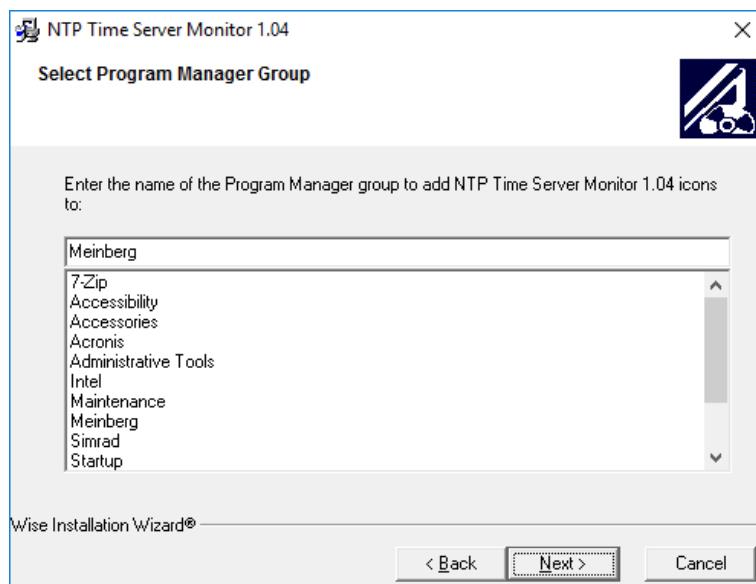
C:\Program Files (x86)\meinberg\ntp_time_server_monitor



Select Next to continue.

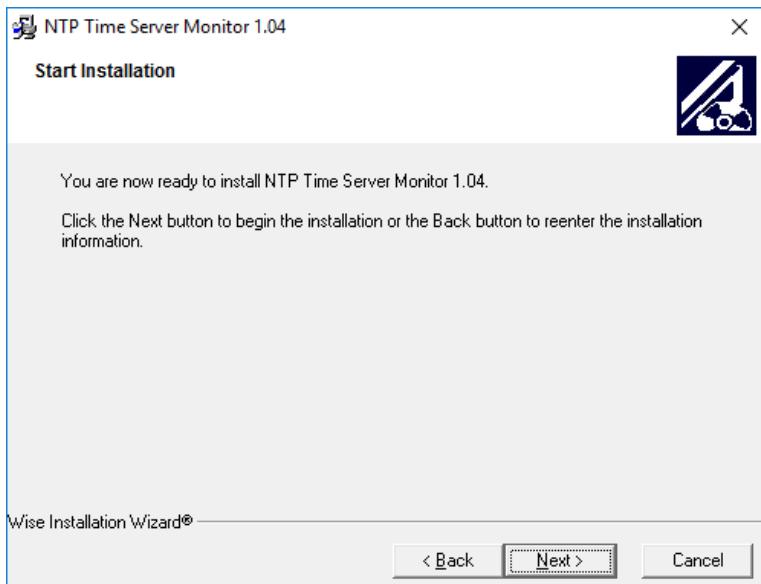
5 Type the name of the Program Manager Group.

Meinberg

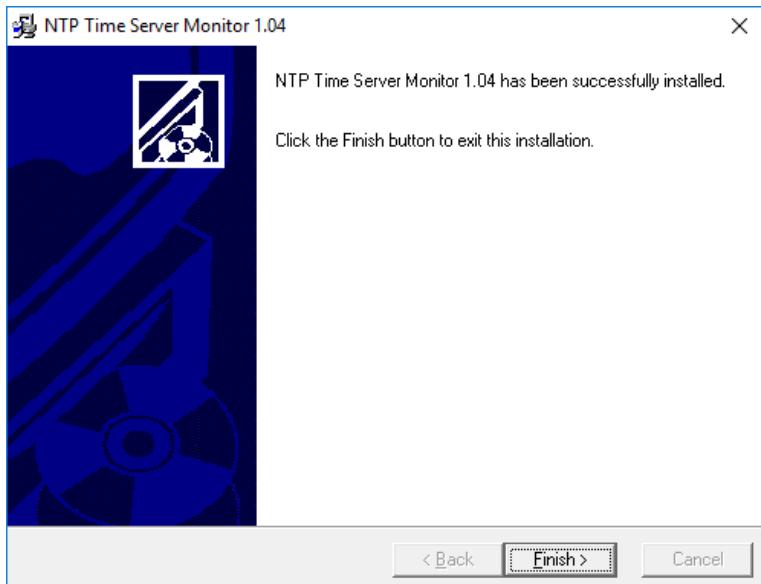


Select Next to continue.

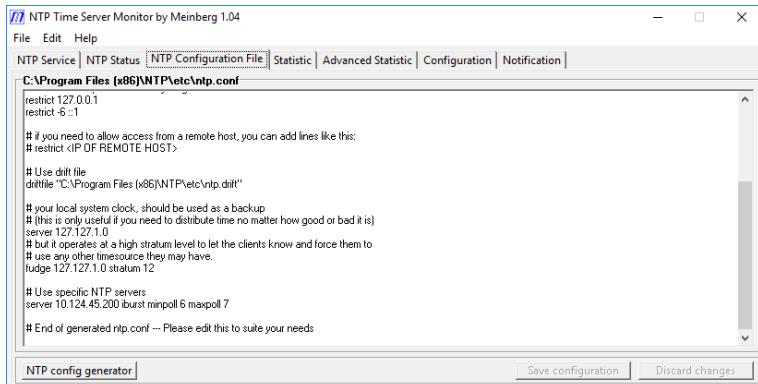
- 6 Start the installation by selecting **Next**.



- 7 Select **Finish** to close the wizard.



8 Start NTP Time Server Monitor from the desktop.



9 Verify that the NTP service operates normally.

- a Make sure that the service is in *Started* mode on the **NTP Service** tab.
- b Make sure that the IP addresses and synchronized device are in *OK* mode on the **NTP Status** tab.
- c Make sure that the NTP server provides NTP timing signals to the relevant ADCP hardware in the **NTP Configuration File** tab.
 - The master clock is found at IP address 10.124.45.200 (example).
 - The NTP server will also update the EK80 Processor Unit clock.
 - In some cases a motion reference unit (MRU) providing the KM Binary datagram does *not* act as the vessel's master clock. You must then follow the instructions of the MRU manufacturer to synchronize the MRU to the Ship Master clock.

Related topics

[Installing and troubleshooting Network Time Protocol \(NTP\), page 221](#)

Troubleshooting the Network Time Protocol (NTP) service

The Network Time Protocol (NTP) service may in some cases malfunction, or even stop.

Context

The EK80 installation program adds a firewall rule to allow for NTP communication. If the EK80 issues messages related to missing time synchronization between a motion reference unit (MRU) and/or ADCP hardware synchronization, the problem is most likely related to the firewall.

Procedure

- 1 Check the firewall settings on the Processor Unit.

One reason for NTP synchronisation problems may be a firewall or port filter that inhibit the communication. Check the firewall settings in the Control Panel.

- 2 Adjust the firewall settings.
- 3 Check the communication between the EK80 NTP server and the client(s).

Tip

You can use Wireshark (<https://www.wireshark.org>). This is a network protocol analyser. Wireshark allows you to see your network activities at a microscopic level.

Related topics

[Installing and troubleshooting Network Time Protocol \(NTP\), page 221](#)

Configuring the EK80 system for normal operation

Topics

[Selecting menu language, page 231](#)

[Selecting measurement units, page 232](#)

[Defining the raw data recording parameters, page 232](#)

Selecting menu language

You may prefer to use the EK80 system with the user interface in your own language. The **Language** function allows you to select the language to be used in the display presentations, menus and dialog boxes.

Context

With a few exceptions, the chosen language will also be used for all other texts in the user interface. The context sensitive online help may not be available for the language you choose. If your language is not supported, the English help is provided.

Procedure

- 1 Open the **Setup** menu.
- 2 Select the middle of the **Language** button to open the list of available options.



- 3 Select the language you wish to use.

Result

All the texts in the user interface are changed to the selected language.

The context sensitive on-line help may also be available in your language. To change the language in the on-line help, you may need to restart the EK80 system.

Related topics

[Configuring the EK80 system for normal operation, page 231](#)

[Setting to work, page 192](#)

Selecting measurement units

The EK80 system is prepared to work with several international standards for units of measurements. From the **Units** page you control which units of measurements that are used.

Context

The user interface presents many measurements. These measurements are for example related to depth, range and distance. Use the **Units** options to select the units of measurements you want to work with. The EK80 system uses them in all presentations. You only need to define them once.

Note

*When you work in the **Installation** dialog box, you must always select **Apply** to save the changes made on a page. You must do this before you continue working on a different page.*

Procedure

- 1 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 2 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Units**.
Observe that the **Units** page opens.
- 3 Adjust the setting to fit your requirements.
- 4 At the bottom of the page, select **Apply** to save your settings.
- 5 Continue your work in the **Installation** dialog box, or select **OK** to close it.

Related topics

[Configuring the EK80 system for normal operation, page 231](#)
[Setting to work, page 192](#)

Defining the raw data recording parameters

The EK80 allows you to record both raw and processed echo data. The data are saved on the hard disk, or on an external data storage device, according to the preferences you have defined.

Context

The **File Setup** settings control how and where the recorded files are saved on the hard disk, or on an external storage device. By adding a prefix to the file names you can

identify the files you have recorded during a specific survey. You can also define a maximum size of the files.

Tip

The data files will normally become very large. If you wish to record large amounts of data, make sure that you have enough space on your hard disk. Unless your computer is equipped with a very large disk, we recommend that you save the data to an external storage device.

Set up the file and folder parameters before you start the recording. If you wish to save your recorded data on an external hard disk, make sure that it is connected to the computer.

*If the current file size gets too big during recording, select **Split File** on the **Record RAW** button. This will close the current file, and then automatically continue recording to a new file. **Record RAW** is located on the **Operation** menu.*

Procedure

- 1 Open the **Operation** menu.
- 2 Select **Output**.



Observe that the **Output** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 3 In the **Output** dialog box, select **File Setup**.
- 4 On the **File Setup** page, define the recording parameters.
 - a Define the output directory for the recorded files.

In order to change the output directory, both **Record RAW** and **Record Processed** recording must be set to *Off*. The same folder is used for both raw and processed files.

- b Define a file name prefix.

By adding a prefix to the file names you can identify the files you have recorded during a specific survey.

- c Define the maximum amount of bytes to be contained in one data file.

Select **Maximum** for 1 GB file size.

The current size of the RAW data file is displayed during data recording. If the current file size gets too big during recording, select **Split File** on the **Record RAW** button. **Record RAW** is located on the **Operation** menu.

- d Specify the raw data recording parameters.

The **Range** setting defines the vertical or horizontal distance from where the echo presentation starts to the end of the search area.

- Select **Common** to use the same recording range for all your active channels.
- Select **Auto** to allow the EK80 system to automatically find the required range value.
- Select **Individual** to use the different recording ranges for your active channels.

The **Stored sampled data for WBTs running CW** options can be used to reduce the amount of recorded data when you are using a Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) with CW pulses.

- Select **Complex samples** to use the default data format.
- Select **Power/Angle** to reduce the file sizes.
- Select **Reduced sampling rate Power/Angle samples** to minimize the file sizes.

Note _____

*Unless you choose **Complex samples** your RAW data files will contain less information.*

The **Motion Data Recording** function allows you to control how often the motion data are saved in the raw data file.

- 5 At the bottom of the page, select **Apply** to save your settings.
- 6 Select **OK** to close the dialog box.

Related topics

[Configuring the EK80 system for normal operation, page 231](#)
[Setting to work, page 192](#)

Interfacing peripheral equipment

Topics

- [Installing navigation sensors and other sensors, page 235](#)
- [Defining the serial and Ethernet \(LAN\) port parameters, page 237](#)
- [Setting up the input from a navigation system \(GPS\), page 238](#)
- [Configuring the sensor interface, page 241](#)
- [Setting up a serial or LAN \(Ethernet\) port for annotation input, page 242](#)
- [Connecting a catch monitoring system to a serial or LAN \(Ethernet\) port, page 244](#)
- [Connecting a trawl system to a serial or LAN \(Ethernet\) port, page 246](#)
- [Setting up the input from a motion sensor, page 248](#)
- [Setting up the input from a sound speed sensor, page 250](#)
- [Setting up depth output to an external system, page 252](#)
- [Exporting sensor data to a peripheral system, page 254](#)
- [Synchronizing the EK80 by means of a serial port, page 256](#)
- [Synchronizing the EK80 system by means of the Auxiliary port, page 259](#)
- [Setting up the interface between the EK80 and the Simrad TD50, page 261](#)

Installing navigation sensors and other sensors

For the EK80 system to use and offer correct navigational information, one or more external sensors must be connected. Typical sensors are those providing navigational information (heading, speed or geographical position). To set up the communication parameters on the serial and LAN ports, use the **I/O Setup** page. To select which sensors to install, use the **Sensor Installation** page. The **Sensor Configuration** page allows you to define a datagram priority, so that the information from the "most reliable" sensor is used by the EK80 system. You can also define manual values in case a sensor is unserviceable, or not installed.

Prerequisites

The new sensor is physically connected to the EK80 system using a serial or network cable.

Context

The **Sensor Installation** page allows your EK80 system to communicate with external sensors and systems. However, in order to communicate with each sensor, you must first set up the relevant communication parameters. Once the communication has been

established and the sensor is connected, you must define the datagram priority and finalize the configuration.

Note

*Just making changes and selecting **OK** at the bottom of the page will not install anything. Select what to install, define the relevant parameters, and then select **Add**.*

Procedure

- 1 Open the **Setup** menu.
- 2 On the **Setup** menu, select **Install**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 3 Set up the interfaces to the navigation sensors.
 - a On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **I/O Setup**.
 - b Set up the relevant serial or Ethernet (LAN) communication parameters.
 - c At the bottom of the page, select **Apply** to save your settings.
 - d On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Sensor Installation**.
 - e Select the type of sensor you want to interface, and define the relevant parameters.
 - f Select **Add** to save the new sensor interface you have defined.
 - g On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Sensor Configuration**.
 - h Define the priority of the datagrams, and set up relevant configuration parameters.
 - i At the bottom of the page, select **Apply** to save your settings.
- 4 Repeat for each sensor interface that you need to set up.
- 5 Continue your work in the **Installation** dialog box, or select **OK** to close it.

Related topics

[Interfacing peripheral equipment, page 235](#)

Defining the serial and Ethernet (LAN) port parameters

For any sensor interface to work, the communication parameters must be set up correctly. The EK80 software automatically scans the Processor Unit to locate and identify the available communication ports. Once the software has established a list of valid interfaces, you can set up and control the communication parameters.

Prerequisites

This procedure assumes that:

- You have a vacant interface port on your Processor Unit.
- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.
- The relevant communication parameters required for the sensor interface are known.

Context

The **I/O Setup** page provides two lists; one for serial ports and one for Ethernet (LAN) ports. Each list is supported with a set of functions to set up and monitor the communication ports. Select the port you want to work with and then select one of the buttons below the list.

Tip

The Sensors page in the Diagnostics dialog box provides an overview of all the communication lines and sensors in use. All relevant status information is provided. You open the Diagnostics dialog box from the Setup menu.

When you work in the **Installation** dialog box, you must always select **Apply** to save the changes made on a page. You must do this before you continue working on a different page.

Procedure

- 1 Open the **Setup** menu.
- 2 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 3 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **I/O Setup**.
- 4 Observe that the available serial and network interface ports on the Processor Unit are listed.
- 5 Set up the relevant serial or Ethernet (LAN) communication parameters.
 - a Select the interface port you want to set up.

- b Select **Setup** to open the **Serial Port Setup** or **LAN Port Setup** dialog box.
- c Set up the relevant serial or Ethernet (LAN) communication parameters.

The communication parameters defined for NMEA 0183 are:

- **Baud rate:** 4800 bit/s
- **Data bits:** 8
- **Parity:** Even
- **Stop bits:** 1

Some instruments may provide other parameters and/or options. You must always check the relevant technical documentation supplied by the manufacturer.

- d Select **OK** to save the selected settings and close the dialog box.
- 6 At the bottom of the page, select **Apply** to save your settings.
- 7 Repeat for any other communication ports that you need to set up.
- 8 Close the **Installation** dialog box.

Related topics

[Interfacing peripheral equipment, page 235](#)

Setting up the input from a navigation system (GPS)

For the EK80 system to use and offer correct navigational information, one or more external sensors must be connected. Typical sensors are those providing navigational information (heading, speed or geographical position). To select which sensors to install, use the **Sensor Installation** page. Your current position is shown on the top bar if you have enabled this in the **Display Options** dialog box.

Prerequisites

This procedure assumes that:

- You have a vacant interface port on your Processor Unit.
- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.
- The interface port is set up with the correct communication parameters.
- The EK80 system is turned on and operates normally.
- The new sensor is physically connected to the EK80 system using a serial or network cable. The sensor is turned on and in normal operation.

Neither tools nor instruments are required.

Context

The **Sensor Installation** page allows your EK80 system to communicate with external sensors and systems. You must specify which communication port to use (LAN (Local Area Network) or serial port). You can type a custom name to identify the sensor import. In the list of valid datagram formats, select the format(s) to be accepted by the EK80 system. For each relevant sensor you must insert the offset values that define the its physical location relative to the vessel's coordinate system.

Note

*Just making changes and selecting **OK** at the bottom of the page will not install anything. Select what to install, define the relevant parameters, and then select **Add**.*

Procedure

- 1 Connect the navigation system to an available communication port on your computer.

This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter. Observe the applicable requirements related to cabling. Make sure that the total length of the serial line cable does not exceed approximately 50 meters. If a longer cable is required, you may need to use buffer amplifiers.

If the computer is not fitted with a suitable serial line connector, use a USB-to-serial converter. Several types are commercially available. Note that most USB-to-serial converters will introduce some latency. They may also introduce jitter in the communication. The amount of jitter depends on the quality of the converter.
- 2 Open the **Setup** menu.
- 3 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 4 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Sensor Installation**.
- 5 For **Type**, select the *GPS* sensor to import information from a global positioning system.
- 6 Select which port you want to import the sensor information on.
- 7 If you want to check the communication parameters, select **Inspect Port**.

Note

*You cannot make any changes here. To change the communication parameters, use the **I/O Setup** page.*

- 8 If you want to check that the peripheral system is transmitting data to the EK80 system, select **Monitor**.

The **Port Monitor** dialog box provides one text box for incoming messages (**Rx Data**), and one for outgoing messages (**Tx Data**). Use these boxes and your knowledge of the data communication to investigate the datagrams. The **Port Monitor** dialog box is a tool for debugging purposes. It is neither required nor intended for normal operation of the EK80 system.

- 9 Type a custom name to identify the interface in other dialog boxes.
- 10 Select which datagram(s) you want to import from the sensor.
- 11 If relevant, specify a dedicated talker ID.
- 12 Provide the accurate physical location of the sensor (or its antenna) with reference to the vessel's coordinate system.

The position of certain sensors must be defined as an *offset* to the *Ship Origin* in the coordinate system to maximize performance. These offset values are all required to allow the EK80 system to give you as accurate information as possible. The degree of accuracy offered by the EK80 system is directly related to the accuracy of the information you enter on the **Sensor Installation** page.

- a Select the offset value on the X axis (fore-and-aft direction) from the *Ship Origin*. Adjust with a positive value for X if the sensor is located ahead of the ship origin.
 - b Select the offset value on the Y axis (athwartship) from the *Ship Origin*. Adjust with a positive value for Y if the sensor is located on the starboard side of the ship origin.
 - c Select the offset value on the Z axis (vertical) from the *Ship Origin*. Adjust with a positive value for Z if the sensor is located under the ship origin.
- 13 Select **Add** to save the new sensor interface you have defined.
- The sensor interface is added to the **Installed Sensors** list on the **Sensor Installation** page.
- 14 At the bottom of the dialog box, select **Apply** to save your settings.
 - 15 Repeat for each sensor interface that you need to set up.
 - 16 Continue your work in the **Installation** dialog box, or select **OK** to close it.

Further requirements

On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Sensor Configuration**. Define the priority of the datagrams, and set up relevant configuration parameters.

Related topics

[Interfacing peripheral equipment, page 235](#)

Configuring the sensor interface

With multiple sensors connected to the EK80 system, many of them will provide the same datagrams. We cannot expect that these datagrams provide the same information. The **Sensor Configuration** page allows you to define a datagram priority, so that the information from the "most reliable" sensor is used by the EK80 system. You can also define manual values in case a sensor is unserviceable, or not installed.

Prerequisites

This procedure assumes that:

- The new sensor is physically connected to the EK80 system using a serial or network cable.
- The interface port is set up with the correct communication parameters.
- The input from the navigation sensor is defined in the user interface. The relevant interface parameters and physical location properties for the sensor are defined.

Context

Any information in a datagram, for example the current depth, may be provided in different datagrams from several sensors. Due to a number of reasons (environmental conditions, installation, configuration, accuracy, etc.), the numerical values provided can be different from one sensor to another.

Several sensor are provided on the **Sensor Configuration** page, one for each type of information. Select the sensor you wish to configure in the **Sensor** list. For each type, you can define a priority sensor by rearranging the datagrams in a list. You can also define manual values in case a sensor is unserviceable, or not installed.

The EK80 system can communicate with several different sensor types. Use the **Sensor Installation** page to define which external sensors your EK80 system will import information from. You must also specify which datagram formats to use.

Note

*When you work in the **Installation** dialog box, you must always select **Apply** to save the changes made on a page. You must do this before you continue working on a different page.*

Procedure

- 1 Open the **Setup** menu.
- 2 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 3 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Sensor Configuration**.
Observe that the **Sensor Configuration** page opens.
- 4 Select the sensor you wish to configure in the **Sensor** list.
- 5 If you wish to use the built-in datagram priority, select **Auto**.
 - With **Auto** *enabled*, the priority list is used. Information is imported from the sensor at the top of the list. If the sensor fails to provide information for more than 20 seconds, data from the next sensor is used.
 - With **Auto** *disabled*, the priority list is not used. Information is imported from the sensor at the top of the list. All other sensors are ignored.
- 6 If you wish to control the datagram priority manually, *do not* select **Auto**.
To change the priority for a given datagram, select it, and change its location on the list using the arrow buttons.
- 7 If relevant, add a manual value for the sensor input.
- 8 At the bottom of the dialog box, select **Apply** to save your settings.
- 9 Repeat for each sensor interface that you need to set up.
- 10 Continue your work in the **Installation** dialog box, or select **OK** to close it.

Related topics

[Interfacing peripheral equipment, page 235](#)

Setting up a serial or LAN (Ethernet) port for annotation input

Several different annotation types may be added to the echograms or other views. They are displayed on the views if this annotation feature is enabled. You can add annotations manually, or import information as datagrams using a serial or LAN (Ethernet) communication port.

Prerequisites

This procedure assumes that:

- You have a vacant interface port on your Processor Unit.
- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.
- The interface port is set up with the correct communication parameters.

Context

The **Sensor Installation** page allows your EK80 system to communicate with external sensors and systems. You must specify which communication port to use (LAN (Local

Area Network) or serial port). You can type a custom name to identify the sensor import. In the list of valid datagram formats, select the format(s) to be accepted by the EK80 system.

Note

*Just making changes and selecting **OK** at the bottom of the page will not install anything. Select what to install, define the relevant parameters, and then select **Add**.*

Procedure

- 1 Connect the peripheral system providing the annotations to an available communication port on your computer.

This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter. Observe the applicable requirements related to cabling. Make sure that the total length of the serial line cable does not exceed approximately 50 meters. If a longer cable is required, you may need to use buffer amplifiers.

If the computer is not fitted with a suitable serial line connector, use a USB-to-serial converter. Several types are commercially available. Note that most USB-to-serial converters will introduce some latency. They may also introduce jitter in the communication. The amount of jitter depends on the quality of the converter.

- 2 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 3 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Sensor Installation**.
- 4 Select *Annotations* to import information from the peripheral system.
- 5 Select the port you want to use (serial or LAN).
- 6 If you want to check the communication parameters, select **Inspect Port**.

Note

*You cannot make any changes here. To change the communication parameters, use the **I/O Setup** page. The **I/O Setup** page is located in the **Installation and Output** dialog boxes.*

- 7 If you want to check that the peripheral system is transmitting data to the EK80 system, select **Monitor**.

The **Port Monitor** dialog box provides one text box for incoming messages (**Rx Data**), and one for outgoing messages (**Tx Data**). Use these boxes and your knowledge of the data communication to investigate the datagrams. The **Port Monitor** dialog box is a tool for debugging purposes. It is neither required nor intended for normal operation of the EK80 system.

- 8 Type a custom name to identify the interface in other dialog boxes.
- 9 Select which datagram(s) you want to import from the peripheral device.
When you select sensor type Annotation, only one datagram can be selected.
- 10 Do not specify a dedicated Talker ID.
- 11 Select **Add** to save the new device interface you have defined.
The device interface is added to the **Installed Sensors** list on the **Sensor Installation** page. It is not necessary to use the **Sensor Configuration** page to set up a priority list.
- 12 Select **Apply** and then **Close** to save all the parameters and close the **Installation** dialog box.

Related topics

[Interfacing peripheral equipment, page 235](#)

Connecting a catch monitoring system to a serial or LAN (Ethernet) port

A catch monitoring system can be connected to the EK80 system. The connection is made using a serial or LAN (Ethernet) port on the Processor Unit. For any sensor interface to work, the communication parameters must be set up correctly.

Prerequisites

This procedure assumes that:

- You have a vacant interface port on your Processor Unit.
- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.
- The interface port is set up with the correct communication parameters.
- The EK80 system is turned on and operates normally.
- The new sensor is physically connected to the EK80 system using a serial or network cable. The sensor is turned on and in normal operation.

Neither tools nor instruments are required.

Context

The **Sensor Installation** page allows your EK80 system to communicate with external sensors and systems. You must specify which communication port to use (LAN (Local Area Network) or serial port). You can type a custom name to identify the sensor import. In the list of valid datagram formats, select the format(s) to be accepted by the EK80 system. For each relevant sensor you must insert the offset values that define the its physical location relative to the vessel's coordinate system.

Note

*Just making changes and selecting **OK** at the bottom of the page will not install anything. Select what to install, define the relevant parameters, and then select **Add**.*

Procedure

- 1 Connect the peripheral catch monitoring system to an available communication port on your computer.

This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter. Observe the applicable requirements related to cabling. Make sure that the total length of the serial line cable does not exceed approximately 50 meters. If a longer cable is required, you may need to use buffer amplifiers.

If the computer is not fitted with a suitable serial line connector, use a USB-to-serial converter. Several types are commercially available. Note that most USB-to-serial converters will introduce some latency. They may also introduce jitter in the communication. The amount of jitter depends on the quality of the converter.

- 2 Open the **Setup** menu.
- 3 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 4 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Sensor Installation**.
- 5 Select *PI50* to import information from a catch monitoring system.
- 6 Select the port you want to use (serial or LAN).
- 7 If you want to check the communication parameters, select **Inspect Port**.

Note

*You cannot make any changes here. To change the communication parameters, use the **I/O Setup** page. The **I/O Setup** page is located in the **Installation** and **Output** dialog boxes.*

- 8 If you want to check that the peripheral system is transmitting data to the EK80 system, select **Monitor**.

The **Port Monitor** dialog box provides one text box for incoming messages (**Rx Data**), and one for outgoing messages (**Tx Data**). Use these boxes and your knowledge of the data communication to investigate the datagrams. The **Port Monitor** dialog box is a tool for debugging purposes. It is neither required nor intended for normal operation of the EK80 system.

- 9 Type a custom name to identify the interface in other dialog boxes.

- 10 Select which datagram(s) you want to import from the peripheral device.

When you select sensor type PI50, only one datagram can be selected; PI50 Datagrams. This is a group of datagrams that allows the EK80 system to import information from catch monitoring systems.

- 11 Do not specify a dedicated Talker ID.
- 12 Select **Add** to save the new system interface you have defined.
The system interface is added to the **Installed Sensors** list on the **Sensor Installation** page. It is not necessary to use the **Sensor Configuration** page to set up a priority list.
- 13 Select **Apply** and then **Close** to save all the parameters and close the **Installation** dialog box.

Related topics

[Interfacing peripheral equipment, page 235](#)

Connecting a trawl system to a serial or LAN (Ethernet) port

A trawl system can be connected to the EK80 system. The connection is made using a serial or LAN (Ethernet) port on the Processor Unit. For any sensor interface to work, the communication parameters must be set up correctly.

Prerequisites

This procedure assumes that:

- You have a vacant interface port on your Processor Unit.
- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.
- The interface port is set up with the correct communication parameters.
- The EK80 system is turned on and operates normally.
- The new sensor is physically connected to the EK80 system using a serial or network cable. The sensor is turned on and in normal operation.

Neither tools nor instruments are required.

Context

The **Sensor Installation** page allows your EK80 system to communicate with external sensors and systems. You must specify which communication port to use (LAN (Local Area Network) or serial port). You can type a custom name to identify the sensor import. In the list of valid datagram formats, select the format(s) to be accepted by the EK80 system. For each relevant sensor you must insert the offset values that define the its physical location relative to the vessel's coordinate system.

Note

*Just making changes and selecting **OK** at the bottom of the page will not install anything. Select what to install, define the relevant parameters, and then select **Add**.*

Procedure

- 1 Connect the peripheral trawl system to an available communication port on your computer.

This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter. Observe the applicable requirements related to cabling. Make sure that the total length of the serial line cable does not exceed approximately 50 meters. If a longer cable is required, you may need to use buffer amplifiers.

If the computer is not fitted with a suitable serial line connector, use a USB-to-serial converter. Several types are commercially available. Note that most USB-to-serial converters will introduce some latency. They may also introduce jitter in the communication. The amount of jitter depends on the quality of the converter.

- 2 Open the **Setup** menu.
- 3 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 4 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Sensor Installation**.
- 5 Select *ITI-FS* to import information from a trawl system.
- 6 Select the port you want to use (serial or LAN).
- 7 If you want to check the communication parameters, select **Inspect Port**.

Note

*You cannot make any changes here. To change the communication parameters, use the **I/O Setup** page. The **I/O Setup** page is located in the **Installation** and **Output** dialog boxes.*

- 8 If you want to check that the peripheral system is transmitting data to the EK80 system, select **Monitor**.

The **Port Monitor** dialog box provides one text box for incoming messages (**Rx Data**), and one for outgoing messages (**Tx Data**). Use these boxes and your knowledge of the data communication to investigate the datagrams. The **Port Monitor** dialog box is a tool for debugging purposes. It is neither required nor intended for normal operation of the EK80 system.

- 9 Type a custom name to identify the interface in other dialog boxes.

- 10 Select which datagram(s) you want to import from the peripheral device.

When you select sensor type ITI-FS, only one datagram can be selected; ITI-FS Datagrams. This is a group of datagrams that allows the EK80 system to import information from trawl systems.

- 11 Do not specify a dedicated Talker ID.
- 12 Select **Add** to save the new system interface you have defined.
The system interface is added to the **Installed Sensors** list on the **Sensor Installation** page. It is not necessary to use the **Sensor Configuration** page to set up a priority list.
- 13 Select **Apply** and then **Close** to save all the parameters and close the **Installation** dialog box.

Related topics

[Interfacing peripheral equipment, page 235](#)

Setting up the input from a motion sensor

The information from a motion sensor (normally heave, roll and pitch information) is imported into the EK80 system to increase the accuracy of the echo data.

Prerequisites

This procedure assumes that:

- You have a vacant interface port on your Processor Unit.
- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.
- The interface port is set up with the correct communication parameters.
- The EK80 system is turned on and operates normally.
- The new sensor is physically connected to the EK80 system using a serial or network cable. The sensor is turned on and in normal operation.

Neither tools nor instruments are required.

Context

The motion sensor measures the roll and pitch movements of the vessel. The information provided by the motion sensor is used by the EK80 system to stabilize the beams.

Note

ADCP operations cannot take place without input from a motion sensor. The input must be provided on the KM Binary datagram format. KM Binary is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime for general use. This format has very high resolution on timing and sensor parameters.

Procedure

- 1 Connect the motion sensor system to an available communication port on your computer.

This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter. Observe the applicable requirements related to cabling. Make sure that the total length of the serial line cable does not exceed approximately 50 meters. If a longer cable is required, you may need to use buffer amplifiers.

If the computer is not fitted with a suitable serial line connector, use a USB-to-serial converter. Several types are commercially available. Note that most USB-to-serial converters will introduce some latency. They may also introduce jitter in the communication. The amount of jitter depends on the quality of the converter.

- 2 Open the **Setup** menu.
- 3 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



« Installation

Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 4 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Sensor Installation**.
- 5 Select the motion reference format you want to use.
- 6 Select the port you want to use (serial or LAN).
- 7 If you want to check the communication parameters, select **Inspect Port**.

Note

*You cannot make any changes here. To change the communication parameters, use the **I/O Setup** page. The **I/O Setup** page is located in the **Installation and Output** dialog boxes.*

- 8 If you want to check that the peripheral system is transmitting data to the EK80 system, select **Monitor**.

The **Port Monitor** dialog box provides one text box for incoming messages (**Rx Data**), and one for outgoing messages (**Tx Data**). Use these boxes and your knowledge of the data communication to investigate the datagrams. The **Port Monitor** dialog box is a tool for debugging purposes. It is neither required nor intended for normal operation of the EK80 system.

- 9 Type a custom name to identify the interface in other dialog boxes.
- 10 Select which datagram(s) you want to import from the sensor.
- 11 If relevant, specify a dedicated talker ID.
- 12 Provide the accurate physical location of the sensor (or its antenna) with reference to the vessel's coordinate system.

The position of certain sensors must be defined as an *offset* to the *Ship Origin* in the coordinate system to maximize performance. These offset values are all required to allow the EK80 system to give you as accurate information as possible. The degree of accuracy offered by the EK80 system is directly related to the accuracy of the information you enter on the **Sensor Installation** page.

- a Select the offset value on the X axis (fore-and-aft direction) from the *Ship Origin*. Adjust with a positive value for X if the sensor is located ahead of the ship origin.
 - b Select the offset value on the Y axis (athwartship) from the *Ship Origin*. Adjust with a positive value for Y if the sensor is located on the starboard side of the ship origin.
 - c Select the offset value on the Z axis (vertical) from the *Ship Origin*. Adjust with a positive value for Z if the sensor is located under the ship origin.
- 13 Select **Add** to save the new sensor interface you have defined.
The sensor interface is added to the **Installed Sensors** list on the **Sensor Installation** page.
 - 14 Select **Apply** and then **Close** to save all the parameters and close the **Installation** dialog box.

Related topics

[Interfacing peripheral equipment, page 235](#)

Setting up the input from a sound speed sensor

If you have a sound speed sensor located close to the transducer face, you can import the information from this sensor. This will result in more accurate EK80 data.

Prerequisites

This procedure assumes that:

- You have a vacant interface port on your computer.
- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.
- The interface port is set up with the correct communication parameters.

- The EK80 system is turned on and operates normally.
- The new sensor is physically connected to the EK80 system using a serial or network cable. The sensor is turned on and in normal operation.

Neither tools nor instruments are required.

Context

The **Sensor Installation** page allows your EK80 system to communicate with external sensors and systems. You must specify which communication port to use (LAN (Local Area Network) or serial port). You can type a custom name to identify the sensor import. In the list of valid datagram formats, select the format(s) to be accepted by the EK80 system.

Note

Just making changes and selecting OK at the bottom of the page will not install anything. Select what to install, define the relevant parameters, and then select Add.

Communication with the sound speed sensor is based on proprietary datagrams.

Procedure

- 1 Connect the sound speed sensor to an available serial communication port on your Processor Unit.

This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter. Observe the applicable requirements related to cabling. Make sure that the total length of the serial line cable does not exceed approximately 50 meters. If a longer cable is required, you may need to use buffer amplifiers.

If the computer is not fitted with a suitable serial line connector, use a USB-to-serial converter. Several types are commercially available. Note that most USB-to-serial converters will introduce some latency. They may also introduce jitter in the communication. The amount of jitter depends on the quality of the converter.

- 2 Open the **Setup** menu.
- 3 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 4 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Sensor Installation**.
- 5 For **Type**, select *Sound Speed* to import information from a sound speed sensor.
- 6 Select which port you want to import the sensor information on.

- 7 If you want to check the communication parameters, select **Inspect Port**.

Note _____

*You cannot make any changes here. To change the communication parameters, use the **I/O Setup** page.*

- 8 If you want to check that the peripheral system is transmitting data to the EK80 system, select **Monitor**.

The **Port Monitor** dialog box provides one text box for incoming messages (**Rx Data**), and one for outgoing messages (**Tx Data**). Use these boxes and your knowledge of the data communication to investigate the datagrams. The **Port Monitor** dialog box is a tool for debugging purposes. It is neither required nor intended for normal operation of the EK80 system.

- 9 Type a custom name to identify the interface in other dialog boxes.
- 10 Select which datagram(s) you want to import from the sensor.
- 11 If relevant, specify a dedicated talker ID.
- 12 Select **Add** to save the new sensor interface you have defined.
The sensor interface is added to the **Installed Sensors** list on the **Sensor Installation** page.
- 13 Select **Apply** and then **Close** to save all the parameters and close the **Installation** dialog box.

Related topics

[Interfacing peripheral equipment, page 235](#)

Setting up depth output to an external system

Your EK80 system can export depth information on a dedicated communication port (serial or Ethernet). Use the **Depth Output** page to set up the relevant output parameters.

Prerequisites

This procedure assumes that:

- You have a vacant interface port on your Processor Unit.
- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.
- The interface port is set up with the correct communication parameters.
- The EK80 system is turned on and operates normally.

Neither tools nor instruments are required.

Context

The EK80 system can export the information on several datagram formats. You can export several formats simultaneously, as each of them is handled independently.

Procedure

- 1 Connect the peripheral system to an available communication port on your computer.

This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter. Observe the applicable requirements related to cabling. Make sure that the total length of the serial line cable does not exceed approximately 50 meters. If a longer cable is required, you may need to use buffer amplifiers.

If the computer is not fitted with a suitable serial line connector, use a USB-to-serial converter. Several types are commercially available. Note that most USB-to-serial converters will introduce some latency. They may also introduce jitter in the communication. The amount of jitter depends on the quality of the converter.

- 2 Open the **Operation** menu.
- 3 Select **Output**.



Observe that the **Output** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 4 On the left side of the **Outputs** dialog box, select **I/O Setup**.
Observe that the **I/O Setup** page opens.
- 5 Observe that the available serial interface ports on the Processor Unit are listed.
- 6 Set up the relevant serial or Ethernet (LAN) communication parameters.
 - a On the **I/O Setup** page, select the port you want to set up.
 - b Select **Setup** to open the **Serial Port Setup** or **LAN Port Setup** dialog box.
 - c Set up the relevant communication parameters.
- 7 On the left side of the **Output** dialog box, select **Depth Output**.
Observe that the **Depth Output** page opens.
- 8 Select **Processed Data to Output** to open the page.
 - a Select which depth datagram to export.
 - b Select the communication port you want to use.
 - c Choose which channel to use as source for the depth information.

"Best practice" is to use the lowest frequency. In this context, the term *channel* is used as a common term to identify the combination of transceiver, transducer and operating frequency.

- d Select **Add** to start export of the chosen data format.

Once an output type has been defined, it is listed in the **Installed Outputs** box on the left side of the page.

- 9 If you want to check the communication parameters, select **Inspect Port**.

Note _____

You cannot make any changes here. To change the communication parameters, use the I/O Setup page. The I/O Setup page is located in the Installation and Output dialog boxes.

-
- 10 If you want to check the data flow on the selected port, select **Monitor**.

Make sure that there is data traffic on the output port (shown in the **Tx Data** box).

The **Port Monitor** dialog box provides one text box for incoming messages (**Rx Data**), and one for outgoing messages (**Tx Data**). Use these boxes and your knowledge of the data communication to investigate the datagrams. The **Port Monitor** dialog box is a tool for debugging purposes. It is neither required nor intended for normal operation of the EK80 system.

- 11 Select **Apply** and then **Close** to save all the parameters and close the **Output** dialog box.

Related topics

[Interfacing peripheral equipment, page 235](#)

Exporting sensor data to a peripheral system

The information provided to the EK80 system from various sensors can also be useful for other systems on board. The EK80 system allows you to export the same sensor data that was originally imported. This can "reuse" the same information on other systems. The **Relay Output** page is used to set up and control this export functionality.

Prerequisites

This procedure assumes that:

- You have a vacant interface port on your Processor Unit.
- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.
- The interface port is set up with the correct communication parameters.
- The EK80 system is turned on and operates normally.

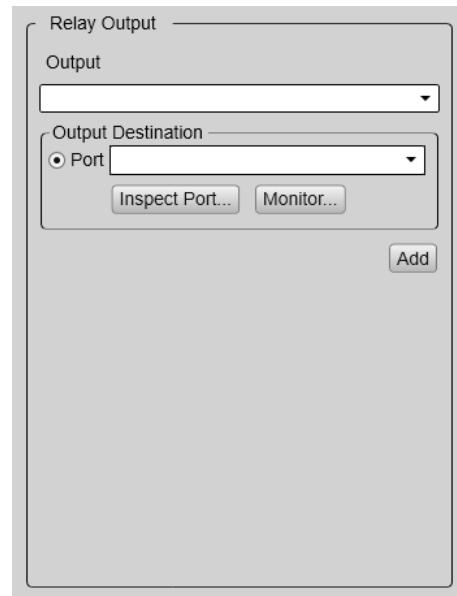
Neither tools nor instruments are required.

Context

The information imported to the EK80 system from various sensors can also be useful for other systems on board your vessel. The EK80 system allows you to "re-export" this sensor information. When activated, the selected sensor information is sent out on the chosen communication port (serial or LAN).

The following sensor data can be exported:

- Navigation
- Motion sensor



Procedure

- 1 Connect the peripheral system to an available communication port on your computer.

This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter. Observe the applicable requirements related to cabling. Make sure that the total length of the serial line cable does not exceed approximately 50 meters. If a longer cable is required, you may need to use buffer amplifiers.

If the computer is not fitted with a suitable serial line connector, use a USB-to-serial converter. Several types are commercially available. Note that most USB-to-serial converters will introduce some latency. They may also introduce jitter in the communication. The amount of jitter depends on the quality of the converter.

- 2 Open the **Operation** menu.
- 3 Select **Output**.



Observe that the **Output** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 4 On the left side of the dialog box, select **I/O Setup**.
- 5 Observe that the available serial and network interface ports on the Processor Unit are listed.
- 6 Set up the relevant serial or Ethernet (LAN) communication parameters.
 - a On the **I/O Setup** page, select the port you want to check.
 - b Select **Setup** to open the **Serial Port Setup** or **LAN Port Setup** dialog box.
 - c Set up the relevant communication parameters.
 - d Select **Apply** to save your choices.

- 7 On the left side of the **Output** dialog box, select **Relay Output**.
- 8 On the **Relay Output** page, set up the data export parameters.
 - a Select which information to export.
 - b Select the communication port you want to use.
 - c Select **Add** to start export of the chosen data format.
- 9 If you want to check the communication parameters, select **Inspect Port**.

Note _____

You cannot make any changes here. To change the communication parameters, use the I/O Setup page. The I/O Setup page is located in the Installation and Output dialog boxes.

- 10 If you want to check the data flow on the selected port, select **Monitor**.
In order to see this data traffic, your EK80 system must be active and transmitting information to the peripheral system.
The **Port Monitor** dialog box provides one text box for incoming messages (**Rx Data**), and one for outgoing messages (**Tx Data**). Use these boxes and your knowledge of the data communication to investigate the datagrams. The **Port Monitor** dialog box is a tool for debugging purposes. It is neither required nor intended for normal operation of the EK80 system.
- 11 Select **Apply** and then **Close** to save all the parameters and close the **Output** dialog box.

Related topics

[Interfacing peripheral equipment, page 235](#)

Synchronizing the EK80 by means of a serial port

If you want to use the EK80 system as a master or slave in a synchronized system, you must set it up for such operation. To do this, you must select which communication port to use for the synchronization interface, and you must select the requested synchronization mode.

Prerequisites

You have an RS2-232 interface port on your computer that allows you to use the CTS/RTS connections.

For "slave" operation, a remote system (for example *K-Sync*) must be available to provide trigger pulses. For "master" operation, a remote hydroacoustic system (sonar, echo sounder) is connected. This remote system must be set up in "slave" mode.

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for electronic and electromechanical tasks. This includes different

screwdriver types, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper, a soldering iron, etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment.

Context

Whenever more than one hydroacoustic system is installed on a vessel, interference may occur. To avoid interference, you have these options:

- The systems are all connected to a common synchronization system.
- One of the acoustic systems is set up as "master", and controls the transmissions on the other systems.

The EK80 system offers functionality for remote transmit synchronization. It can be set up to operate in either *Master* or *Slave* mode.

Tip

The Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) offers an AUXILIARY port that can be used for synchronisation purposes. This synchronization method may be more stable than the traditional CTS/RTS connection to a serial port.

The Synchronization Delay functionality is unavailable if you use the AUXILIARY port on your Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) to synchronize the EK80 system.

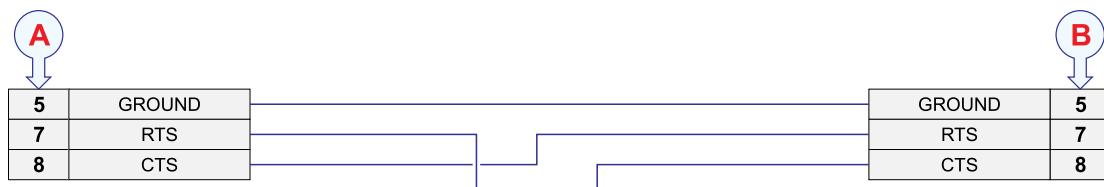
When you work in the **Installation** dialog box, you must always select **Apply** to save the changes made on a page. You must do this before you continue working on a different page.

Procedure

- 1 Connect the synchronization cable from the remote system to an available communication port on your computer.

This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter. Observe the applicable requirements related to cabling. Make sure that the total length of the serial line cable does not exceed approximately 50 meters. If a longer cable is required, you may need to use buffer amplifiers.

If the computer is not fitted with a suitable serial line connector, use a USB-to-serial converter. Several types are commercially available. Note that most USB-to-serial converters will introduce some latency. They may also introduce jitter in the communication. The amount of jitter depends on the quality of the converter.



A Local connection on the computer**B Connection on remote device**

- 2 Turn on the EK80 system and set it to normal use.
- 3 Open the **Setup** menu.
- 4 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 5 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Synchronization**.
- 6 Select **Synchronization Mode**.
 - *Stand-alone*
This synchronization mode is used when the EK80 system is working by itself. Synchronization is turned off. It is the default setting. The EK80 system operates using the current settings for ping interval. The operation is independent of any trigger signals arriving at the synchronization port.
The **Synchronization Delay** setting is not applicable when synchronization is switched off.
 - *Master*
Master mode is used if the EK80 system shall operate as the controlling unit in a synchronized system. Any peripheral hydroacoustic system(s) are only permitted to transmit when enabled by the EK80 system. The EK80 system operates using the current settings for ping interval. It also sends trigger signals to the peripheral system(s).
This mode is unavailable if you set **Synchronization Port** to *Transceiver Auxiliary Port*.
 - *Slave*
The *Slave* mode is used if the EK80 system shall transmit only when permitted by a peripheral system. When the *Slave* mode is selected, the EK80 system will not transmit ("ping") unless an external trigger appears on the chosen synchronization port. The peripheral system may be any other hydroacoustic product (for example an echo sounder or sonar), or even a dedicated synchronization system.

- 7 Select **Synchronization Delay**.

This delay parameter is used differently depending on the chosen synchronization mode.

- *Stand-alone*

The **Synchronization Delay** setting is not applicable when synchronization is switched off.

- *Master*

In *Master* mode, the EK80 system waits for the delay time after the external trigger signal has been sent to the slaves before transmitting the ping. This is often referred to as a *pre-trigger*.

Note

This delay will only work when the synchronization is set up using a serial port.

- *Slave*

In *Slave* mode, the EK80 system waits for the delay time after the external trigger signal has arrived before transmitting the ping. This is often referred to as a *post-trigger*.

8 From the list of ports available, select **Synchronization Port**.

This is the interface port currently used to transmit or receive synchronization signals. It must be an RS-232 serial port. Since the synchronization function only uses the *Request To Send (RTS)* and *Clear To Send (CTS)* signals on a serial port, you may be able to use a port that is already assigned other interface purposes. For the same reason, you do not need to define any baud rate.

9 At the bottom of the page, select **Apply** to save your settings.

10 Continue your work in the **Installation** dialog box, or select **OK** to close it.

Related topics

[Setting up the EK80 system for synchronized operation, page 134](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

[Interfacing peripheral equipment, page 235](#)

Synchronizing the EK80 system by means of the Auxiliary port

The Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) offers an **AUXILIARY** port that can be used for synchronisation purposes. This synchronization method may be more stable than the traditional CTS/RTS connection to a serial port.

Prerequisites

Unless the physical connections already have been made with a suitable cable, you need the following items:

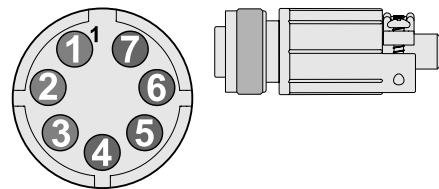
- Cable
- Plug

You must be equipped with a standard set of tools. This tool set must comprise the normal tools for cable installation tasks. This includes different screwdriver types, pliers, spanners, a cable stripper, a soldering iron, etc. Each tool must be provided in various sizes. We recommend that all tools are demagnetized to protect your equipment. Depending on the tasks at hand, additional tools may be required.

Context

The **AUXILIARY** socket on the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) can be used to interface an external synchronization system.

The socket fits a Conxall 7-pin Mini-Con-X® shielded plug. The connections are made on pins **2**, **3** and **5**. The connector is seen from the solder side. The plug can be ordered from the manufacturer or purchased from Kongsberg Maritime. Use part number 387563.



- **Manufacturer:** Switchcraft Conxall
- **Manufacturer's website:** <http://www.conxall.com>

Pin number	1	2	3	4
Signal	Synchronization TX Status	Synchronization Output	Synchronization Input	Future use
Pin number	5	6	7	
Signal	Digital ground	Not used	Not used	

The parameters on the **Synchronization** page allow you to choose which communication port to use for the physical connection to the external system, and which synchronization mode to use. The **Synchronization** page is located in the **Installation** dialog box on the **Setup** menu.

Note

*If you use more than one Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) in your EK80 system, all synchronization input signals to the **AUXILIARY** ports must be provided by the same source. Individual synchronization of a single Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) is not supported.*

*If you use more than one computer in your EK80 system, the synchronization inputs to the **AUXILIARY** ports can not be used. This functionality is not supported.*

*The **Synchronization Delay** functionality is unavailable if you use the **AUXILIARY** port on your Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) to synchronize the EK80 system.*

Procedure

- 1 Connect the dedicated cable from the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) to the external synchronisation system.

This is described in the *Cable layout and interconnections* chapter. Observe the applicable requirements related to cabling.
- 2 Turn on the EK80 system and set it to normal use.
- 3 Open the **Setup** menu.

- 4 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 5 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Synchronization**.
 6 From the list of ports available, select **Transceiver Auxiliary Port**.
 7 Observe that when **Transceiver Auxiliary Port** is selected, only *Slave* synchronization mode is permitted.

The *Slave* mode is used if the EK80 system shall transmit only when permitted by a peripheral system. When the *Slave* mode is selected, the EK80 system will not transmit ("ping") unless an external trigger appears on the chosen synchronization port. The peripheral system may be any other hydroacoustic product (for example an echo sounder or sonar), or even a dedicated synchronization system.

- 8 At the bottom of the page, select **Apply** to save your settings.
 9 Continue your work in the **Installation** dialog box, or select **OK** to close it.

Related topics

[Setting up the EK80 system for synchronized operation, page 134](#)

[Cable layout and interconnections, page 93](#)

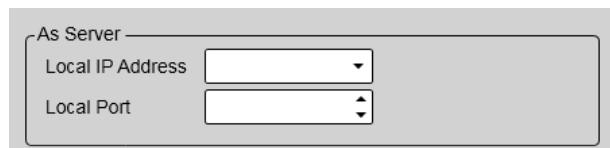
[Interfacing peripheral equipment, page 235](#)

Setting up the interface between the EK80 and the Simrad TD50

The EK80 can be set up to communicate with the Simrad TD50 3D Visualization Software. In this context, the EK80 is regarded as the "source system". The interface between the EK80 and the TD50 computer uses a high-speed Ethernet connection. The relevant IP addresses must be defined on both computers.

Prerequisites

It is assumed that you are familiar with the Windows® operating systems, computer technology, and interface principles.



The Ethernet adapter in the EK80 Processor Unit is set up with the correct IP addresses.

Context

All the steps in this procedure are done in the EK80 user interface.

Procedure

- 1 Open the **Setup** menu.
- 2 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.
- 3 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Remote Control** and then **As Server** to open the page.
 - a Select the **Local IP Address**.

This is the Internet Protocol (IP) address of the Ethernet interface adapter located in your computer.
 - b Keep the present value in **Local Port**.
- 4 Select **Remote Control**, then **Application Information** to open the page.
- 5 Provide relevant application information.
- 6 At the bottom of the page, select **Apply** to save your settings.
- 7 Select **OK** to close the dialog box.

Application Information	
Name	<input type="text"/>
Description	<input type="text"/>
Application ID	<input type="text"/>

Related topics

[Interfacing peripheral equipment, page 235](#)

Test procedures

Topics

- [Functional test of the EK80 Wide band scientific echo sounder, page 264](#)
- [Measuring noise in passive operating mode, page 266](#)
- [Reading the transceiver hardware and software versions, page 268](#)
- [Verifying the communication with the course gyro, page 270](#)
- [Verifying the communication with a navigation system \(GPS\), page 272](#)
- [Verifying the communication with speed log, page 274](#)
- [Verifying the communication with the motion reference unit \(MRU\), page 276](#)
- [Verifying the communication with a synchronization system, page 278](#)
- [Making a noise/speed curve to determine vessel noise, page 280](#)

Functional test of the EK80 Wide band scientific echo sounder

A brief functional test is used to verify that the EK80 is operational.

Prerequisites

The EK80 system hardware units are installed as specified in this manual.

- The EK80 system is turned off.
- All relevant channels (transceiver/transducer combinations) are installed in the user interface.
- All relevant external sensors are connected to the EK80. The sensors are turned on and operate normally.
- The vessel is berthed or at sea.

Neither tools nor instruments are required.

Caution

You must never set the EK80 system to "ping" unless the transducer is submerged in water. The transducer may be damaged if it transmits in open air.

Procedure

- 1 Make sure that the EK80 units have been set up to operate with the supply voltage you have available.
- 2 Make sure that the transducer cables are not installed close to power cables.
- 3 Turn all EK80 system units on.
- 4 Make sure that the power LED on the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) is lit.
- 5 On the computer desktop, double-click the EK80 icon to start the program.
- 6 Make sure that the latest software version is installed.

Each software release for the EK80 system is uniquely identified. The **About** dialog box identifies the current software version. If you wish to find the latest software version for the EK80 system, check our website.

- kongsberg.com/ek80
 - a Open the **Setup** menu.
 - b Select **About** to open the dialog box.
 - c Find the information that you need.
 - d Select **Close** to close the dialog box.

Note

Certain software upgrades for the EK80 system also include an upgrade for the transceiver. To ensure maximum operational performance, you must upgrade all transceivers with the software/firmware provided with the installation files.

- 7 Make sure that each transducer has been installed with all settings defined.
 - a On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.
 - b On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Transducer Installation**.
 - c On the **Installed Transducers** list, select one of the transducers.
 - d Make sure that the transducer has been installed with all settings defined.
 - e Make sure that the offset values are correct.
 - f Repeat for each transducer that is installed.

- 8 Make sure that each transceiver channel is operational.

In this context, the term *channel* is used as a common term to identify the combination of transceiver, transducer and operating frequency.

- a On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Transceiver**.
 - b Make sure that all applicable transceivers and transducers are connected and operational.
 - c For each transceiver, this is indicated by the green label with text "Installed".
- 9 Open the **Operation** menu.
 - 10 Set **Operation** to *Normal*.
 - 11 Set **Range** to *Auto*.
 - 12 Make sure that you can see the seafloor in each echogram.

Locating the bottom (seafloor) is important for the EK80 system. The EK80 system needs this *bottom lock* to locate the correct depth, and to stay on it during the operation, even if the depth changes continuously. Occasionally, difficult environmental, water or bottom conditions may inhibit a *bottom lock*.

If the EK80 is unable to find the bottom (seafloor) you may need to change the bottom detection parameters.

- a Open the **Active** menu.
 - b Select **Bottom Detection**.
 - c Set **Minimum Depth** and **Maximum Depth** to values fit for the depth at your current location.
 - d Select **Close** to close the dialog box.
- 13 For each channel:
 - a Start raw data recording.

- b Allow the data recording to run approximately five minutes.
 - c Stop raw data recording.
 - d Use a file manager, and verify that the recorded file(s) have been saved on the chosen disk.
 - e Verify that the playback is operational.
- 14 Select **Help** on the top bar.
- a Make sure that the online help opens on its start page.
 - b Close the online help.



Result

Requirements	Results
The latest software version is installed.	
Each transducer is installed with the correct parameters.	
Each transceiver channel is operational.	
The EK80 detects and displays a bottom echo in each echogram.	
Date and signature:	

Related topics

[Test procedures, page 263](#)

Measuring noise in passive operating mode

Low noise is a key factor for high quality and reliable measurements. The performance of the EK80 system will always be limited by different noise sources. The noise is measured while the EK80 system operates in *Passive* mode with the transmit pulses disabled.

Prerequisites

The EK80 system hardware units are installed as specified in this manual.

- The EK80 system is turned on and operates normally.

Caution

You must never set the EK80 system to "ping" unless the transducer is submerged in water. The transducer may be damaged if it transmits in open air.

-
- All the relevant transceivers have been set up, and they are operational with their respective transducers.
 - All relevant channels (transceiver/transducer combinations) are installed in the user interface.

- All relevant external sensors are connected to the EK80. The sensors are turned on and operate normally.
- The vessel is berthed or at sea.

In order to do this test, the ship must be "silent".

- The water must be as deep as possible. Recommended minimum depth is 100 metres.
- There must be no other vessels in the vicinity.
- The vessel must lie still in the water.
- As much machinery as possible must be turned off. It is particularly important to turn off electrical motors, as well as cooling systems and hydraulic pumps that may cause electric noise.
- To prevent interference, all other hydroacoustic instruments must be turned off.

Note

This test must be considered as indicative. With the vessel in port, the environmental conditions are not satisfactory. In the shallow waters of the port, noise from other vessels, dockyard workers or machinery will cause unreliable test results. If you do this tests in a busy harbour, or with noise sources present, the sensitive receivers will detect all the noise in the nearby waters.

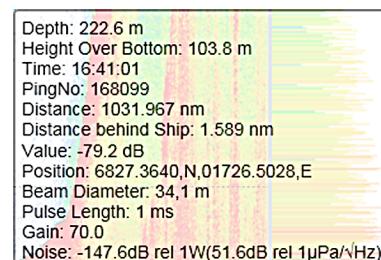
Neither tools nor instruments are required.

Context

It is essential that the noise signature is as low as possible. Your EK80 system must be set to *Passive* mode.

Procedure

- 1 To select *Passive* mode, use the **Normal Operation** dialog box.
 - a Open the **Operation** menu.
 - b Select **Normal Operation**.
 - c For the relevant transceiver channel, set **Mode** to *Passive*.
 - d Set **Pulse Duration** to 1.024 ms.
 - e Select **OK** to save the selected setting and close the dialog box.



Note

*If you set **Mode** to *Passive*, your EK80 system will no longer provide any information in the echogram(s).*

- 2 Enable the **Noise** tooltip.

- a Open the **Display** menu.
 - b Select **Display Options** to open the dialog box.
 - c Select **Tooltip** to open the page.
 - d Enable the **Noise** tooltip.
 - e Select **OK** to save the selected setting and close the dialog box.
- 3 For each channel:
- a Place the cursor in the approximate centre of the echogram, and observe the tooltip information.
 - b Read the noise value.
 - c Fill in the result table.

Result

Frequency	Noise level	Frequency	Noise level
18 kHz		120 kHz	
33 kHz		200 kHz	
70 kHz		333 kHz	

Requirements	Results
The noise levels are recorded.	
Date and signature:	

Related topics

[Test procedures, page 263](#)

Reading the transceiver hardware and software versions

The firmware and software versions in use by each transceiver are required for a unique identification of the EK80 system at the time of the test. The **Transceiver Installation** page in the user interface contains all relevant information related to the hardware and software versions in the transceiver.

Prerequisites

The EK80 system hardware units are installed as specified in this manual.

- The EK80 system is turned on and operates normally.

Caution

You must never set the EK80 system to "ping" unless the transducer is submerged in water. The transducer may be damaged if it transmits in open air.

- All the relevant transceivers have been set up, and they are operational with their respective transducers.
- All relevant channels (transceiver/transducer combinations) are installed in the user interface.
- All relevant external sensors are connected to the EK80. The sensors are turned on and operate normally.
- The vessel is berthed or at sea.

Procedure

- 1 Open the **Setup** menu.
- 2 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 3 On the left side, select **Transceiver**.
- 4 Make sure that all applicable transceivers and transducers are connected and operational.
For each transceiver, this is indicated by the green label with text "Installed".
- 5 Repeat this cycle for each transceiver in use.
 - a Click on the transceiver to select it.
 - b In the transceiver list, read the name of the transducer in use.
 - c In the *Transceiver Information* field, read the following information:
 - Identity
 - TX Firmware version
 - RX Firmware version
 - Software version
- 6 Fill in the result table.
- 7 Close the **Installation** dialog box.

Result

Fill in the software and firmware versions for each Transceiver Unit.			
Serial number	TX Firmware version	RX Firmware version	Software version

Related topics

[Test procedures, page 263](#)

Verifying the communication with the course gyro

Without the input from a course gyro, the EK80 system will not be able to present correct navigational information. The current heading is shown on the top bar if you have enabled this in the **Display Options** dialog box. The communication with the sensor is tested.

Prerequisites

The EK80 system hardware units are installed as specified in this manual.

- The sensor is connected to a communication port on the EK80 system. The sensor is turned on and in normal operation.
- The interface port is set up with the correct communication parameters.
- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.
- All relevant vessel drawings, installation reports and/or measurement results are available.
- The EK80 system is turned on and operates normally.
- The vessel is berthed or at sea.

Neither tools nor instruments are required. For connections and communication parameters, see the relevant end-user documentation from the sensor manufacturer.

Context

In most cases a suitable course gyro is already installed on the vessel. A global positioning system (GPS) with a compatible output format can also be used.

The properties of each of the available communication ports are defined on the **I/O Setup** page. The **Sensor Installation** page allows your EK80 system to communicate with external sensors and systems. To make sure that the information from the "most reliable" sensors are used by the EK80 system, use the **Sensor Configuration** page to define a datagram priorities.

The communication parameters defined for NMEA 0183 are:

- **Baud rate:** 4800 bit/s
- **Data bits:** 8
- **Parity:** Even
- **Stop bits:** 1

Procedure

- 1 Open the **Setup** menu.
- 2 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 3 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Sensor Installation**.
 - a Select the relevant sensor in the **Installed Sensors** list.
 - b Make sure that the correct installation parameters are used for the sensor.
- 4 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Sensor Configuration**.
 - a Select the relevant sensor in the **Sensor** list.
 - b Make sure that the correct parameters are used for sensor configuration.
- 5 Close the **Installation** dialog box without making any changes.
- 6 Observe the top bar.
- 7 Make sure that the information from the sensor is displayed.
If necessary, enable the read-out in the **Display Options** dialog box.
- 8 If possible, use another instrument to verify that the information provided by the EK80 is correct.
- 9 Fill in the result tables.

Result

Datagram	Port	Baud rate	Talker ID

X Offset	Y Offset	Z Offset
Requirements	Results	
Heading data is provided and displayed.		
The relevant communication parameters are recorded.		
Date and signature:		

Related topics

[Test procedures, page 263](#)

Verifying the communication with a navigation system (GPS)

For the EK80 system to use and offer correct navigational information, one or more external sensors must be connected. The communication with the sensor is tested.

Prerequisites

The EK80 system hardware units are installed as specified in this manual.

- The sensor is connected to a communication port on the EK80 system. The sensor is turned on and in normal operation.
- The interface port is set up with the correct communication parameters.
- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.
- All relevant vessel drawings, installation reports and/or measurement results are available.
- The EK80 system is turned on and operates normally.
- The vessel is berthed or at sea.

Neither tools nor instruments are required. For connections and communication parameters, see the relevant end-user documentation from the sensor manufacturer.

Context

Most global positioning system (GPS) receivers provide NMEA 0183 datagrams containing geographical latitude and longitude information, as well as current speed and sailed distance. Some GPS systems will also provide the current heading, but this information is normally taken from the gyro.

The properties of each of the available communication ports are defined on the **I/O Setup** page. The **Sensor Installation** page allows your EK80 system to communicate with external sensors and systems. To make sure that the information from the "most

"reliable" sensors are used by the EK80 system, use the **Sensor Configuration** page to define a datagram priorities.

The communication parameters defined for NMEA 0183 are:

- **Baud rate:** 4800 bit/s
- **Data bits:** 8
- **Parity:** Even
- **Stop bits:** 1

Some instruments may provide other parameters and/or options. You must always check the relevant technical documentation supplied by the manufacturer.

Procedure

- 1 Open the **Setup** menu.
- 2 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 3 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Sensor Installation**.
 - a Select the relevant sensor in the **Installed Sensors** list.
 - b Make sure that the correct installation parameters are used for the sensor.
- 4 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Sensor Configuration**.
 - a Select the relevant sensor in the **Sensor** list.
 - b Make sure that the correct parameters are used for sensor configuration.
- 5 Close the **Installation** dialog box without making any changes.
- 6 Observe the top bar.
- 7 Make sure that the information from the sensor is displayed.
If necessary, enable the read-out in the **Display Options** dialog box.
- 8 If possible, use another instrument to verify that the information provided by the EK80 is correct.
- 9 Fill in the result tables.

Result

Sensor	Source sensor	Datagram	Port	Baud rate
Position				
Speed				
Distance				
Heading				

X Offset	Y Offset	Z Offset
Requirements	Results	
Position data is provided.		
Speed data is provided.		
Distance data is provided.		
Heading data is provided.		
The relevant communication parameters are recorded.		
Date and signature:		

Related topics

[Test procedures, page 263](#)

Verifying the communication with speed log

Without the input from a speed log, the EK80 will not be able to present correct navigational information. The vessel speed is shown on the top bar if you have enabled this in the **Display Options** dialog box. The communication with the sensor is tested.

Prerequisites

The EK80 system hardware units are installed as specified in this manual.

- The sensor is connected to a communication port on the EK80 system. The sensor is turned on and in normal operation.
- The interface port is set up with the correct communication parameters.
- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.
- All relevant vessel drawings, installation reports and/or measurement results are available.
- The EK80 system is turned on and operates normally.
- The vessel is berthed or at sea.

Neither tools nor instruments are required. For connections and communication parameters, see the relevant end-user documentation from the sensor manufacturer.

Context

In most cases a suitable sensor is already installed on the vessel. A global positioning system (GPS) with a compatible output format can also be used.

The properties of each of the available communication ports are defined on the **I/O Setup** page. The **Sensor Installation** page allows your EK80 system to communicate with external sensors and systems. To make sure that the information from the "most reliable" sensors are used by the EK80 system, use the **Sensor Configuration** page to define a datagram priorities.

The communication parameters defined for NMEA 0183 are:

- **Baud rate:** 4800 bit/s
- **Data bits:** 8
- **Parity:** Even
- **Stop bits:** 1

Procedure

- 1 Open the **Setup** menu.
- 2 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



Observe that the **Installation** dialog box opens. This dialog box contains a number of pages selected from the menu on the left side.

- 3 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Sensor Installation**.
 - a Select the relevant sensor in the **Installed Sensors** list.
 - b Make sure that the correct installation parameters are used for the sensor.
- 4 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Sensor Configuration**.
 - a Select the relevant sensor in the **Sensor** list.
 - b Make sure that the correct parameters are used for sensor configuration.
- 5 Close the **Installation** dialog box without making any changes.
- 6 Observe the top bar.
- 7 Make sure that the information from the sensor is displayed.
If necessary, enable the read-out in the **Display Options** dialog box.
- 8 If possible, use another instrument to verify that the information provided by the EK80 is correct.
- 9 Fill in the result tables.

Result

Datagram	Port	Baud rate	Talker ID

Requirements	Results
Speed data is provided and displayed.	
The relevant communication parameters are recorded.	
Date and signature:	

Related topics

[Test procedures, page 263](#)

Verifying the communication with the motion reference unit (MRU)

The information from a motion reference unit (MRU) (normally heave, roll and pitch information) is imported into the EK80 system to increase the accuracy of the echo data. The communication with the sensor is tested. This task is only applicable if you are using an external motion reference unit on your EK80 system.

Prerequisites

The EK80 system hardware units are installed as specified in this manual.

- The sensor is connected to a communication port on the EK80 system. The sensor is turned on and in normal operation.
- The interface port is set up with the correct communication parameters.
- You are familiar with NMEA and other relevant datagram formats.
- You know how to set up the parameters for serial and local area network (LAN) communication.
- All relevant vessel drawings, installation reports and/or measurement results are available.
- The EK80 system is turned on and operates normally.
- The vessel is berthed or at sea.

Neither tools nor instruments are required. For connections and communication parameters, see the relevant end-user documentation from the sensor manufacturer.

Context

The motion reference unit (MRU) measures the roll and pitch movements of the vessel. The information provided by the motion sensor is used by the EK80 system to stabilize the beams.

Procedure

- 1 Open the **Setup** menu.

- 2 On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.



- 3 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Motion Reference Unit**.
 - a If you use the motion sensor in the Motor Control Unit on the hull unit, make sure that **LAN** is selected.
The sensor uses a local area network (LAN) port on your computer. A message on the page verifies that it is connected to the EK80 system's beamformer application.
 - b If you use an external motion reference unit (MRU), make sure that a COM port is selected, and that the correct parameters are provided.
- 4 On the left side of the **Installation** dialog box, select **Installation Parameters** to open the page.
 - a Open the **MRU** (Motion Reference Unit) page.
 - b Make sure that the installation parameters for the motion sensor (offset and rotation) are correct.

The physical location of the sensor (X, Y and Z offsets) must be extracted from the detailed vessel drawings, or from the reports provided by the personnel that did the actual installation. The information about the installation angles must be extracted from the reports provided by the personnel that did or measured up the actual installation.

- 5 Close the **Installation** dialog box without making any changes.

- 6 Observe the top bar.

- 7 Make sure that the information from the sensor is displayed.

If necessary, enable the read-out in the **Display Options** dialog box.

Note

In order to read the motion compensation values, the EK80 must be "pinging".

- 8 If possible, use another instrument to verify that the information provided by the EK80 is correct.
- 9 Fill in the result tables.

Result

Port	Baud rate	Protocol

X Offset	Y Offset	Z Offset
Rotation Around X	Rotation Around Y	Rotation Around Z
Requirements	Results	
Motion compensation is operational.		
The compensated values are shown.		
Date and signature:		

Related topics

[Test procedures, page 263](#)

Verifying the communication with a synchronization system

Whenever more than one hydroacoustic system is installed on a vessel, interference may occur. The EK80 offers functionality for remote transmit synchronization. It can be set up to operate in either *Master* or *Slave* mode. Synchronization is required in order to avoid interference if the EK80 is used simultaneously with other hydroacoustic instruments within the same frequency range. You do not need to do this test if the EK80 shall only operate in *Standalone* mode.

Prerequisites

The EK80 system is installed as specified in this manual. To make sure that the interface is functional, a relevant synchronization system must be connected to the EK80.

- The EK80 system is turned on and operates normally.
- For "slave" operation, a remote system (for example *K-Sync* or *Simrad TU40*) must be available to provide trigger pulses.
- For "master" operation, a remote hydroacoustic system (sonar, echo sounder) is connected. This remote system must be set up in "slave" mode.
- The vessel is berthed or at sea.

Neither tools nor instruments are required.

Context

Whenever more than one hydroacoustic system is installed on a vessel, interference may occur. To avoid interference, you have these options:

- The systems are all connected to a common synchronization system.
- One of the acoustic systems is set up as "master", and controls the transmissions on the other systems.

Procedure

- 1 Test the synchronization when EK80 operates in *Master* mode.
 - a On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.
 - b Select **Synchronization**.
 - c Record the communication parameters in the result table.
 - d Select synchronization mode.
 - e Select the synchronization delay.
 - f Make sure that relevant hydroacoustic systems connected to the EK80 are synchronized.
- 2 Test the synchronization when EK80 operates in *Slave* mode.
 - a Make sure that the synchronization system is connected.
 - b On the **Setup** menu, select **Installation**.
 - c Select **Synchronization**.
 - d Record the communication parameters in the result table.
 - e Select synchronization mode.
 - f Select the synchronization delay.
 - g Make sure that the EK80 operates normally when triggered by the remote synchronization system.

Result

Sensor	Source system	Port
Synchronization		
Requirements		Results
The external synchronization system is connected to provide trigger pulses (if relevant).		
The EK80 operates in <i>Slave</i> mode.		
The EK80 operates in <i>Master</i> mode.		
Relevant communication parameters are recorded.		
The EK80 operates while additional hydroacoustic systems (sonars, echo sounders) are in synchronized operation.		
Date and signature:		

Related topics

[Test procedures, page 263](#)

Making a noise/speed curve to determine vessel noise

The performance of the EK80 system will always be limited by different noise sources. During this test, noise measurements are done for different vessel speeds. The weather and sea conditions for the noise measurements will be those at the time of the test.

Prerequisites

The EK80 system is turned on and operates normally. All the relevant transceivers have been set up, and they are operational with their respective transducers.

Make a note of the sea state and wind at the time of the test.

You need the following equipment:

- Personal computer
- Spreadsheet program

Context

In order to measure the noise, you must record the noise value using the tooltip in the echogram. Since the noise will vary with each ping, you must make five measurements for each vessel speed, and then calculate the average noise. You must measure the noise for each single channel, but you can do all these measurements simultaneously.

Tip _____

If you record all the raw data during the noise test, you can repeat the test later using the replay file. You may then use more than five noise samples for each vessel speed to make a more accurate curve.

Procedure

- 1 To select *Passive* mode, use the **Normal Operation** dialog box.
 - a Open the **Operation** menu.
 - b Select **Normal Operation**.
 - c For each transceiver channel, set **Mode** to *Passive*.
 - d Select **OK** to save the selected settings and close the dialog box.

Note _____

*If you set **Mode** to *Passive*, your EK80 system will no longer provide any information in the echogram(s).*

- 2 Enable the **Noise** tooltip.
 - a Open the **Display** menu.
 - b Select **Display Options** to open the dialog box.
 - c Select **Tooltip** to open the page.

- d Enable the **Noise** tooltip.
 - e Select **OK** to save the selected setting and close the dialog box.
- 3 Establish a separate communication line with the bridge to verify the vessel speed during the test.
- 4 Measure the acoustic noise versus the vessel speed.
- Start raw data recording.
- Repeat the following cycle for each vessel speed:
- a Ask the bridge to set the speed.
 - b Once the bridge reports that the speed has been obtained, select **Event** on the toolbar.
 - c If possible, verify the vessel speed on the top bar.
 - d For each channel, place the cursor five different places on the echogram on the right side of the event marker, and record the noise values.
 - e Calculate the average noise in each channel, and record it in the table.
(If you find it more convenient, type the data directly into the spreadsheet.)
 - f Ask the bridge to set the next speed.
- Stop the recording.
- 5 When all the measurements have been made, type the data (speed and noise) into a spreadsheet to create the curve.
- 6 Save the data using a unique file name that identifies context, date, time and vessel. Attach the data file to the electronic copy of the test report.
- 7 Measure the flow noise versus the vessel speed.
- For each channel:
- a Start raw data recording.
 - b Ask the bridge to increase the vessel speed to maximum.
 - c Wait until maximum speed has been obtained.
 - d Ask the bridge to abruptly turn off all engine power and - if possible - change the pitch of the propellers to zero.
 - e Read the vessel speed on the top bar.
 - f Place the cursor in the approximate centre of the echogram, and observe the tooltip information.
 - g For every two knots the speed is reduced, read the noise.
(If you find it more convenient, type the data directly into the spreadsheet.)
 - h Fill in the result table.
 - i Stop the recording.

- 8 When all the measurements have been made, type the data (speed and noise) into a spreadsheet to create the curve.
- 9 Save the data using a unique file name that identifies context, date, time and vessel. Attach the data file to the electronic copy of the test report.

Result

Speed/Noise						
Speed	M1	M2	M3	M4	M5	Average
1						
2						
3						
4						
5						
6						
7						
8						
9						
10						
11						
12						
13						
14						
15						
16						
17						
18						
19						
20						
Channel:						
Sea state:						

Use this table to record the values. Alternatively, you can type the values straight into a spreadsheet. Make the necessary copies so that you have one table for each channel.

Speed/Flow noise	
Speed	M1
20	
18	
16	
14	
12	

Speed/Flow noise	
Speed	M1
10	
8	
6	
4	
2	
0	
Channel:	
Sea state:	

Use this table to record the values. Alternatively, you can type the values straight into a spreadsheet. Make the necessary copies so that you have one table for each channel.

Test requirements	Results
A noise/speed curve is created.	
Date and signature:	

Related topics

[Test procedures, page 263](#)

Turning off the EK80 system

You must never turn off the EK80 system by means of the on/off switch on the Processor Unit. You must always close the EK80 program by selecting **Exit** on the top bar.

Context

When you do not use the EK80 system, turn it off. If you are not using the EK80 system for a long period of time, turn off the transceiver. Use the on/off switch on the power supply, or disengage the circuit breakers.

Procedure

- 1 Select **Exit** on the top bar.

Observe that the EK80 program closes down.

Tip

If the EK80 Processor Unit is used as a server with one or more clients connected, a relevant message will appear. We recommend that you turn these clients off first. Closing down the EK80 program with clients connected will take longer time.

- 2 If the Processor Unit does not turn itself off automatically, use the functionality provided by the operating system to turn it off manually.

3 Turn off the display.

If required, refer to the instructions provided by the display manufacturer.

4 Turn off each transceiver.

The Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) is not fitted with an on/off switch. You can leave the unit permanently turned on. If you are not using the EK80 system for a long period of time, turn off or disconnect the power supply.

Installation remarks

Use this page to write down comments and remarks related to the EK80 installation. When the installation has been fully completed, and all functional tests have been made to full satisfaction, representatives from each party must sign.

Vessel/Customer	
Place and date	
Comments	

Signatures

Installation done by	Company/Position	Date and signature
Installation accepted by	Company/Position	Date and signature

Technical specifications

Topics

- [Introduction to technical specifications, page 287](#)
- [Interface specifications, page 288](#)
- [Power requirements, page 300](#)
- [Weights and outline dimensions, page 303](#)
- [Environmental requirements, page 306](#)
- [Compass safe distance, page 309](#)
- [Minimum computer requirements, page 311](#)
- [Minimum display requirements, page 312](#)

Introduction to technical specifications

These technical specifications summarize the main functional and operational characteristics of the EK80 Wide band scientific echo sounder. They also provide information related to power requirements, physical properties and environmental conditions.

The EK80 software supports several different transceiver units. The information is mainly prepared for EK80 installations on a vessel. One or more Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) units are provided. For technical specifications about other transceivers supported by the EK80, see the relevant publications.

Note

At Kongsberg Maritime, we are continuously working to improve the quality and performance of our products. The technical specifications may be changed without prior notice.

Related topics

[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Interface specifications

The EK80 system will interface with peripheral systems and sensors using standard and/or proprietary datagram formats.

For more detailed information about datagrams and file formats, refer to the dedicated EK80 *Interface Specifications* publication.

Topics

- [Supported datagram formats for annotation data, page 288](#)
- [Supported datagram formats for distance information, page 289](#)
- [Supported datagram formats for drop keel offset information, page 289](#)
- [Supported datagram formats for external depth input, page 290](#)
- [Supported datagram formats for position information, page 291](#)
- [Supported datagram formats for heading and gyro information, page 292](#)
- [Supported datagram formats for trawl information, page 293](#)
- [Supported datagram formats for motion information, page 294](#)
- [Supported datagram formats for palette control, page 294](#)
- [Supported datagram formats for catch monitoring information, page 295](#)
- [Supported datagram formats for sound speed sensors, page 295](#)
- [Supported datagram formats for speed log information, page 296](#)
- [Supported datagram formats for temperature information, page 296](#)
- [Supported datagram formats for water level offset information, page 297](#)
- [Supported formats for processed data to output, page 298](#)
- [Supported formats for processed data to file, page 299](#)

Supported datagram formats for annotation data

When you study an echogram, it is often useful to add personal comments to it. Comments can be used to identify specific events such as specific echoes, unusual bottom conditions, or simply for keeping track of time or distance. You can add annotations manually, or import information as datagrams using a serial or LAN (Ethernet) communication port.

The EK80 system supports the following datagram format for annotations:

- **ATS Annotation**

ATS Annotation is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime. It allows you to import text annotations from external devices.

Related topics

[Interface specifications, page 288](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Supported datagram formats for distance information

In this maritime context, *distance* refers to the physical travelled distance the vessel has made since the sensor was last reset. A suitable external sensor must be provided. A global positioning system (GPS) with a compatible output format can also be used. When enabled, the navigational information on the top bar includes a read-out of the vessel's travelled distance.

The EK80 supports the following datagram format for vessel distance information.



- **NMEA VLW**

The NMEA VLW datagram contains the travelled distance of the vessel. Two values are provided; relative to the water and over the ground.

Related topics

[Interface specifications, page 288](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Supported datagram formats for drop keel offset information

If your vessel is equipped with a drop keel, the operating depth of the transducer face will vary. This variation affects the position of the transducer in the vessel's coordinate system. To make accurate measurements, this offset must be compensated.

The EK80 supports the following datagram format for drop keel offset information.

- **OFS Drop keel**

The proprietary OFS datagram contains the current length travelled by the drop keel. The information is required to establish the offset of the transducer face relative to the vessel origin. A custom-built sensor may be required for this measurement.

Related topics

[Interface specifications, page 288](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Supported datagram formats for external depth input

The EK80 can receive depth information from an external echo sounder.

The EK80 supports the following datagram format for depth information from an echo sounder:

- **NMEA DPT**

The NMEA DPT datagram provides the water depth relative to the transducer, and the offset of the measuring transducer.

Related topics

[Interface specifications, page 288](#)

[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Supported datagram formats for position information

Accurate and reliable information from navigation systems are useful for the EK80 operation. When enabled, the vessel's current geographical position is shown on the top bar.

The EK80 supports the following datagram formats for position information.



- **NMEA GLL**

The NMEA GLL datagram transfers the latitude and longitude of vessel position, the time of the position fix and the current status from a global positioning system (GPS).

- **NMEA GGA**

The NMEA GGA datagram transfers time-, position- and fix-related data from a global positioning system (GPS).

- **NMEA GGK**

The NMEA GGK datagram is used to decode the PTNL, Time, Position, Type and DOP (Dilution of Precision) string of the NMEA 0183 output.

- **PTNL GGK**

PTNL GGK is a proprietary datagram from Trimble (<https://www.trimble.com>). It is longer than the standard NMEA GGK datagram. The PTNL GGK datagram is used to decode the time, position, type and dilution of precision of the current position.

- **NMEA RMC**

The NMEA RMC datagram transfers the time, date, position, course and speed data from a global navigation satellite system (GNSS) receiver.

- **NMEA VTG**

The NMEA VTG datagram contains the actual course and speed relative to the ground.

- **NMEA ZDA**

The NMEA ZDA datagram contains the universal time code (UTC), day, month, year and local time zone.

Related topics

- [Interface specifications, page 288](#)
- [Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Supported datagram formats for heading and gyro information

The heading sensor provides the EK80 with the vessel's current heading. When enabled, the vessel's current heading is shown on the top bar.

The EK80 supports the following datagram formats for vessel heading and/or gyro information.



- **NMEA HDT**

The NMEA HDT datagram provides the true vessel heading. The information is normally provided by a course gyro.

- **NMEA HDM**

The NMEA HDM datagram provides vessel heading in degrees magnetic. The datagram is no longer recommended for use in new designs. It is often replaced by the NMEA HDG telegram.

- **NMEA HDG**

The NMEA HDG datagram provides heading from a magnetic sensor. If this reading is corrected for deviation, it produces the magnetic heading. If it is offset by variation, it provides the true heading.

- **NMEA THS**

The NMEA THS datagram provides the true vessel heading. The datagram includes a mode indicator field providing critical safety-related information about the heading data. The THS datagram replaces the deprecated HDT.

Related topics

[Interface specifications, page 288](#)

[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Supported datagram formats for trawl information

The data communication from an external trawl system is based on proprietary data formats.

The EK80 supports the following datagram formats from a trawl system:

- **Simrad DBS**

Simrad DBS is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the current depth of the trawl sensor.

- **Simrad HFB**

Simrad HFB is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime. It provides the vertical distance (height) from the headrope to the footrope, and from the headrope to the bottom. The heights are measured by an ITI TrawlEye or a height sensor. If you use two height sensors, the information from the second sensor is provided in the Simrad HB2 datagram.

- **Simrad TDS**

Simrad TDS is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the door spread. That is the distance between the two trawl doors. In a dual trawl system, the distance between the second door set is provided in the Simrad TS2 datagram.

- **Simrad TPR**

Simrad TPR is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime. It provides the relative bearing and water depth of the trawl sensor, as well as its distance from the vessel. The bearing resolution is 1 degree. The Simrad ITI measures the depth differently from the range and the bearing. If the ITI only knows the range and the bearing, the depth field is empty.

- **Simrad TPT**

Simrad TPT is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the true bearing and water depth of the trawl sensor, as well as its distance from the vessel. The bearing resolution is 1 degree.

Related topics

- [Interface specifications, page 288](#)
- [Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Supported datagram formats for motion information

The EK80 system interfaces peripheral systems and sensors using standard and/or proprietary datagram formats. When enabled, the navigational information on the top bar includes the vessel's current roll, pitch and heave movements.

The EK80 system supports the following datagram formats from a motion sensor:



- **KM Binary**

KM Binary is a generic datagram format defined by Kongsberg Maritime. This format has very high resolution on timing and sensor parameters.

- **Kongsberg EM Attitude 3000**

The Kongsberg EM Attitude 3000 is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime for use with digital motion sensors. It holds roll, pitch, heave and heading information.

- **Furuno GPhve**

Furuno GPhve is a proprietary datagram format created by Furuno (<http://www.furuno.jp>) to contain heave information.

- **Hemisphere GNSS GPHEV**

GPHEV is a proprietary datagram format created by Hemisphere GNSS (<https://hemispherengnss.com>) to contain heave information.

- **Teledyne TSS1**

Teledyne TSS1 is a proprietary datagram format created by Teledyne TSS Navigation Systems for heave, roll and pitch compensation. When you select this protocol, the number of sensor variables is fixed, and there is no token associated with it.

Related topics

[Interface specifications, page 288](#)

[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Supported datagram formats for palette control

On some vessels, the EK80 is used as an integrated part of a large information system. In such cases, the host system may offer a common palette control. This allows you to select a common colour scheme ("skin") used in all the presentations.

The EK80 supports the following datagram format for palette control:

- **NMEA DDC**

The NMEA DDC (Display Dimming and Control) datagram format allows you to remotely control the colour palette and brightness of the EK80 display presentations.

Related topics

[Interface specifications, page 288](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Supported datagram formats for catch monitoring information

The data communication from an external catch monitoring system is based on proprietary data formats.

The EK80 supports the following datagram formats from a catch monitoring system.

- **Simrad PSIMP D**

Simrad PSIMP D is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the type and configuration of PS and PI sensors used by a Simrad catch monitoring system. This datagram format is obsolete, and it is no longer in use on new designs. It has been replaced by datagram PSIMP D1.

- **Simrad PSIMP D1**

Simrad PSIMP D1 is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the type and configuration of PS, PI and PX sensors used by a Simrad catch monitoring system. This datagram format replaces the PSIMP D format.

- **Simrad PSIMP F**

Simrad PSIMP F is a proprietary datagram format created by Kongsberg Maritime to provide the type and configuration of PS and PI sensors used by a Simrad catch monitoring system.

Related topics

[Interface specifications, page 288](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Supported datagram formats for sound speed sensors

The **Profile** page in the **Environment** dialog box shows the current sound speed profile. You can select a new profile provided by a CTD (Conductivity, Temperature, Depth) sensor.

The EK80 supports the following datagram format from a sound speed sensor.

- **AML Sound speed**

AML is a third-party proprietary datagram format created by AML Oceanographic (<http://www.amloceanographic.com>) for use with their sound velocity probes. The sound velocity probe output is configurable. The code is searching for a value between 1300 and 1800 and uses it as the sound speed.

Related topics

[Interface specifications, page 288](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Supported datagram formats for speed log information

An external speed sensor is typically a global positioning system (GPS) or a dedicated speed log. When enabled, the vessel's current speed is shown on the top bar.

The EK80 supports the following datagram formats for speed information.



- **NMEA VTG**

The NMEA VTG datagram contains the actual course and speed relative to the ground.

- **NMEA VBW**

The NMEA VBW datagram contains water- and ground-referenced vessel speed data.

- **NMEA VHW**

The NMEA VHW datagram contains the compass heading to which the vessel points, and the speed of the vessel relative to the water.

- **NMEA CUR**

The NMEA CUR datagram contains multi-layer water current data. This includes the depth and speed of the current.

Related topics

[Interface specifications, page 288](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Supported datagram formats for temperature information

The navigational information on the top bar may include a read-out of the current water temperature.

If a suitable sensor is connected to the EK80 system, the top bar may show you the current temperature. The function is offered to allow you to monitor the water temperature, but it will display any temperature reading that is made by the sensor.

The EK80 supports the following datagram format from temperature sensors:



- **NMEA MTW**

The NMEA MTW datagram provides the current water temperature.

Related topics

[Interface specifications, page 288](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Supported datagram formats for water level offset information

Many factors can cause the ship's draft to change. The amount of fuel, cargo or ballast may greatly influence the draft. Varying water temperatures and salinity will also have an effect. Draft changes will make any sensor move vertically on the X-axis when referenced to the sea surface. To keep measurements accurate, the location of the water line must therefore be monitored.

The EK80 supports the following datagram format for water level offset information:

- **DFT Water Level**

The proprietary DFT datagram contains the current water level (draft). The information is required to establish the offset of the transducer face relative to the vessel origin. A custom-built sensor may be required for this measurement.

Related topics

[Interface specifications, page 288](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Supported formats for processed data to output

The EK80 can export several types of processed data to a communication port. Use **Processed Data to Output** to define which processed data formats to export, and which communication port to use. This page is located in the **Output** dialog box.

The following formats are supported:

- **XYZ file format**

This is processed and interpolated "xyz" data in ASCII format. The XYZ datagram is a topographical datagram showing the position and depth of a single channel.

- **ZMQ Beam Velocity**

ZMQ Beam Velocity identifies the datagram format used to export data to the UHDAS (University of Hawaii Data Acquisition System) processing software. To export ADCP data to the UHDAS processing software, select the ZMQ Beam Velocity datagram format on the **Processed Data to Output** page in the **Output** dialog box. For more information about the proprietary UHDAS format, visit currents.soest.hawaii.edu/uhdas_home.

- **NMEA DBS**

The NMEA DBS datagram provides the current depth from the surface. The datagram is no longer recommended for use in new designs. It is frequently replaced by the NMEA DPT datagram format.

- **NMEA DBT**

The NMEA DBT datagram provides the current depth under the transducer. In new designs, this datagram format is frequently used to replace the DBK and DBS formats.

- **NMEA DPT**

The NMEA DPT datagram provides the water depth relative to the transducer, and the offset of the measuring transducer.

- **Atlas Depth**

Atlas Depth is a proprietary datagram format created by Atlas Elektronik (<https://www.atlas-elektronik.com>) to provide the current depth from two channels.

- **Simrad PSIMDHB**

The proprietary Simrad PSIMDHB datagram format is created by Kongsberg Maritime to contain the calculated bottom hardness and biomass information. The bottom depth is given as DBS (depth below surface). It is assumed that correct transducer draft has been provided.

- **NMEA VBW**

The NMEA VBW datagram contains water- and ground-referenced vessel speed data.

- **NMEA VHW**

The NMEA VHW datagram contains the compass heading to which the vessel points, and the speed of the vessel relative to the water.

- **NMEA VTG**

The NMEA VTG datagram contains the actual course and speed relative to the ground.

- **CP1 Current Profile**

^{394149/E}
The CP1 Current Profile datagram is a proprietary format created by Kongsberg Maritime. The datagram exports the velocity of the water current from the seafloor and from a selection of depth layers in the water column.

Related topics

[Interface specifications, page 288](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Supported formats for processed data to file

The EK80 system can export several types of processed data file formats. Use **Processed Data to File** to define which processed data formats to save, and where to place the files. This page is located in the **Output** dialog box.

Note

The data files will normally become very large. If you wish to record large amounts of data, make sure that you have enough space on your hard disk. Unless your computer is equipped with a very large disk, we recommend that you save the data to an external storage device.

The following formats are supported:

- **XYZ**

This is processed and interpolated "xyz" data in ASCII format. The XYZ datagram is a topographical datagram showing the position and depth of a single channel.

- **ADCP NetCDF**

SONAR-NetCDF4 is a data and metadata convention for storage of data from active sonars in NetCDF4 formatted files, defined by The International Council for the Exploration of the Sea (ICES). Sonar-NetCDF4 consists primarily of a naming convention and a data structure within the NetCDF4 data model. The EK80 system supports netCDF4, where the number refers to the version of the format. The ADCP-NetCDF4 is based on the SONAR-NetCDF4 version 1.0 and extended with additional data and metadata to store ADCP data.

- **BOT**

The BOT file format is a proprietary file format designed by Kongsberg Maritime to contain configuration and depth information. The BOT data file contains a set of *datagrams*. The datagram sequence is not fixed. It depends on the number of installed frequency channels.

Related topics

[Interface specifications, page 288](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Power requirements

These power characteristics summarize the supply power requirements for the EK80 system.

Topics

- [Display power requirements, page 300](#)
- [Processor Unit power requirements, page 300](#)
- [Wide Band Transceiver \(WBT\) power requirements, page 301](#)
- [WBT Power Supply power requirements, page 301](#)
- [LBG408A-R2 Ethernet switch power requirements, page 301](#)
- [WBT Cabinet power requirements, page 302](#)

Display power requirements

Not applicable. The display is not a part of the EK80 scope of supply. It is not manufactured by Kongsberg Maritime. For more information, refer to the end-user documentation provided by the manufacturer.

Related topics

- [Power requirements, page 300](#)
- [Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Processor Unit power requirements

- **Model:** EK80 Processor Unit (Enix)
- **Voltage requirement:** 115/230 VAC (Single phase/Nominal voltage)
- **Maximum voltage deviation:** 15%
- **Maximum transient:** 20% of nominal voltage, recovery time 3 s
- **Power consumption:** 500 W @ 230 VAC (Approximately)

The technical specifications are those valid for the computer that is provided by Kongsberg Maritime as a part of the EK80 system. For specifications related to a locally purchased computer, refer to the documentation provided with the unit.

Related topics

- [Power requirements, page 300](#)
- [Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) power requirements

- **Make and model:** Simrad Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)
- **Voltage requirement:** 12 – 15 VDC, 5A
A suitable power supply is provided with the delivery.
- **Power supply:**
 - **Make and model:** WBT Power supply
 - **Voltage requirement:** 115/230 VAC, 47 to 63 Hz, single phase, nominal
 - **Maximum voltage deviation:** 15%
 - **Maximum transient:** 20% of nominal voltage, recovery time 3 s
 - **Power consumption:** 100 VA (Approximately)

Related topics

- [Power requirements, page 300](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

WBT Power Supply power requirements

- **Make and model:** WBT Power supply
- **Voltage requirement:** 115/230 VAC, 47 to 63 Hz, single phase, nominal
- **Maximum voltage deviation:** 15%
- **Maximum transient:** 20% of nominal voltage, recovery time 3 s
- **Power consumption:** 100 VA (Approximately)

Related topics

- [Power requirements, page 300](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

LBG408A-R2 Ethernet switch power requirements

The technical specifications are those valid for the Ethernet switch that was delivered from Kongsberg Maritime as a part of the EK80 delivery. For specifications related to a locally purchased Ethernet switch, refer to the documentation provided with the unit.

- **Manufacturer:** Black Box
- **Manufacturer's website:** <http://www.blackbox.co.uk>
- **Make and model:** Black Box LBG408A-R2
- **Voltage requirement:** 100 - 240 VAC
- **Power consumption:** 15 W (Maximum)

For additional details, refer to the technical specifications provided by the manufacturer.

Note

This information was copied from the manufacturer's documentation. To ensure that your information is correct, always consult the manufacturer's own documents.

Related topics

[Power requirements, page 300](#)

[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

WBT Cabinet power requirements

- **Make and model:** Simrad WBT Cabinet
- **Power requirements:** Not applicable.

Related topics

[Power requirements, page 300](#)

[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Weights and outline dimensions

These weights and outline dimension characteristics summarize the physical properties of the EK80 system.

Topics

[Display weight and outline dimensions, page 303](#)

[Processor Unit weight and outline dimensions, page 303](#)

[Wide Band Transceiver \(WBT\) weight and outline dimensions, page 304](#)

[LBG408A-R2 Ethernet switch weight and outline dimensions, page 304](#)

[WBT Cabinet weight and outline dimensions, page 305](#)

Display weight and outline dimensions

Not applicable. The display is not a part of the EK80 scope of supply. It is not manufactured by Kongsberg Maritime. For more information, refer to the end-user documentation provided by the manufacturer.

Related topics

[Weights and outline dimensions, page 303](#)

[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Processor Unit weight and outline dimensions

- **Make and model:** EK80 Processor Unit (Enix)
- **Outline dimensions:**
 - **Depth:** 385 mm
 - **Width:** 479.6 mm (Will fit in a 19" rack)
 - **Height:** 177 mm
- **Weight:** 16 kg (Approximately)

The technical specifications are those valid for the computer that is provided by Kongsberg Maritime as a part of the EK80 system. For specifications related to a locally purchased computer, refer to the documentation provided with the unit.

Related topics

[Weights and outline dimensions, page 303](#)

[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

[385609 Processor Unit outline dimensions Enix, page 318](#)

Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) weight and outline dimensions

- **Make and model:** Simrad Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)
- **Outline dimensions:**
 - **Depth:** 213 mm
 - **Width:** 438 mm
 - **Height:** 84 mm
- **Weight:** 5 kg (Approximately)

Related topics

[Weights and outline dimensions, page 303](#)

[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

[388697 Wide Band Transceiver \(WBT\) outline dimensions, page 316](#)

LBG408A-R2 Ethernet switch weight and outline dimensions

The technical specifications are those valid for the Ethernet switch that was delivered from Kongsberg Maritime as a part of the EK80 delivery. For specifications related to a locally purchased Ethernet switch, refer to the documentation provided with the unit.

- **Manufacturer:** Black Box
- **Manufacturer's website:** <http://www.blackbox.co.uk>
- **Make and model:** Black Box LBG408A-R2
- **Outline dimensions:**
 - **Depth:** 123 mm
 - **Width:** 228 mm
 - **Height:** 44 mm
- **Weight:** 0.9 kg (Approximately)

For additional details, refer to the technical specifications provided by the manufacturer.

Note

This information was copied from the manufacturer's documentation. To ensure that your information is correct, always consult the manufacturer's own documents.

Related topics

[Weights and outline dimensions, page 303](#)

[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

WBT Cabinet weight and outline dimensions

- **Make and model:** Simrad WBT Cabinet
- **Outline dimensions:**
 - **Depth:** 757 mm (With shock absorbers)
 - **Width:** 607 mm
 - **Height:** 1350 mm (With shock absorbers)
- **Weight:**
 - **Empty:** 80 kg (Approximately)
 - **With seven WBT units:** 150 kg (Approximately)

Related topics

[Weights and outline dimensions, page 303](#)

[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

[400930 WBT Cabinet outline dimensions, page 322](#)

Environmental requirements

These environmental specifications summarize the temperature and humidity requirements for the EK80 system.

Topics

- [Display environmental requirements, page 306](#)
- [Processor Unit environmental requirements, page 306](#)
- [Wide Band Transceiver \(WBT\) environmental requirements, page 307](#)
- [LBG408A-R2 Ethernet switch environmental requirements, page 307](#)
- [WBT Cabinet environmental requirements, page 308](#)

Display environmental requirements

Not applicable. The display is not a part of the EK80 scope of supply. It is not manufactured by Kongsberg Maritime. For more information, refer to the end-user documentation provided by the manufacturer.

Related topics

- [Environmental requirements, page 306](#)
- [Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Processor Unit environmental requirements

- **Model:** EK80 Processor Unit (Enix)
- **Operating temperature:** -15 to 55 °C
- **Storage temperature:** -20 to 70 °C
- **Relative humidity:** 10 to 95% relative non-condensing
- **Certificates:**
 - IEC 60945
 - IACS E10

The technical specifications are those valid for the computer that is provided by Kongsberg Maritime as a part of the EK80 system. For specifications related to a locally purchased computer, refer to the documentation provided with the unit.

Related topics

[Environmental requirements, page 306](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) environmental requirements

- **Make and model:** Simrad Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)
- **Operating temperature:** 0 to +50 °C
- **Storage temperature:** -40 to 70 °C
- **Relative humidity:** 5 to 95% relative, non-condensing
- **Ingress protection (IP) code:** IP52

Related topics

[Environmental requirements, page 306](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

LBG408A-R2 Ethernet switch environmental requirements

The technical specifications are those valid for the Ethernet switch that was delivered from Kongsberg Maritime as a part of the EK80 delivery. For specifications related to a locally purchased Ethernet switch, refer to the documentation provided with the unit.

- **Manufacturer:** Black Box
- **Manufacturer's website:** <http://www.blackbox.co.uk>
- **Make and model:** Black Box LBG408A-R2
- **Operating temperature:** 0 to +45 °C
- **Storage temperature:** -20 to 90 °C
- **Relative humidity:** 10 to 90 % relative non-condensing

For additional details, refer to the technical specifications provided by the manufacturer.

Note _____

This information was copied from the manufacturer's documentation. To ensure that your information is correct, always consult the manufacturer's own documents.

Related topics

[Environmental requirements, page 306](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

WBT Cabinet environmental requirements

- **Make and model:** Simrad WBT Cabinet
- **Environmental requirements:** Not applicable.

Related topics

[Environmental requirements, page 306](#)

[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Compass safe distance

If you place any of the EK80 Wide band scientific echo sounder units on the bridge, you must observe the physical distance to the compass.

Topics

- [Display compass safe distance, page 309](#)
- [Processor Unit compass safe distance, page 309](#)
- [Wide Band Transceiver \(WBT\) compass safe distance, page 310](#)
- [WBT Power Supply compass safe distance, page 310](#)
- [LBG408A-R2 Ethernet switch compass safe distance, page 310](#)
- [WBT Cabinet compass safe distance, page 310](#)

Display compass safe distance

Not applicable. The display is not a part of the EK80 scope of supply. It is not manufactured by Kongsberg Maritime. For more information, refer to the end-user documentation provided by the manufacturer.

Related topics

- [Compass safe distance, page 309](#)
- [Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Processor Unit compass safe distance

- **Model:** EK80 Processor Unit (Enix)
- **Standard compass:** 200 cm
- **Other compass:** 140 cm

The technical specifications are those valid for the computer that is provided by Kongsberg Maritime as a part of the EK80 system. For specifications related to a locally purchased computer, refer to the documentation provided with the unit.

Related topics

- [Compass safe distance, page 309](#)
- [Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) compass safe distance

- **Make and model:** Simrad Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)
- **Standard compass:** 30 cm

Related topics

[Compass safe distance, page 309](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

WBT Power Supply compass safe distance

- **Make and model:** WBT Power supply
- **Standard compass:** 30 cm

Related topics

[Compass safe distance, page 309](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

LBG408A-R2 Ethernet switch compass safe distance

The technical specifications are those valid for the Ethernet switch that was delivered from Kongsberg Maritime as a part of the EK80 delivery. For specifications related to a locally purchased Ethernet switch, refer to the documentation provided with the unit.

- **Manufacturer:** Black Box
- **Manufacturer's website:** <http://www.blackbox.co.uk>
- **Make and model:** Black Box LBG408A-R2
- **Standard compass:** Not specified

For additional details, refer to the technical specifications provided by the manufacturer.

Note

This information was copied from the manufacturer's documentation. To ensure that your information is correct, always consult the manufacturer's own documents.

Related topics

[Compass safe distance, page 309](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

WBT Cabinet compass safe distance

- **Make and model:** Simrad WBT Cabinet
- **Standard compass:** Not applicable.

Related topics

[Compass safe distance, page 309](#)
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Minimum computer requirements

Unless specifically ordered from Kongsberg Maritime, the EK80 system is not provided with a computer. A suitable computer must be purchased locally.

If you purchase a computer locally, make sure that the chosen model meets the functional and technical requirements.

It is important that the chosen computer model is relatively new with sufficient processing power, a high performance graphics adapter, and a high speed Ethernet adapter. The computer must be able to facilitate the various interface requirements made by the EK80 system, and you may need to add extra Ethernet and/or serial adapters.

Note

The computer design and construction must allow for maritime use. Easy access to connectors, parts and cables must be provided. Make sure that the installation method allows for the physical vibration, movements and forces normally experienced on a vessel.

A laptop computer may be used as long as it meets the functional and technical requirements.

The minimum technical requirements are:

- **Micropocessor:** Intel I7 (or better)

An equivalent microprocessor type from another manufacturer can also be used.

- **Memory**4 GB

- **Hard disk**

If you wish to record large amounts of data, make sure that you have enough space on your hard disk. Unless your computer is equipped with a very large disk, we recommend that you save the data to an external storage device.

- **Graphics adapter**

– Minimum resolution (pixels)1280 x 1024

– Recommended resolution (pixels)1920 x 1200

The graphic adapter must support DirectX9.0c, and must be compatible with Direct3d and OpenGL. A large number of commercial graphic adapters are available, and we have not tested all of them. Even adapters that meet the minimum specifications may fail with the EK80 software. We welcome any feedback with comments or experiences with graphic adapters.

- **Serial adapters**

The number of serial lines depends on your interface requirements.

If you have connected a USB-to-serial adapter to the computer, do not remove it while the EK80 system is running. Do not move the adapter to a different USB socket on the computer.

- **Operating system**

We recommend you to install all Microsoft's latest Windows 10 updates, before installing EK80.

The EK80 software has been designed for Windows 10. Operating systems older than Windows 10 are not supported.

- **Ethernet adapter**

- Type: Intel 82571 (or better)
- Minimum bandwidth 1 Gb/s

To communicate with the transceiver, a high quality Ethernet adapter is required. If you wish to connect the computer to the ship's network, you need two Ethernet adapters.

The Ethernet adapter communicating with the transceiver must offer a *Receive Buffers* function. This parameter must be set to its maximum value if more than one transceiver is used.

Related topics

[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Minimum display requirements

Unless specifically ordered, the EK80 system is not provided with a display. The display must then be purchased locally.

You can use more than one display on your Processor Unit depending on personal and/or operational preferences.

Note

Make sure that the chosen display meets the requirements for the EK80 system. The design and construction must allow for marine use, and the display must be able to withstand the movements and vibrations normally experienced on a vessel. Verify that you have easy access to cables and connectors, and that the display can be installed in a safe and secure way.

The minimum technical requirements for the display are:

- **Resolution:**
 - **Minimum:** 1280 x 1024 pixels
 - **Recommended:** 1920 x 1200 pixels (or better)
- **Video interface:** The video interface must match the output format(s) provided by the computer.

The computer may offer video output on several formats. Investigate your options before you purchase a display.

- **Physical screen size:** The screen size depends on personal and/or operational preferences.

The EK80 software supports 16:9 displays.

Tip _____

If you use the EK80 system with many transceivers, you may find it useful with a large high resolution display.

Related topics

[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Drawing file

Topics

- [About the drawings in the drawing file, page 315](#)
- [388697 Wide Band Transceiver \(WBT\) outline dimensions, page 316](#)
- [385609 Processor Unit outline dimensions Enix, page 318](#)
- [400930 WBT Cabinet outline dimensions, page 322](#)
- [201575 Transducer connector assembly and wiring, page 326](#)

About the drawings in the drawing file

Relevant drawings related to the installation and/or maintenance of the EK80 system are provided for information purposes only.

Note

These drawings are provided only for information and planning purposes. Information may be omitted. Observe the source drawings for additional details.

The drawings are not to scale. Unless otherwise specified, all measurements are in millimetres. The original installation drawings are available in PDF and/or AutoCad's DWG format. The original drawing can be downloaded from our website.

- www.kongsberg.com/simrad

Some drawings and documents are not available from our website. These can be downloaded from the *Simrad Dealer Club*.

- www.kongsberg.com/sdc

The installation shipyard must provide all necessary design and installation drawings, as well as the relevant work standards and mounting procedures.

If required, all documents provided by the shipyard for the physical installation of the EK80 system must be approved by the vessel's national registry and corresponding maritime authority and/or classification society. Such approval must be obtained before the installation can begin. The shipowner and shipyard doing the installation are responsible for obtaining and paying for such approval.

Related topics

[Drawing file, page 314](#)

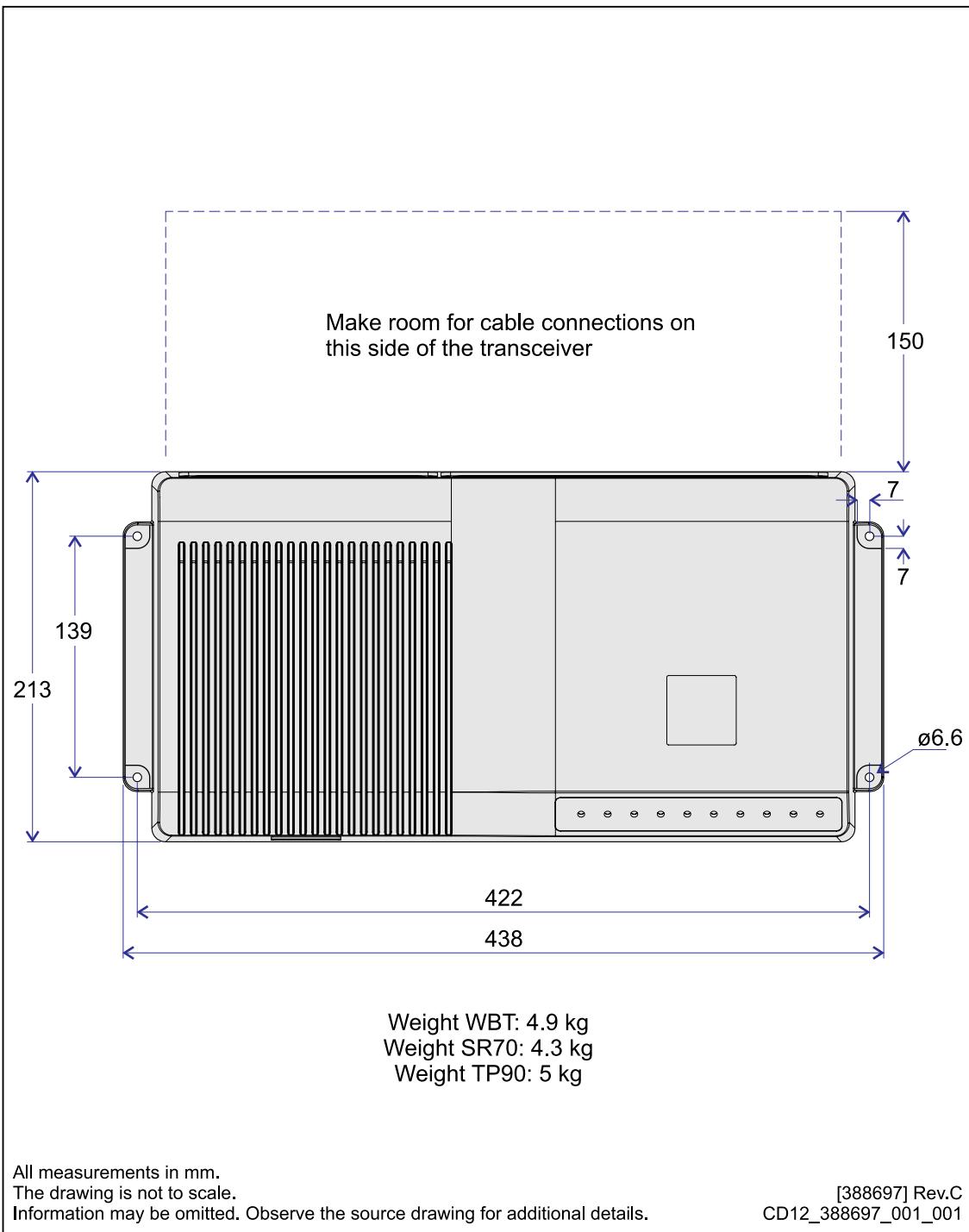
[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

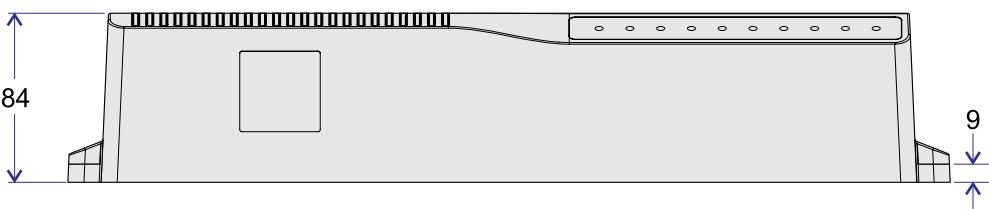
[Installing the EK80 system hardware units, page 72](#)

[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

388697 Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) outline dimensions

Download the source drawing from our website: <https://www.kongsberg.com/ek80>.





All measurements in mm.
The drawing is not to scale.
Information may be omitted. Observe the source drawing for additional details.

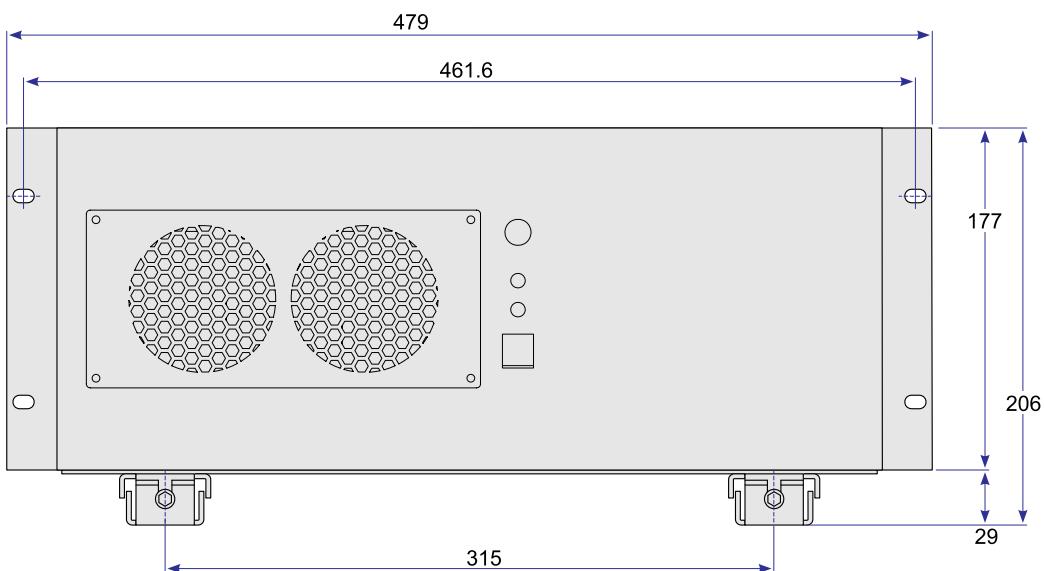
[388697] Rev.C
CD12_388697_001_002

Related topics

- [Drawing file, page 314](#)
- [Simrad EK80, page 13](#)
- [Installing the EK80 system hardware units, page 72](#)
- [Technical specifications, page 286](#)

385609 Processor Unit outline dimensions Enix

Download the source drawing from our website: <https://www.kongsberg.com/ek80>.

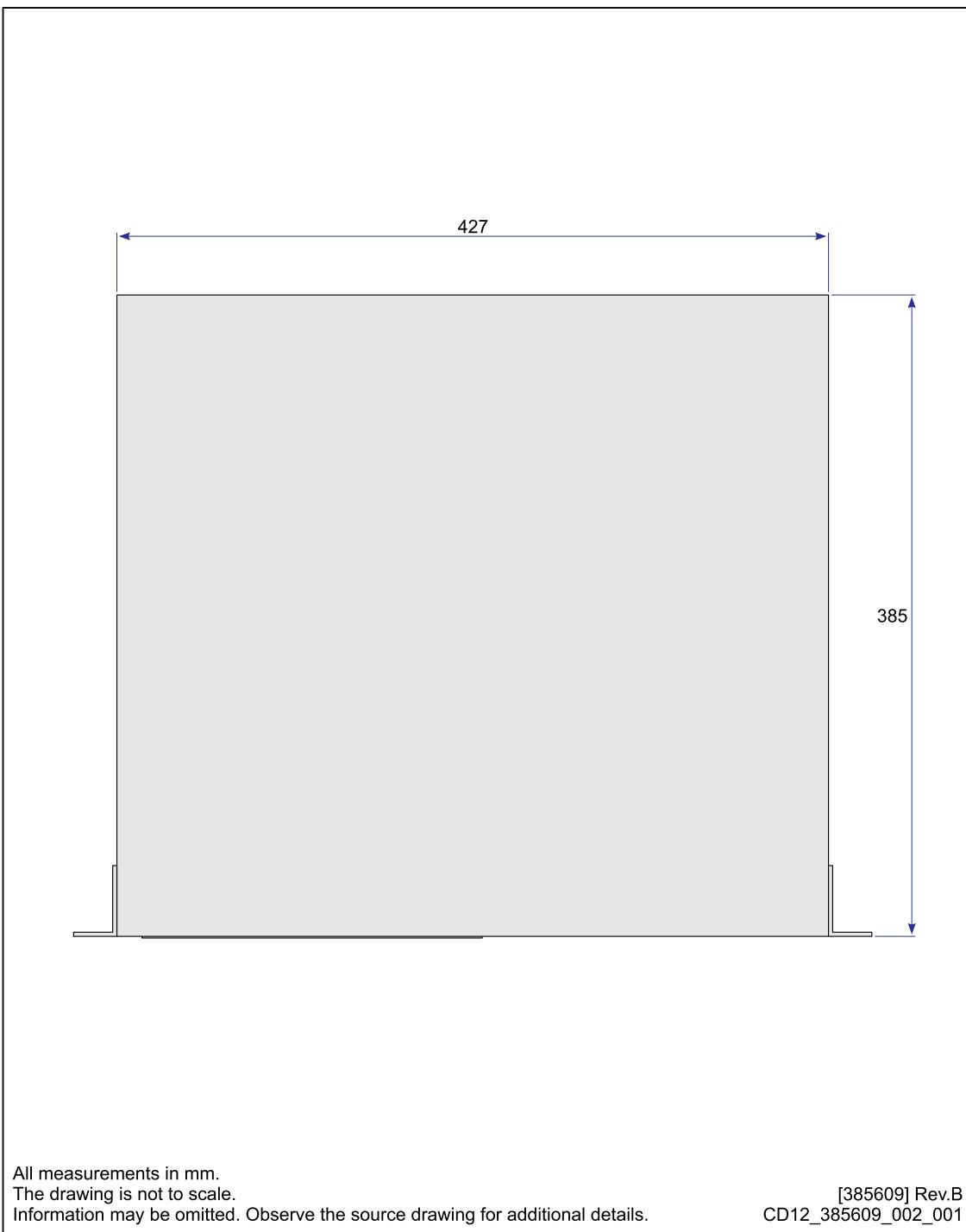


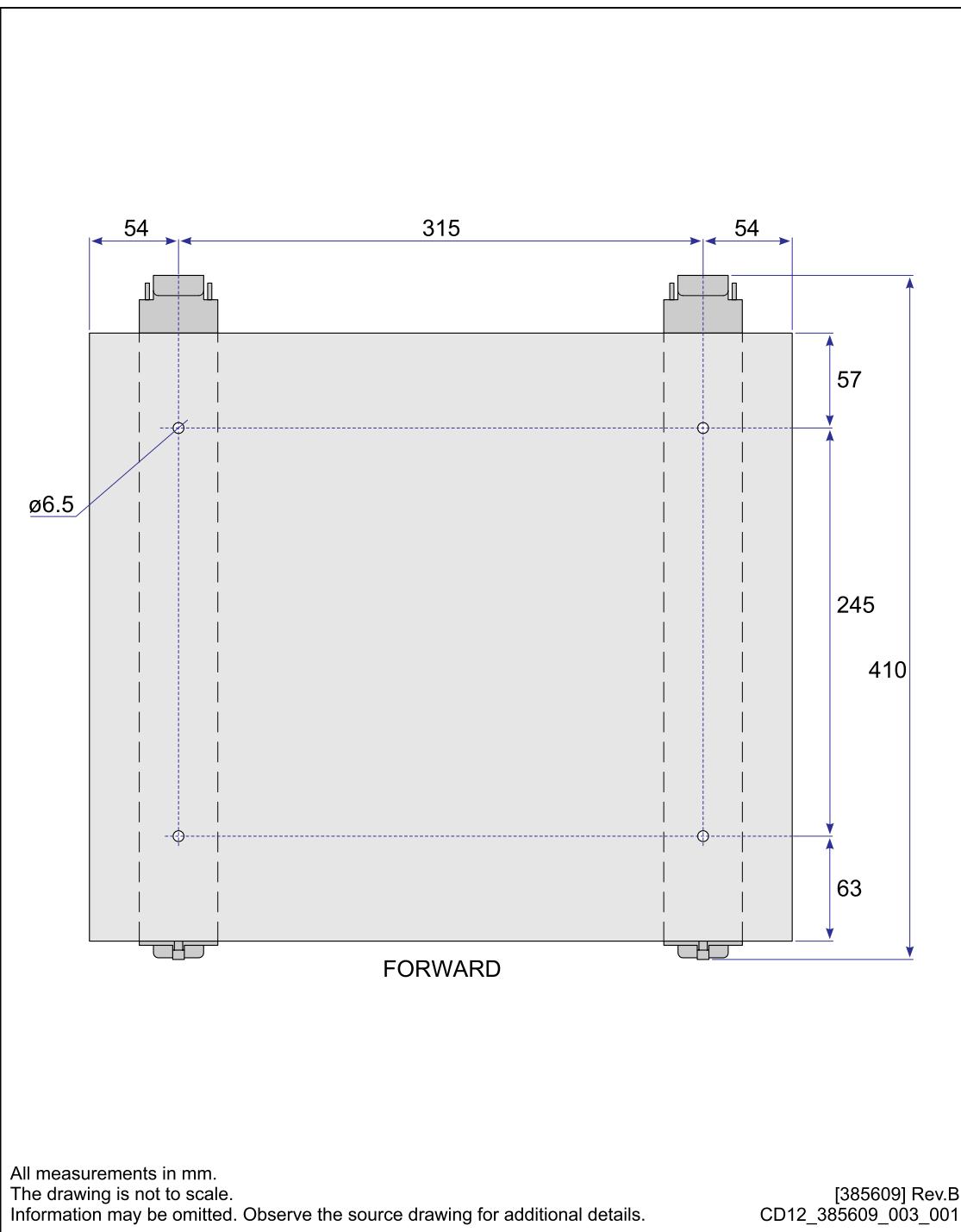
All measurements in mm.

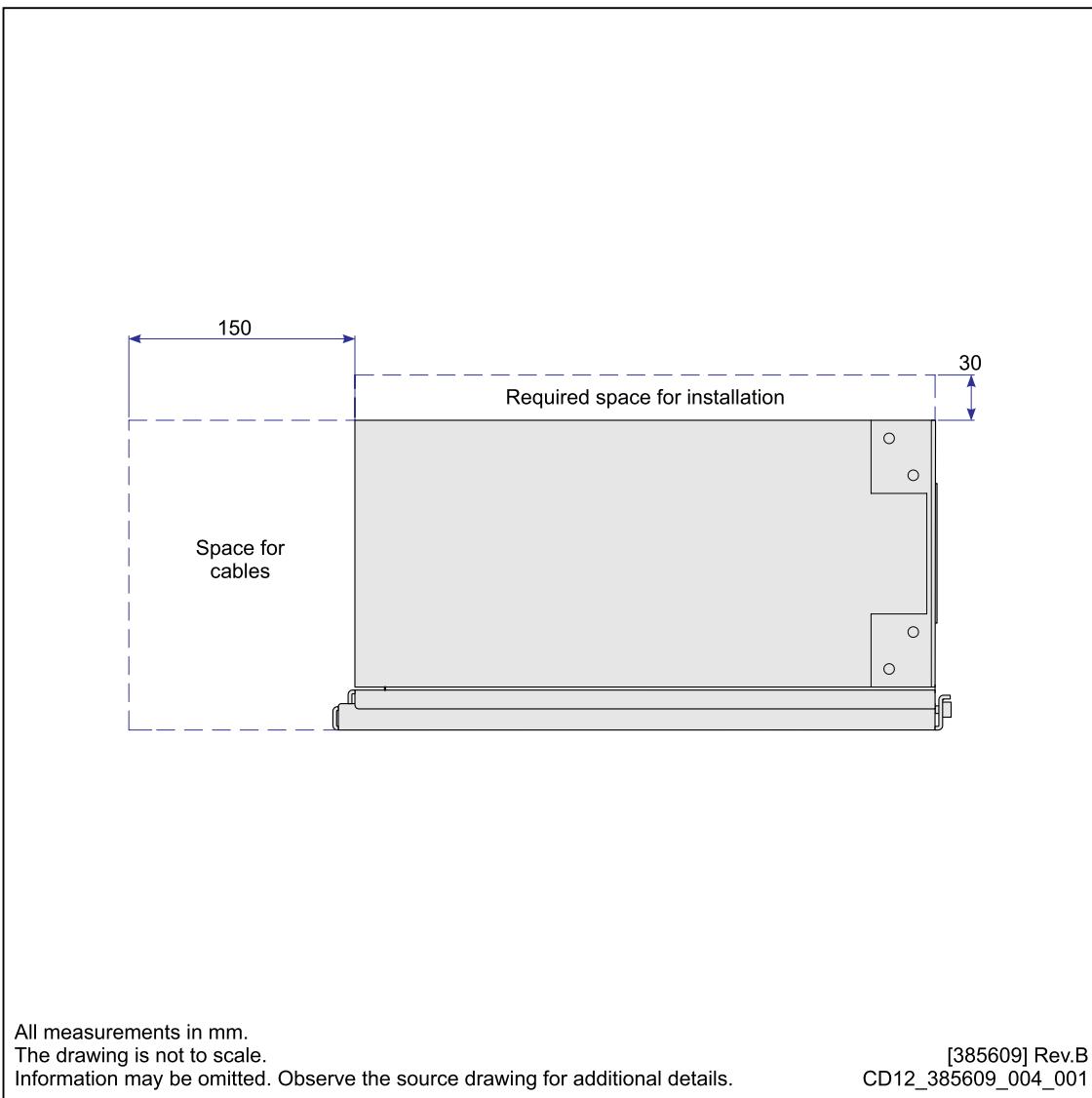
The drawing is not to scale.

Information may be omitted. Observe the source drawing for additional details.

[385609] Rev.B
CD12_385609_001_001







Related topics

[Drawing file, page 314](#)

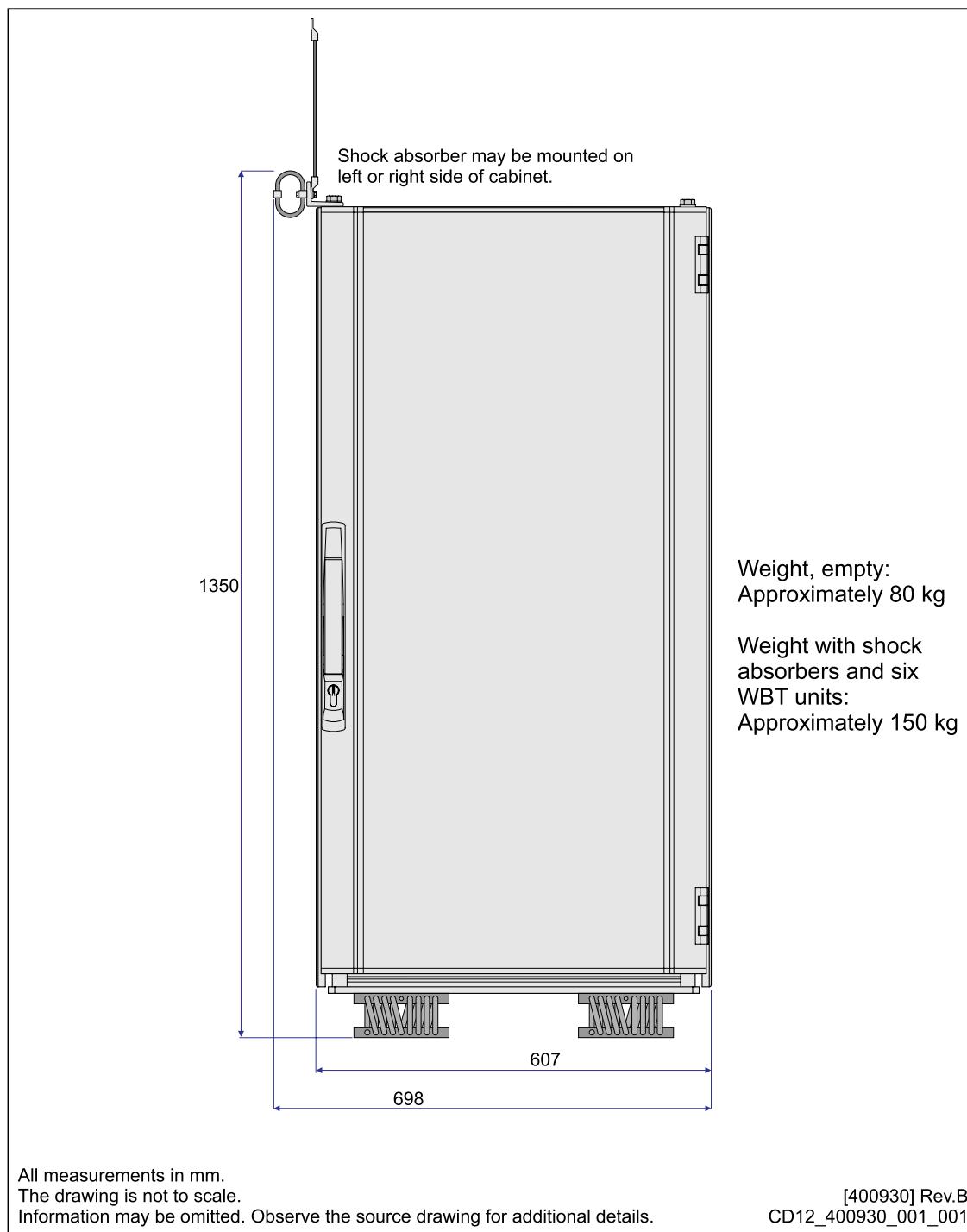
[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

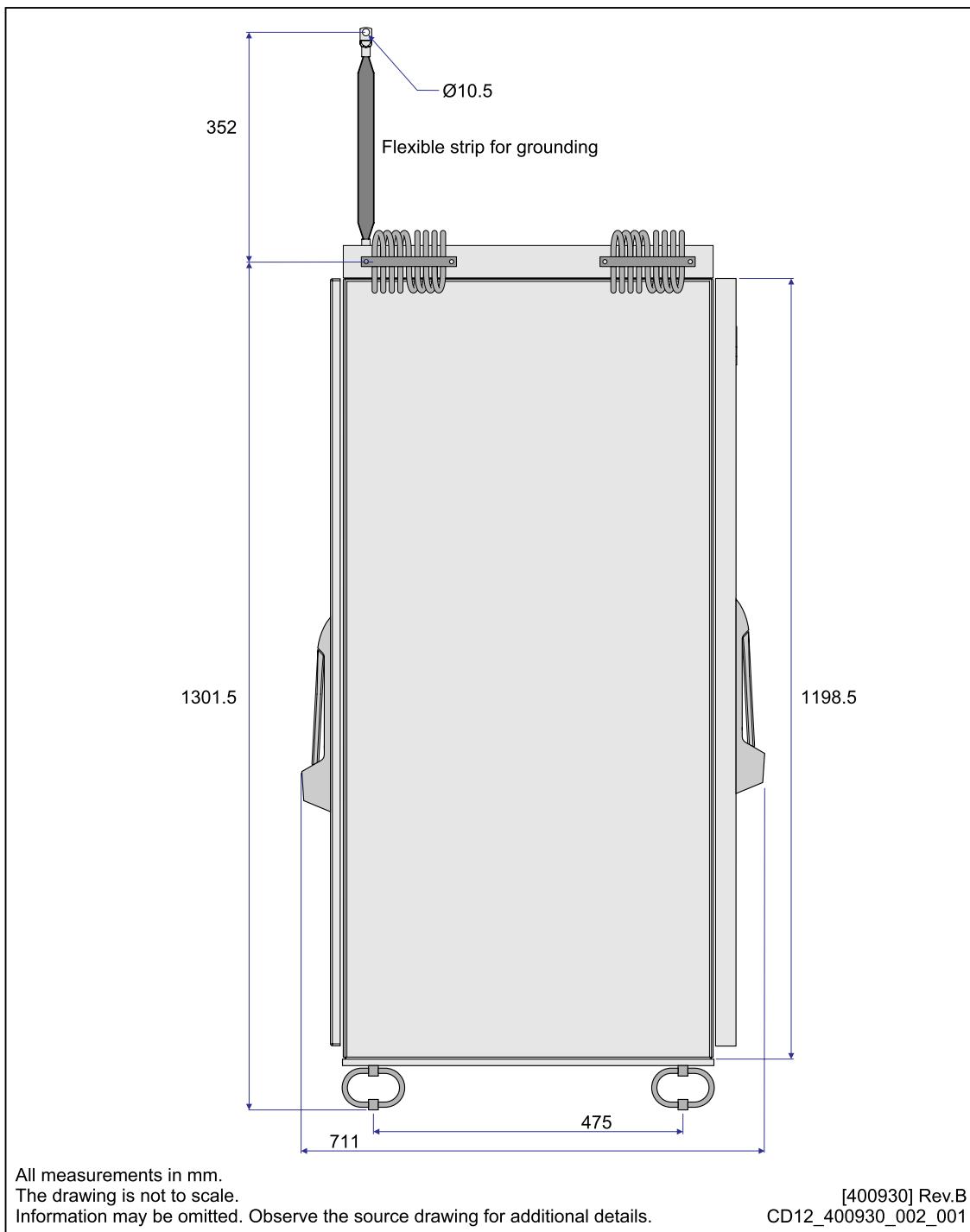
[Installing the EK80 system hardware units, page 72](#)

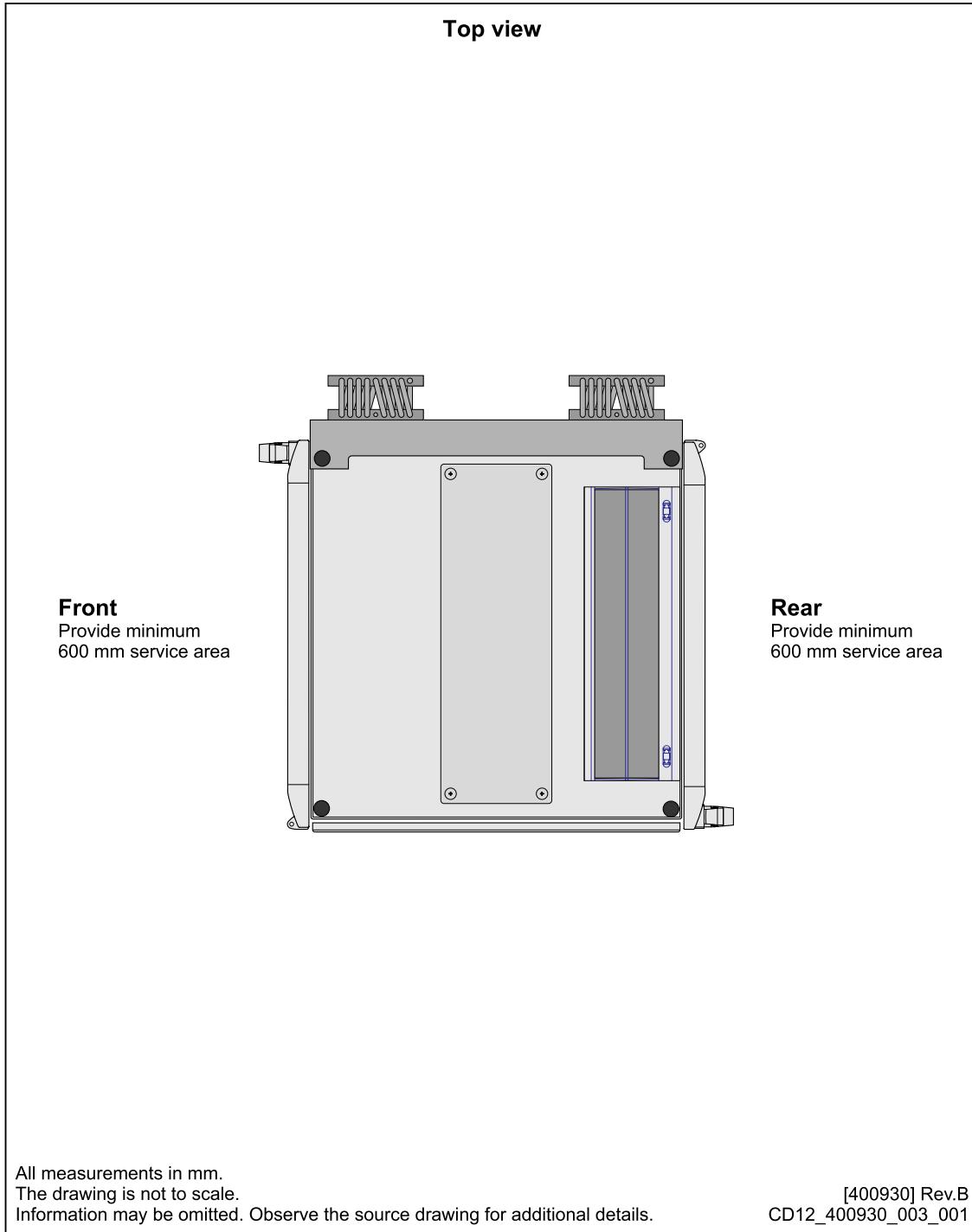
[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

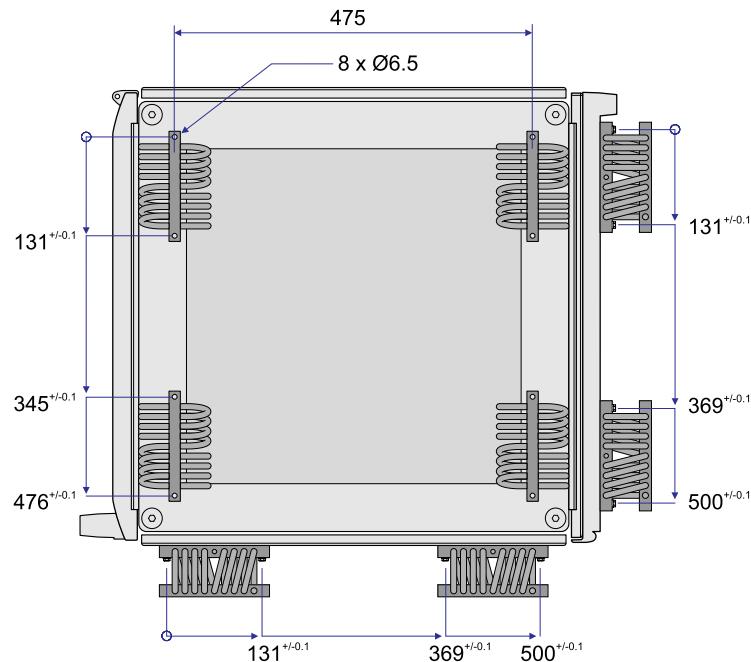
400930 WBT Cabinet outline dimensions

Download the source drawing from the product pages: www.kongsberg.com/simrad.







Bottom view

All measurements in mm.

The drawing is not to scale.

Information may be omitted. Observe the source drawing for additional details.

[400930] Rev.B
CD12_400930_004_001

Related topics

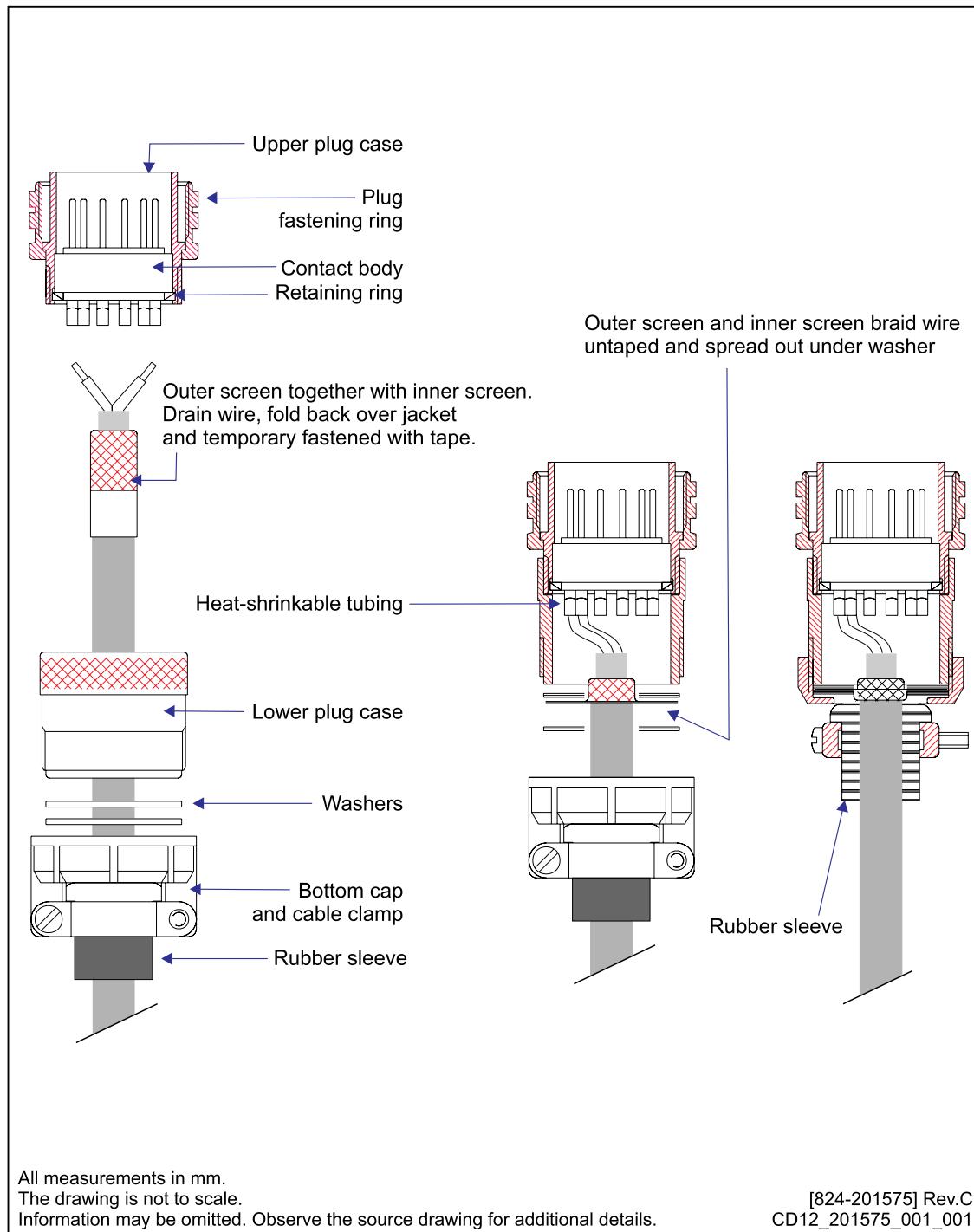
[Drawing file, page 314](#)

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

[Installing the EK80 system hardware units, page 72](#)

[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

201575 Transducer connector assembly and wiring



Related topics

[Drawing file, page 314](#)

[Simrad EK80, page 13](#)

[Installing the EK80 system hardware units, page 72](#)

[Technical specifications, page 286](#)

Equipment handling

Observe these basic rules for transportation, storage and handling of units. In this context, a *unit* may be any large or small part of the system. It can be supplied as part of the initial delivery, or as a spare part. The phrase *box* is used to describe all kinds of cases, wooden or cardboard boxes etc used to hold the *unit*.

Topics

- [Transporting Kongsberg Maritime equipment, page 329](#)
- [Lifting units and transportation boxes, page 330](#)
- [Inspection of units and transportation boxes after arrival, page 331](#)
- [Specifications for storage prior to installation or use, page 332](#)
- [Unpacking instructions, page 333](#)
- [Specifications for storage after unpacking, page 338](#)

Transporting Kongsberg Maritime equipment

Unless otherwise stated in the accompanying documentation, electronic, electromechanical and mechanical units supplied by Kongsberg Maritime can be only transported using methods approved for delicate and fragile equipment.

Prerequisites

Transportation methods approved for delicate equipment includes transportation by road, rail, air or sea.

Context

The units are to be transported in accordance with general or specific instructions for the appropriate unit(s), using pallets, transport cases, wooden boxes, or carton boxes as appropriate.

Observe the packing instructions.

Note

Special local restrictions concerning air transportation may be applied to units containing certain types of batteries. These units must be checked properly, and the regulations must be investigated by the packer/shipper before the unit is dispatched.

Procedure

- 1 Ensure that all local transportation is done according to the same specifications as for the initial delivery.
- 2 Make sure that the box containing the unit is kept dry at all times, and sheltered from the weather.

It must not be subjected to shocks, excessive vibration or other rough handling. The box will normally be marked with text or symbols indicating which way it is to be placed. Follow the instructions provided, and make sure that the box is always placed with its “top” facing upwards.

- 3 Make sure that the box is not used for any purpose for which it was not intended (step, table, etc.).

In the absence of other information, no other boxes must be stacked on top of it.

- 4 Handle all boxes and units with care.

Note

Due to the nature of Kongsberg Maritime's products, and the extensive use of delicate electronic parts, all units and boxes must be regarded and handled as fragile equipment.

Lifting units and transportation boxes

Some of the boxes used to hold equipment units may be heavy. Use caution when lifting.

Prerequisites

Units and boxes may be heavy. Make sure that you have the necessary equipment required for lifting heavy items. Persons using the lifting equipment must be skilled and have the relevant certificate(s).

Context

A heavy box will normally be marked with its weight. The weights of other boxes in the shipment will normally be entered on the packing list(s).

Heavy units may be equipped with dedicated lifting lugs for transportation by crane within the workshop or installation area.

Note

Observe the local rules and regulations related to the use of lifting equipment.

Procedure

- 1 Check the weight of the box or unit before you attempt to lift it.
- 2 Make sure that you have the relevant lifting apparatus required, and that this equipment is approved and certified for the load.
- 3 If you need to use a crane:
 - a Check the applicable weight certificate for the crane.
 - b Check the security of the lifting lugs.
 - c If the unit to be lifted is provided with dedicated lifting lugs, make sure that all available lugs are used.
 - d Make sure that the unit remains under full control during the lifting operation.
This is important to avoid damage to the unit, equipment or personnel.
- 4 If you need to use a forklift truck:
 - a Check the applicable weight certificate for the truck.
 - b Check the limitations for lifting height and angles.
 - c Pay special attention to the position of the unit's centre of gravity.
 - d Make sure that the unit is properly secured to the truck during the lifting and transportation operations.

- 5 Handle all units and boxes with care.

Note _____

Due to the nature of Kongsberg Maritime's products, and the extensive use of delicate electronic parts, all units and boxes must be regarded and handled as fragile equipment.

Inspection of units and transportation boxes after arrival

A visual inspection must be done immediately after the box(es) have arrived at their destination.

Prerequisites

If you suspect that the equipment has been damaged during the transport, request that a representative of the carrier is present during the inspection.

Procedure

- 1 Check all boxes (wooden or cardboard boxes, plastic bags and/or pallets) for physical damage.
Look for signs of dropping, immersion in water or other mishandling.
- 2 If external damage is detected, open the box to check its contents.
Request that a representative of the carrier to be present while the box is opened, so any transportation damage can be identified and documented.
- 3 If a unit has been damaged, prepare an inspection report stating the condition of the unit and actions taken.
Describe the damage, and collect photographic evidence if possible. Return the inspection report to Kongsberg Maritime as soon as possible.
- 4 If units are not damaged, check the humidity absorbing material.
If required, dry or replace the bags, then re-pack the unit(s) according to the packing instructions.

Specifications for storage prior to installation or use

When a system, a unit or a spare part has been delivered to the customer, it may be subject to long time storage prior to installation and use.

General specifications

During this storage period, certain specifications must be met. The equipment must be preserved and stored in such a way that it does not constitute any danger to health, environment or personal injury.

- 1 The equipment must be stored in its original transportation box.
- 2 Ensure that the units are clearly separated in the shelves and that each unit is easily identifiable.
- 3 The box must not be used for any purpose for which it was not intended (work platform, steps, table etc.).
- 4 Boxes must not be placed on top of each other, unless specific markings permit this.
- 5 Boxes must not be placed directly on a dirt floor.
- 6 Do not open a box for inspection unless special circumstances permit so.
“Special circumstances” may be suspected damage to the box and its content, or inspections by civil authorities.
 - a If a unit is damaged, prepare an inspection report stating the condition of the unit and the actions taken. Describe the damage and collect photographic evidence if possible. Re-preserve the equipment.
 - b If the unit is not damaged, check the humidity absorbing material. If required, dry or replace the bags, then re-pack the unit according to the packing instructions.
- 7 If a box has been opened, make sure that it is closed and sealed after the inspection. Use the original packing material as far as possible.
- 8 The storage room/area must be dry with a non-condensing atmosphere. It must be free from corrosive agents.
- 9 The storage room/area's mean temperature must not be lower than -10° C, and not warmer than +50° C. If other limitations apply, the crates will be marked accordingly.
- 10 Boxes must not be exposed to moisture from fluid leakages.
- 11 Boxes must not be exposed to direct sunlight or excessive warmth from heaters.
- 12 Boxes must not be subjected to excessive shock and vibration.
- 13 If the unit contained in a box holds normal batteries, these may have been disconnected/isolated before the unit was packed. These must only be reconnected before the installation starts. Units containing batteries are marked.

Caution _____

Units containing lithium or alkaline batteries must be handled separately and with care. Such units are marked accordingly. Do not attempt to recharge such batteries, open them, or dispose of them by incineration.

Refer to the applicable product data sheets or battery handling procedures for further details.

Temperature protection

Any units that require protection against extreme temperatures are identified as such in the applicable documentation. The box used to transport and store such units are clearly marked, for example:

Must not be transported or stored in temperatures below -5 °C.

Other temperature limits may be used if applicable.

If a unit needs temperature protection, the box to be used for storage and transportation must be lined on all walls, base and lid, using minimum 5 cm thick polyurethane or polystyrene foam.

Most system units can normally be stored in temperatures between -30° C and +70° C. Refer to the relevant technical specifications for details.

Note _____

Unless otherwise specified, transducers and hydrophones must not be stored in temperatures below -10°C and above +50°C.

Unpacking instructions

Prior to installation or use, electronic, electromechanical and mechanical units must be unpacked from their transport boxes. It is important that this unpacking is done according to the relevant instructions, and without inflicting damage to the equipment.

Topics

[Unpacking standard parts and units, page 334](#)

[Unpacking mechanical units, page 335](#)

[Unpacking electronic and electromechanical units, page 336](#)

[Unpacking transducers, page 337](#)

Unpacking standard parts and units

Prior to installation or use, parts and units must be inspected, and then unpacked from their transport boxes. It is important that this unpacking is done without inflicting damage to the equipment.

Context

This procedure provides the basic tasks of unpacking units (main unit, spare parts etc) from boxes shipped from Kongsberg Maritime.

Note

If the unit in question is not unpacked for immediate use, you may consider storing it unopened in its original box. However, it may be useful to open the box to check its contents for damage and retrieve any accompanying documentation.

Do not use a knife to open cardboard boxes - the contents may be located close to the surface, and can then be damaged by the blade.

Procedure

- 1 Check the carton before opening it to ensure it shows no signs of dropping, immersion in water or other mishandling.
 - 1 If external damage is detected, open the box to check its contents.
 - 2 Request that a representative of the carrier to be present while the box is opened, so any transportation damage can be identified and documented.
 - 3 If a unit has been damaged, prepare an inspection report stating the condition of the unit and actions taken.
Describe the damage, and collect photographic evidence if possible. Return the inspection report to Kongsberg Maritime as soon as possible.
- 2 Place the box on a stable work bench or on the floor with the top of the box facing upwards.
- 3 In the absence of other instructions, always open the top of the carton first.
The contents of the box will normally have been lowered into the carton from above, so this will usually be the easiest route to follow. Be careful when you open the box, and make sure that the contents are not damaged. Do not use a knife to open cardboard boxes.
- 4 If the box has been closed using staples, remove the staples from the carton as you open it.
This will reduce the possibilities of scratch injury to yourself and damage to the contents.
- 5 If a wooden box has been closed using screws, always remove them using a screwdriver.
Do not attempt to force the lid open with a crowbar or similar tool.

- 6 Once the carton is open, carefully remove all loose packing and insulation material.
- 7 Check for user manuals and other documents that may have been added to the carton during packing.
- 8 Check also for special tools, door keys etc.

Unpacking mechanical units

Prior to installation or use, mechanical units must be unpacked from their transport boxes. It is important that this unpacking is done without inflicting damage to the equipment.

Prerequisites

Observe the procedure for unpacking of standard parts and units.

Context

Mechanical and electromechanical units may be heavy.

A transducer must always be handled as a delicate instrument. Incorrect actions may damage the transducer beyond repair.

Observe these transducer handling rules:

- **Do not** activate the transducer when it is out of the water.
- **Do not** lift the transducer by the cable.
- **Do not** step on the transducer cable.
- **Do not** handle the transducer roughly. Avoid impacts.
- **Do not** expose the transducer to direct sunlight or excessive heat.
- **Do not** use high-pressure water, sandblasting, metal tools or strong solvents to clean the transducer face.

Procedure

- 1 Obtain the necessary lifting equipment, and make sure that the equipment is certified for the weight.
- 2 Lift the unit out of the transportation box.
- 3 Place it in a stable position on the floor/work bench.
- 4 Inspect the unit for visual damage.
- 5 Remove any packing material that may be inside the unit.
- 6 Collect and keep the relevant user manuals and/or documents provided with the unit.

Unpacking electronic and electromechanical units

Prior to installation or use, electronic and electromechanical units must be unpacked from their transport boxes. It is important that unpacking is done without inflicting damage to the equipment.

Context

Electronic and electromechanical units are normally wrapped in clear antistatic plastic bags.

Do not break the seal to open a printed circuit board, an electronic module or a unit before it shall be used. If the unit is returned with a broken seal we will assume that it has been used. You will then be billed accordingly.

Note

Beware of Electrostatic Discharge (ESD)!

When you handle electronic circuit boards and modules, you must beware of the dangers of electrostatic discharge (ESD), both to yourself and to the equipment. In order to ensure safe transport and storage, circuit boards and other electronic units will always be wrapped in a clear plastic protective bag, and the bag will be sealed.

Procedure

- 1 Lift the unit, in its protective bag, out of the transport box.

Note

You must never use the cables to lift or carry a unit.

- 2 Place it in a stable position on the floor or on the workbench.
- 3 Inspect the unit for damage.
 - a If a unit has been damaged, prepare an inspection report stating the condition of the unit and actions taken.
 - b Describe the damage, and collect photographic evidence if possible. Return the inspection report to Kongsberg Maritime as soon as possible.
- 4 Assuming all is well, open the bag and remove the unit.
- 5 Take out and keep the documentation.

You will need the documentation if the item shall be returned to us.
- 6 If applicable, open the unit and check inside.
- 7 Remove any packing and desiccant material that may be found inside the shipping container or bag.
- 8 Collect and keep the relevant user manuals and/or installation documents provided with the unit.

Unpacking transducers

Prior to installation or use, transducers, sonar heads and hydrophones must be unpacked from their transport boxes. It is important that this unpacking is done without inflicting damage to the equipment.

Prerequisites

Observe the procedure for unpacking of standard parts and units.

Context

Transducers may be supplied mounted to a hull unit (if any), or packed separately. Sonar heads and hydrophones are normally packed and shipped in separate boxes. Boxes are identified by the order number and the serial number of the unit inside.

Note

Once a transducer, sonar head or hydrophone is unpacked, make sure that the body and the cabling are not exposed to any mechanical stress. Protect the transducer face with a padded cover plate to prevent damage.

Transducers may be heavy.

A transducer must always be handled as a delicate instrument. Incorrect actions may damage the transducer beyond repair.

Observe these transducer handling rules:

- **Do not** activate the transducer when it is out of the water.
- **Do not** lift the transducer by the cable.
- **Do not** step on the transducer cable.
- **Do not** handle the transducer roughly. Avoid impacts.
- **Do not** expose the transducer to direct sunlight or excessive heat.
- **Do not** use high-pressure water, sandblasting, metal tools or strong solvents to clean the transducer face.

Procedure

- 1 Obtain the necessary lifting equipment, and make sure that the equipment is certified for the weight.
- 2 Lift the transducer, sonar head or hydrophone out of the transportation box.
- 3 Place it in a stable position on the floor/work bench.
- 4 Inspect the unit for visual damage.
- 5 Make sure that the relevant protection is kept in place until the final stages of the installation.
- 6 Collect and keep the relevant user manuals and/or documents provided with the unit.

7 Observe the handling rules for transducers.

Specifications for storage after unpacking

The unit must whenever possible be stored in its original transportation crate until ready for installation.

General specifications

During storage, each box must not be used for any purpose for which it was not intended (work platform, table, steps etc.).

Once unpacked, all equipment must be kept in a dry, non-condensing atmosphere, free from corrosive agents and isolated from sources of vibration.

Note

Do not break the seal to open a circuit board package before the board is to be used. If the board package is returned to Kongsberg Maritime with the seal broken, we will assume that the unit has been used and you will be billed accordingly.

Each unit must be installed in its intended operating position as soon as possible after unpacking. If the unit contains normal batteries, these may have been disconnected/isolated before the unit was packed. These must then be reconnected during the installation procedure. Units containing batteries are marked.

Caution

Units containing lithium or alkaline batteries must be handled separately and with care. Such units are marked accordingly. Do not attempt to recharge such batteries, open them, or dispose of them by incineration.

Refer to the applicable product data sheets or battery handling procedures for further details.

Temperature protection

Any units that requires protection against extreme temperatures are identified as such in the applicable documentation. The box used to transport and store such units are clearly marked, for example:

Must not be transported or stored in temperatures below -5 °C.

Other temperature limits may be used if applicable.

If a unit needs temperature protection, the box to be used for storage and transportation must be lined on all walls, base and lid, using minimum 5 cm thick polyurethane or polystyrene foam.

Most system units can normally be stored in temperatures between -30° C and +70° C. Refer to the relevant technical specifications for details.

Note _____

Unless otherwise specified, transducers and hydrophones must not be stored in temperatures below -10°C and above +50°C.

Index

1000Base-T	
Ethernet cable	154
19" Transceiver Cabinet	
mounting	86
mounting the drawers	89
A	
about	
acoustic noise.....	62
ambient noise.....	66
bow thruster noise	59
Burton subsea connectors.....	169
cable conduit (for transducer cables).....	113
cable glands.....	177
cavitation.....	56, 59, 65
comments	12
constructive criticism.....	12
document downloads	12
drawings.....	315
EC150-3C.....	24
electrical noise	64, 67
feedback.....	12
fishing gear noise	67
flow noise	56, 65
installation drawings	12
installation instructions	11
interference	66
machinery noise.....	64
online information	12
propellers.....	59, 64
rattle noise	66
registered trademarks.....	12
self noise	64
serial lines.....	171
steel conduit (for transducer cables).....	113
suggestions	12
synchronization	134
target audience	11
this publication	11
transducer	24
About the drawings in the drawing file	315
AC mains	
tolerances	40
ac mains power	
requirements	300
AC mains power	
making sure that operating power is correct	195
ac power	
cable	144
access requirements	
sonar room	52
accuracy	
dimensional survey	188
accuracy requirements	
dimensional survey measurements of	
compass.....	188
dimensional survey measurements of course	
gyro.....	188
dimensional survey measurements of global	
positioning system	188
dimensional survey measurements of heading	
sensor	188
dimensional survey measurements of motion	
reference unit	188
dimensional survey measurements of	
transducer.....	188
acoustic noise.....	67
about	62
ambient noise	66
bow thrusters	59
cavitation.....	56, 59, 65
contributing factors	62
electrical noise	64, 67
fishing gear noise	67
flow boundary layer	58
flow noise	56, 65
installation requirements	41
interference	66
laminar flow	58
machinery noise	64
propellers.....	59, 64
rattle noise	66
self noise	64
sources.....	62
turbulent flow.....	58
ADCP-NetCDF	
file format	299
additional optional items	
not provided with the delivery	32
additional required items	
not provided with the delivery	28
adjusting	
the screen resolution.....	219
air conditioning requirements	
sonar room	53
alternative origin	
vessel coordinate system	71, 190
ambient noise	66
AML	
datagram format	295
interface	251
annotation	
datagram format	288
annotation data	
datagram formats	288
annotations	
importing using a communication port	242
Annotations page	
importing annotations on a communication	
port	242
approval	
installation drawings	12, 49, 315
installation requirements	42
assembly	
transducer connector	326
Atlas Depth	
datagram format	298

ATS	
datagram format.....	288
auxiliary machinery	
acoustic noise.....	64
B	
basic cable requirements.....	174
basic items	
provided with the delivery.....	26
bilge pump requirement	
sonar room.....	55
BOT	
file format.....	299
bow thrusters	
acoustic noise.....	59
transducer installation.....	59
bridge	
cable plan.....	97
brief description	
transducer.....	24
bulkhead	
cable glands.....	177
Burton subsea connectors	
description.....	169
C	
cabinet	
WBT Cabinet outline dimensions	322
cable	
Connecting the transducer cable to the	
transceiver.....	161, 163, 166
splicing.....	115
cable conduit	
minimum dimensions	113
transducer cables.....	113
cable connection	
single beam low power transducer	161
cable connections	
requirements.....	176
cable drawing	
ac power cable.....	144
dc power cable	155
Ethernet cable RJ45	154
Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter	122
RS-232 serial line.....	147–148
RS-422 serial line.....	149
RS-485 serial line.....	151
serial line used for synchronisation.....	150
vessel ground.....	146
cable gland	
preparing cable for termination	178
cable glands	
about.....	177
procedures	177
cable grounding	
requirements.....	176
cable identification	
requirements.....	177
cable installation	
prerequisites	105
cable plan	
bridge.....	97
topside.....	97, 100
transceiver	98–100
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).....	98–100
cable requirements	
cable	174
cable connections	176
cable terminations	176
cable trays.....	174
grounding	176
identification	177
physical protection.....	175
radio frequency interference.....	175
cable sealing	
multi-diameter.....	181
cable specifications	
RS-232	147–148
RS-422	149
serial line used for synchronization	150
cable terminations	
requirements.....	176
cable trays	
requirements.....	174
cables	
about cable glands	177
connection requirements	176
grounding requirements	176
identification requirements	177
installation requirements	41
list of system interconnection cables	102
preparing for termination	178
procedures for cable glands	177
protection	175
protection of transducer cables	113
requirements for cable trays	174
requirements for physical protection	175
requirements for radio frequency	
interference	175
securing and terminating	180
termination requirements	176
transducer cable in steel conduit	113
using multi-diameter cable sealing	181
CAT5	
Ethernet cable	154
CAT5E	
Ethernet cable	154
catch monitoring information	
datagram formats	295
catch sensor	
setting up the interface	244
cavitation	
acoustic noise.....	56, 59, 65
classification society	
approval	42
approval (installation drawings)	12, 49, 315
Clear To Send	
used in synchronization	150
Clear To Send (CTS)	
synchronization using Clear To Send (CTS)	
and Request To Send (RTS) signals	136
comments	
importing using a communication port	242
send us.....	12
commercial cables	
description	94
commercial computer	
installation	80

communication formats	
annotation data	288
catch monitoring information	295
depth information	290
distance information	289
drop keel information	289
GPS information	291
gyro information	292
heading information	292
motion information	294
palette control	294
position information	291
processed data to file	299
processed data to output	298
sound speed information	295
speed information	296
temperature information	296
trawl information	293
water level	297
communication port	
setting up the parameters	237
communication requirements	
sonar room	54
compass	
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey	
measurements	188
interface requirements	34
optional item	34
recommended item	34
scope of supply	34
compass deviation	
installation requirements	41
responsibility	41
compass safe distance	
display	309
Ethernet switch	310
power supply	310
technical specifications	309
WBT Cabinet	310
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)	310
Compass Safe Distance (CSD)	
computer	309
Processor Unit	309
transceiver	310
Transceiver Unit	310
computer	
adjusting the screen resolution	219
Compass Safe Distance (CSD)	309
connectors	110
environmental requirements	306
graphic adapter	120
installation	80, 82
introduction	21
minimum requirements	311
Moxa CP114EL-I Serial line adapter	152
outline dimensions	303, 318
overview	21
power requirements	300
purpose	21
required item	29
scope of supply	29
serial adapter	152
visual inspection	199
weight	303
conduit (steel)	
minimum dimensions	113
transducer cables	113
conduits	
cable requirements	174
configuring	
sensor interface	241
Connecting the transducer cable to the transceiver	161, 163, 166
connection	
Ethernet cable	154
RS-232 serial cable	147–148
RS-422 serial cable	149
RS-485 serial cable	151
serial line used for synchronisation	150
single beam low power transducer	161
connections	
ac power cable	144
cable requirements	176
dc power cable	155
Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter	122
Overland UPC-3005 Serial line splitter	128
Overland UPC-5000P Serial line splitter	132
vessel ground cable	146
connector	
serial adapter	152
connectors	
computer	110
Processor Unit	110
transceiver	112
constructive criticism	
send us	12
contributing factors	
acoustic noise	62
coordinate system	
alternative origin	71, 190
origin	70, 190
vessel	69, 189
course gyro	
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey	
measurements	188
interface requirements	34
optional item	34
recommended item	34
scope of supply	34
verifying the interface	270
CP1	
datagram format	298
CP114EL-I	
serial adapter	122
CSD	
computer	309
Processor Unit	309
transceiver	310
Transceiver Unit	310
CSD (compass safe distance)	
display	309
Ethernet switch	310
power supply	310
technical specifications	309
WBT Cabinet	310
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)	310
CTS	
synchronization using Clear To Send (CTS) and Request To Send (RTS) signals	136
CTS (Clear to Send)	

used in synchronization	150
CTS (Clear To Send)	
interface	158
synchronization	155, 158
CUR	
datagram format.....	296
D	
(D)GPS	
interface requirements.....	33
optional item.....	33
scope of supply.....	33
datagram format	
AML (sound speed)	295
annotation.....	288
Atlas Depth (depth information).....	298
ATS	288
CP1 (Current Profile).....	298
CUR (multi-layer water current data).....	296
DBS (depth from surface)	298
DBS (depth of the trawl sensor)	293
DBT (depth under transducer)	298
DDC (display dimming and control).....	294
DFT (Water Level)	297
DPT (depth under transducer, offset)	290, 298
EM Attitude 3000 (motion data).....	294
Furuno GPhve (heave information)	294
GGA (time, position and fix).....	291
GGK (global positioning system fixed data)	291
GLL (time, position and fix)	291
HDG (heading).....	292
HDM (heading)	292
HDT (true heading).....	292
Hemisphere GNSS GPHEV (heave information).....	294
HFB (trawl heights)	293
KM Binary (motion data).....	294
MTW (water temperature).....	296
OFS Drop keel	289
PSIMPD (catch sensor data)	295
PSIMPD1 (catch sensor data)	295
PSIMPF (catch sensor data)	295
PTNL GGK (time, position).....	291
RMC (time, date, position, course).....	291
Simrad PSIMDHB (biomass and bottom hardness).....	298
TDS (trawl door distance)	293
THS (true heading)	292
TPR (trawl bearing, depth and distance).....	293
TPT (trawl bearing, depth and distance).....	293
TSS1 (motion data)	294
VBW (vessel speed).....	296, 298
VHW (vessel heading and speed)	296, 298
VLW (travelled distance)	289
VTG (time, date, position and course)	291, 296, 298
ZDA (day, month, year and local time zone)	291
ZMQ (Beam velocity).....	298
datagram formats	
annotation data	288
catch monitoring information	295
depth information	290
distance information.....	289
drop keel information	289
gyro information	292
heading information	292
motion information	294
palette control	294
position information	291
processed data to file	299
processed data to output	298
sound speed information	295
speed information	296
temperature information	296
trawl information	293
water level	297
DBS	
datagram format.....	293, 298
DBT	
datagram format.....	298
dc power	
cable	155
DDC	
datagram format.....	294
decking	
sonar room requirement.....	55
depth information	
datagram formats	290
depth output	
Setting up depth output to an external system.....	252
Depth Output page	
Setting up depth output to an external system.....	252
description	
ambient noise	66
bow thruster noise	59
Burton subsea connectors	169
cable conduit (for transducer cables)	113
cavitation	56, 59, 65
display	20
EC150-3C	24
electrical noise	64, 67
fishing gear noise	67
flow noise	56, 65
interference	66
machinery noise	64
Moxa CP114EL-I Serial line adapter	152
origin in the vessel coordinate system	70, 190
Overland UPC-3005 Serial line splitter	126
Overland UPC-5000P Serial line splitter	130
propellers	59, 64
rattle noise	66
self noise	64
steel conduit (for transducer cables)	113
system	15
transceiver	22
Transceiver Unit	22
transducer	24
vessel coordinate system	69, 189
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)	22
DFT	
datagram format.....	297
diagram	
system	17
dimensional survey	
accuracy	188
accuracy requirements for compass	188

accuracy requirements for course gyro	188
accuracy requirements for global positioning system.....	188
accuracy requirements for heading sensor.....	188
accuracy requirements for motion reference unit	188
accuracy requirements for transducer.....	188
summary procedure.....	186
dimensions	
computer	303, 318
display	303
Ethernet switch.....	304
Øverland UPC-3005 Serial line splitter.....	129
Øverland UPC-5000P Serial line splitter.....	133
Processor Unit.....	303, 318
steel conduit	113
technical specifications.....	303
transceiver	304
WBT Cabinet.....	305, 322
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).....	304, 316
display	
compass safe distance	309
description	20
dimensions.....	303
environmental requirements.....	306
installation	79
introduction.....	20
minimum requirements	312
outline dimensions.....	303
overview	20
power requirements.....	300
purpose	20
visual inspection	197
weight	303
display adapter	
computer graphic adapter.....	120
Processor Unit graphic adapter	120
distance information	
datagram formats	289
docking	
installation requirements.....	42
documents	
download from website	12
download	
documents from website	12
www.simrad.com	12
downloading	
installation drawings	49
DPT	
datagram format.....	290, 298
drawing	
ac power cable.....	144
computer	318
dc power cable	155
display outline dimensions	303
Ethernet cable RJ45	154
Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter	122
Øverland UPC-3005 Serial line splitter.....	129
Øverland UPC-5000P Serial line splitter.....	133
Processor Unit.....	318
RS-232 serial line cable.....	147–148
RS-422 serial line cable.....	149
RS-485 serial line cable.....	151
serial line used for synchronisation.....	150
transducer connector	326
vessel ground.....	146
WBT Cabinet outline dimensions	322
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) outline dimensions	316
drawings	
about	315
approval	12, 49, 315
downloading	49
installation	12
responsibility	12, 49
Drop keel	
datagram format	289
drop keel information	
datagram formats	289
dry docking	
installation requirements	42
E	
EC150-3C	
description	24
EC150-3C Power Supply Unit	
visual inspection	204
EK80	
system diagram	17
electrical connections	
Øverland UPC-3005 Serial line splitter.....	128
Øverland UPC-5000P Serial line splitter	132
electrical installation requirements	
sonar room	54
electrical noise	
acoustic noise	64, 67
electromechanical unit	
unpacking	336
electronic unit	
unpacking	336
EM Attitude 3000	
datagram format.....	294
Enix	
installation	82
environmental	
requirements	306
environmental requirements	
computer	306
display	306
Ethernet switch	307
Processor Unit	306
sonar room	51
transceiver	307
Transceiver Unit	307
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).....	307
equipment handling	
inspection	331
lifting units and transportation boxes	330
storage after unpacking	338
storage prior to installation	332
transportation	329
unpacking	334
unpacking a hydrophone	337
unpacking a mechanical unit	335
unpacking a sonar head	337
unpacking a transducer	337
unpacking an electronic or electromechanical unit	336
visual inspection	331

Ethernet cable	scope of supply.....	33
specifications		
Ethernet interface	global positioning system (GPS)	
network adapter	setting up the interface	239
Ethernet port	verifying the interface	272
defining the communication port		
parameters.....		
Ethernet switch	GPHEV	
compass safe distance	datagram format.....	294
environmental requirements.....		
introduction.....	GPhve	
outline dimensions.....	datagram format.....	294
overview		
power requirements.....	GPS	
purpose	accuracy requirements for dimensional survey	
required item	measurements.....	188
scope of supply.....	interface requirements.....	33
weight	optional item.....	33
exporting	scope of supply.....	33
motion sensor data.....	setting up the interface	239
navigation data	verifying the interface	272
F	GPS information	
feedback	datagram formats	291
send us.....	graphic adapter	
file format	adjusting screen resolution	219
ADCP-NetCDF	computer	120
BOT	Processor Unit.....	120
NetCDF	ground	
XYZ	cable	146
file formats	grounding	
processed data to file	cable requirements.....	176
processed data to output	grounding requirements	
fishing gear noise	sonar room	54
acoustic noise.....	gyro	
flooring	verifying the interface	270
sonar room requirement.....	gyro information	
flow boundary layer	datagram formats	292
description		
flow noise	H	
acoustic noise.....	handling	
protruding objects.....	Rules for transducer handling	15
formats	HDG	
processed data to file	datagram format.....	292
processed data to output	HDM	
Furuno GPhve	datagram format.....	292
datagram format.....	HDT	
G	datagram format.....	292
general requirements	heading gyro	
supply power	verifying the interface	270
general safety rules	heading information	
.....	datagram formats	292
GGA	heading sensor	
datagram format.....	accuracy requirements for dimensional survey	
GGK	measurements.....	188
datagram format.....	interface requirements.....	34
GLL	optional item.....	34
datagram format.....	recommended item	34
global positioning system	scope of supply.....	34
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey	heating requirements	
measurements	sonar room	53
interface requirements.....	help	
optional item.....	support offices	45
H	Hemisphere GNSS GPHEV	
help	datagram format.....	294
support offices	HFB	
Hemisphere GNSS GPHEV	datagram format.....	293
datagram format.....	high voltage	
high voltage	safety rules	38
safety rules	how to	

adjust the screen resolution.....	219
configure the sensor interface	241
Connecting the transducer cable to the transceiver.....	161, 163, 166
define the Ethernet (LAN) port parameters	237
define the serial port parameters.....	237
do a dimensional survey	186
do a visual inspection of the display	197
do a visual inspection of the EC150-3C Power Supply Unit	204
do a visual inspection of the Power Supply Unit.....	204
do a visual inspection of the transceiver.....	200
do a visual inspection of the WBT Cabinet	202
export motion sensor data to peripheral systems	255
export navigation data to peripheral systems	255
import annotations on a communication port	242
install a commercial computer	80
install navigation and other sensors (summary).....	235
install the Enix	82
install the operational software	208
install the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)	73, 75
Installing the computer.....	82
Installing the display	79
Installing the Processor Unit	82
Installing the software license.....	210
Installing the transceiver.....	73, 75
Installing the Transceiver Unit.....	73, 75
Installing the WBT Power Supply.....	77
interface a sound speed sensor	251
lift units and transportation boxes	330
make a noise/speed curve to determine vessel noise.....	280
makes sure that operating power is correct.....	195
measure noise in passive mode	266
mount the drawers in the WBT Cabinet	89
mount the WBT Cabinet	86
Obtaining the software license	210
prepare a cable for termination.....	178
secure and terminate a cable.....	180
select measurement units	232
select menu language	231
set up (summary).....	206
set up synchronization.....	137, 256
set up the catch sensor interface	244
set up the GPS interface.....	239
set up the motion sensor interface	248
set up the navigation sensor interface	239
set up the serial ports on the adapter	124
set up the trawl system interface.....	246
Setting up depth output to an external system.....	252
Splicing the transducer cable.....	115
synchronise using Auxiliary port	140, 259
transport Kongsberg Maritime equipment.....	329
troubleshoot time zone settings	229
turn off	283
turn on	209
unpack a hydrophone.....	337
unpack a mechanical unit.....	335
unpack a sonar head	337
unpack a transducer.....	337
unpack an electronic or electromechanical unit	336
unpack standard parts and units	334
use multi-diameter cable sealing.....	181
verify the communication with the motion reference unit (MRU).....	276
verify the course gyro interface	270
verify the GPS interface	272
verify the gyro interface	270
verify the heading gyro interface	270
verify the navigation sensor interface	272
verify the speed log interface	274
Visual inspection of the computer	199
Visual inspection of the Processor Unit.....	199
visual inspection of units and transportation boxes after arrival	331
How to	
install Network Time Protocol	221
install Network Time Protocol monitor.....	225
hull surface	
protruding objects.....	57
humidity	
requirements	306
hydrophone	
unpacking	337
I	
I/O Setup page	
connecting a catch monitoring system	244
connecting a trawl system	246
importing annotations on a communication port	242
identification	
cable requirements	177
IEC	
line socket.....	144
import	
annotations	242
important	
Before you turn on the EK80 system.....	14
If something breaks down	14
Rules for transducer handling	15
When the EK80 system is not used.....	14
When you are docking your vessel	14
When you want to turn off the EK80 system	14
information	
online	12
support	45
initial	
setup (summary)	206
inspection	
computer	199
Processor Unit.....	199
transportation boxes	331
units	331
visual inspection of the display	197
visual inspection of the EC150-3C Power Supply Unit	204
visual inspection of the Power Supply Unit.....	204
visual inspection of the transceiver.....	200
visual inspection of the WBT Cabinet	202
Install	

Network Time Protocol	221
Network Time Protocol monitor	225
installation	
computer	80, 82
display	79
drawings	12
Enix	82
instructions	11
Processor Unit	82
software	208
software license	210
summary	47
transceiver	73, 75
Transceiver Unit	73, 75
WBT Power supply	77
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)	73, 75
installation approval	
installation requirements	42
installation drawings	
about	12, 315
approval	12, 49, 315
downloading	49
responsibility	12, 49
installation instructions	
about	11
responsibility	12, 49
installation of cables	
prerequisites	105
installation requirements	
approval by classification society	42
cables and wiring	41
compass deviation	41
dry docking	42
environmental	306
humidity	306
noise sources	41
temperature	306
uninterruptible power supply	40
Installation summary	47, 91
installing	
WBT Cabinet	86
WBT Cabinet drawers	89
Installing the transceiver	73, 75
Installing the Transceiver Unit	73, 75
instructions	
installation	11
unpacking	333
insulation requirements	
sonar room	53
intercom requirements	
sonar room	54
interconnection cables	
list	102
interface	
motion sensor setup	248
Setting up depth output to an external system	252
setting up GPS interface	239
setting up navigation sensor interface	239
setting up the catch sensor interface	244
setting up the motion sensor interface	248
setting up the serial ports on the adapter	124
setting up the trawl system interface	246
sound speed sensor	251
using RS-232 serial line	158
verifying motion reference unit (MRU) interface	276
verifying the course gyro interface	270
verifying the GPS interface	272
verifying the gyro interface	270
verifying the heading gyro interface	270
verifying the navigation sensor interface	272
verifying the speed log interface	274
interface requirements	
compass	34
course gyro	34
heading sensor	34
motion reference unit (MRU)	31, 35
speed log	34
interfaces	
computer	110
Øverland UPC-3005 Serial line splitter	128
Øverland UPC-5000P Serial line splitter	132
Processor Unit	110
transceiver	112
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) software	112
interfacing a navigation sensor	
Sensor Installation page	239
summary	235
interference	
acoustic noise	66
cable requirements	175
electrical noise	64, 67
internet	
network security	44
introduction	
computer	21
display	20
Ethernet switch	21
Processor Unit	21
sonar room	51
technical specifications	287
transceiver	22
Transceiver Unit	22
WBT Mini	23
WBT Tube	23
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)	22
Introduction to technical specifications	287
IP address	
network adapter	212
IP Address	
network adapter	212
K	
K-Sync	
synchronization using RS-232 serial line	155
KM Binary	
datagram format	294
Kongsberg EM Attitude 3000	
datagram format	294
Kongsberg Maritime	
support	45
L	
laminar flow	
description	58
LAN port	

defining the communication port	312
parameters	237
language	
select	231
LCD monitor	
environmental requirements	306
minimum requirements	312
power requirements	300
lifting	
transportation boxes	330
unit	330
light requirements	
sonar room	54
line socket	
IEC	144
list	
system interconnection cables	102
logo	
registered trademark	12
low power	
transducer connection	161
M	
machinery noise	
acoustic noise	64
main engine	
acoustic noise	64
main items	
provided with the delivery	26
mains power	
cable	144
making sure that operating power is correct	195
requirements	300
tolerances	40
maritime authority	
approval (installation drawings)	12, 49, 315
master	
setting up synchronization	137, 256
synchronization mode	135
Master	
SynchronizationDelay	139, 258
SynchronizationMode	135, 139, 258
measurement units	
selecting	232
measuring	
noise in passive mode	266
mechanical drawings	
about	315
downloading	49
mechanical unit	
unpacking	335
menu language	
select	231
minimum dimensions	
steel conduit	113
minimum requirements	
computer	311
display	312
steel conduit	113
uninterruptible power supply	36
mode	
synchronization	135
monitor	
environmental requirements	306
minimum requirements	
port	300
motion information	
datagram formats	294
motion reference unit	
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey	
measurements	188
datagram formats	294
exporting motion data on a communication	
port	255
motion reference unit (MRU)	
interface requirements	31, 35
optional item	35
required item	30
scope of supply	30, 35
verifying interface	276
verifying the communication	276
motion sensor	
exporting motion data on a communication	
port	255
setting up the interface	248
Mount the transducer at forward part of hull to minimize the effects from the flow boundary	
water layer	58
mounting	
WBT Cabinet	86
WBT Cabinet drawers	89
Moxa	
serial adapter	122
Moxa CP114EL-I Serial line adapter	152
MRU	
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey	
measurements	188
datagram formats	294
exporting motion data on a communication	
port	255
interface requirements	31, 35
scope of supply	30, 35
verifying interface	276
verifying the communication	276
MTW	
datagram format	296
multi-diameter cable sealing	
using	181
N	
navigation	
exporting navigation data on a communication	
port	255
navigation sensor	
installing navigation and other sensors	
(summary)	235
setting up the interface	239
verifying the interface	272
NetCDF	
file format	299
network adapter	
IP Address	212
IP address for transceiver communication	212
Subnet mask	212
network security	44
Network Time Protocol	
installation	221
Network Time Protocol monitor	

installation	225
NMEA	
RS-485 serial cable	151
NMEA CUR	
datagram format.....	296
NMEA datagram	
CUR (multi-layer water current data).....	296
DBS (depth from surface)	298
DBT (depth under transducer)	298
DDC (display dimming and control).....	294
DPT (depth under transducer, offset)	290, 298
GGA (time, position and fix).....	291
GGK (global positioning system fixed data).....	291
GLL (time, position and fix)	291
HDG (heading).....	292
HDM (heading)	292
HDT (true heading).....	292
MTW (water temperature).....	296
RMC (time, date, position, course).....	291
THS (true heading).....	292
VBW (vessel speed).....	296, 298
VHW (vessel heading and speed)	296, 298
VLW (travelled distance)	289
VTG (time, date, position and course)	291, 296, 298
ZDA (day, month, year and local time zone)	291
NMEA datagrams	
gyro information	292
heading information	292
NMEA DBS	
datagram format.....	298
NMEA DBT	
datagram format.....	298
NMEA DDC	
datagram format.....	294
NMEA DPT	
datagram format.....	290, 298
NMEA GGA	
datagram format.....	291
NMEA GGK	
datagram format.....	291
NMEA GLL	
datagram format.....	291
NMEA HDG	
datagram format.....	292
NMEA HDM	
datagram format.....	292
NMEA HDT	
datagram format.....	292
NMEA MTW	
datagram format.....	296
NMEA RMC	
datagram format.....	291
NMEA THS	
datagram format.....	292
NMEA VBW	
datagram format.....	296, 298
NMEA VHW	
datagram format.....	296, 298
NMEA VLW	
datagram format.....	289
NMEA VTG	
datagram format.....	291, 296, 298
NMEA ZDA	
datagram format.....	291
noise	
about acoustic noise	62
ambient noise.....	66
bow thruster noise	59
cavitation.....	56, 59, 65
contributing factors.....	62
electrical noise	64, 67
fishing gear noise	67
flow noise	56, 65
interference	66
machinery noise	64
making a noise/speed curve to determine vessel noise.....	280
measuring	266
propeller noise.....	59, 64
rattle noise	66
self noise	64
noise sources	62
installation requirements.....	41
noise/speed curve	
making	280
none	
synchronization mode	135
O	
obtaining	
software license	210
off	
turn.....	283
offices	
support	45
OFS	
datagram format.....	289
on	
turn.....	209
online	
information	12
operating humidity	
WBT Cabinet.....	308
operating power	
making sure it is correct.....	195
operating temperature	
WBT Cabinet.....	308
operating voltage	
computer	300
display	300
Ethernet switch.....	301
power supply	301
Processor Unit.....	300
transceiver	301
Transceiver Unit	301
WBT Cabinet.....	302
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).....	301
operational software	
installation	208
optional item	
compass	34
course gyro	34
global positioning system.....	33
heading sensor.....	34
motion reference unit (MRU)	35
serial line splitter.....	36
speed log	34

uninterruptible power supply.....	36
optional items	
not provided with the delivery	32
origin	
vessel coordinate system.....	70, 190
outline dimensions	
about.....	315
computer	303, 318
display	303
downloading.....	49
Ethernet switch.....	304
Processor Unit.....	303, 318
technical specifications.....	303
transceiver	304
WBT Cabinet.....	305, 322
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).....	304, 316
outline dimensions drawing	
Øverland UPC-3005 Serial line splitter.....	129
Øverland UPC-5000P Serial line splitter	133
output	
Setting up depth output to an external system.....	252
Øverland UPC-3005	
connections	128
description	126
outline dimensions drawing	129
technical specifications.....	127
Øverland UPC-5000P	
connections	132
description	130
outline dimensions drawing	133
technical specifications.....	131
overview	
computer	21
display	20
Ethernet switch.....	21
installation	47
Processor Unit.....	21
sonar room	51
transceiver	22
Transceiver Unit	22
WBT Mini	23
WBT Tube	23
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).....	22
P	
palette control	
datagram formats	294
passive mode	
measuring noise	266
performance requirements	
uninterruptible power supply.....	36
personnel	
qualifications	50
Personnel qualifications.....	50
physical protection	
cable requirements.....	175
plug	
transducer connector assembly.....	326
plugs	
Processor Unit.....	110
transceiver	112
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).....	112
position information	
datagram formats	291
power	
requirements.....	300
power consumption	
computer	300
Ethernet switch.....	301
Processor Unit.....	300
transceiver	301
Transceiver Unit	301
WBT Cabinet.....	302
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).....	301
power mains	
tolerances	40
power requirements	
computer	300
display.....	300
Ethernet switch.....	301
power supply	301
Processor Unit.....	300
sonar room	54
transceiver	301
Transceiver Unit	301
WBT Cabinet.....	302
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).....	301
power supply	
compass safe distance	310
making sure that operating power is correct.....	195
power requirements.....	301
Power Supply Unit	
visual inspection	204
prerequisites	
cable installation	105
presentation	
adjusting the screen resolution	219
procedure	
adjusting the screen resolution	219
configuring the sensor interface.....	241
Connecting the transducer cable to the transceiver	161, 163, 166
defining the Ethernet (LAN) port parameters	237
defining the serial port parameters.....	237
doing a dimensional survey	186
exporting motion sensor data to peripheral systems	255
exporting navigation data to peripheral systems	255
importing annotations on a communication port	242
installing a commercial computer	80
installing navigation and other sensors (summary).....	235
Installing the computer.....	82
Installing the display	79
installing the Enix	82
installing the operational software.....	208
Installing the Processor Unit	82
Installing the software license	210
Installing the transceiver	73, 75
Installing the Transceiver Unit	73, 75
Installing the WBT Power Supply	77
installing the Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)	73, 75
interfacing a sound speed sensor.....	251
lifting units and transportation boxes	330

making a noise/speed curve to determine vessel noise.....	280
making sure that operating power is correct.....	195
measuring noise in passive mode.....	266
mounting the drawers in the WBT Cabinet.....	89
mounting the WBT Cabinet.....	86
Obtaining the software license.....	210
preparing a cable for termination.....	178
securing and terminating a cable.....	180
selecting measurement units.....	232
selecting menu language.....	231
Setting up depth output to an external system.....	252
setting up summary.....	206
setting up synchronization.....	137, 256
setting up the catch sensor interface.....	244
setting up the GPS interface.....	239
setting up the motion sensor interface.....	248
setting up the navigation sensor interface.....	239
setting up the serial ports on the adapter.....	124
setting up the trawl system interface.....	246
Splicing the transducer cable.....	115
synchronisation using Auxiliary port.....	140, 259
transporting Kongsberg Maritime equipment.....	329
turning off.....	283
turning on.....	209
unpacking a hydrophone.....	337
unpacking a mechanical unit.....	335
unpacking a sonar head.....	337
unpacking a transducer.....	337
unpacking an electronic or electromechanical unit.....	336
unpacking standard parts and units.....	334
using multi-diameter cable sealing.....	181
verifying the communication with the motion reference unit (MRU).....	276
verifying the course gyro interface.....	270
verifying the GPS interface.....	272
verifying the gyro interface.....	270
verifying the heading gyro interface.....	270
verifying the navigation sensor interface.....	272
verifying the speed log interface.....	274
visual inspection of the display.....	197
visual inspection of the EC150-3C Power Supply Unit.....	204
visual inspection of the Power Supply Unit.....	204
visual inspection of the transceiver.....	200
visual inspection of the WBT Cabinet.....	202
visual inspection of units and transportation boxes after arrival.....	331
procedure	
Visual inspection of the computer.....	199
Visual inspection of the Processor Unit.....	199
procedures	
unpacking.....	333
Processor Unit	
adjusting the screen resolution.....	219
Compass Safe Distance (CSD).....	309
connectors.....	110
environmental requirements.....	306
graphic adapter.....	120
installation	82
introduction.....	21
Moxa CP114EL-I Serial line adapter	152
outline dimensions.....	303, 318
overview	21
power requirements.....	300
purpose	21
required item	29
scope of supply.....	29
serial adapter	152
visual inspection	199
weight	303
propellers	
acoustic noise.....	59, 64
proprietary datagram	
AML (sound speed)	295
Atlas Depth (depth information).....	298
Simrad PSIMDHB (biomass and bottom hardness).....	298
proprietary datagrams	
annotation data	288
protection	
cable requirements.....	175
transducer cables in steel conduit.....	113
protruding objects	
avoid	57
PSIMDHB	
datagram format.....	298
PSIMPD	
datagram format.....	295
PSIMPD1	
datagram format.....	295
PSIMPF	
datagram format.....	295
PTNL GGK	
datagram format.....	291
pump	
sonar room requirement.....	55
pump requirement	
sonar room	55
purpose	
computer	21
display	20
Ethernet switch	21
Processor Unit	21
sonar room	51
this publication	11
transceiver	22
Transceiver Unit	22
WBT Mini	23
WBT Tube	23
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)	22
purse seine	
fishing gear noise	67
Q	
qualifications	
personnel	50
R	
radio frequency interference	
cable requirements	175
rattle noise	
acoustic noise	66

recommended item	
compass	34
course gyro	34
heading sensor	34
speed log	34
uninterruptible power supply	36
Request To Send	
used in synchronization	150
Request To Send (RTS)	
synchronization using Clear To Send (CTS) and Request To Send (RTS) signals	136
required item	
computer	29
Ethernet switch	30
motion reference unit (MRU)	30
Processor Unit	29
transducer	30
required items	
not provided with the delivery	28
requirements	
ac mains power	300
approval by classification society	42
cable connections	176
cable grounding	176
cable identification	177
cable terminations	176
cable trays	174
cables and wiring	41, 174
heading sensor	34
compass	34
compass deviation	41
computer	311
course gyro	34
dimensional survey measurements of	
compass	188
dimensional survey measurements of course	
gyro	188
dimensional survey measurements of global	
positioning system	188
dimensional survey measurements of heading	
sensor	188
dimensional survey measurements of motion	
reference unit	188
dimensional survey measurements of	
transducer	188
display	312
dry docking	42
environmental	306
global positioning system interface	33
humidity	306
mains power	300
motion reference unit (MRU)	
interface	31, 35
noise sources	41
personnel qualifications	50
physical protection of cables	175
power	300
radio frequency interference	175
speed log interface	34
steel conduit	113
supply power	40, 300
temperature	306
uninterruptible power supply	36, 40
responsibility	
compass deviation	41
installation drawings	12, 49
installation instructions	12, 49
RF interference	
cable requirements	175
RJ45	
Ethernet cable	154
RMC	
datagram format	291
Roxtec	
multi-diameter cable sealing	181
RS-232	
about	171
cable specifications	147–148
interface	158
Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter	122
serial adapter	152
serial line cable	147–148
synchronization	155, 158
RS-422	
Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter	122
serial adapter	152
serial line cable	149
RS-422e	
about	171
RS-485	
about	171
Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter	122
serial adapter	152
serial line cable	151
RTS	
synchronization using Clear To Send (CTS) and Request To Send (RTS) signals	136
RTS (Request to Send)	
used in synchronization	150
RTS (Request To Send)	
interface	158
synchronization	155, 158
S	
safety rules	38
high voltage	38
scope of supply	
basic items	26
compass	34
computer	29
course gyro	34
Ethernet switch	30
global positioning system	33
heading sensor	34
motion reference unit (MRU)	30, 35
optional items not provided with the delivery	32
Processor Unit	29
required items not provided with the delivery	28
serial line splitter	36
speed log	34
transducer	30
uninterruptible power supply	36
screen resolution	
adjusting	219
securing	
cable	180
security	
network	44
selecting	

measurement units	232
self noise	
acoustic noise.....	64
sensor	
configuring.....	241
Sensor Configuration page	
configuring the sensor interface.....	241
Sensor Installation page	
installing navigation and other sensors	
(summary).....	235
interfacing a navigation sensor.....	239
serial adapter	
description	152
Moxa CP114EL-I	122
setting up the serial ports on the adapter.....	124
serial interface	
setting up the serial ports on the adapter.....	124
serial line	
about.....	171
cable specifications serial line used for	
synchronization.....	150
Moxa CP114EL-I serial adapter	122
RS-232 cable specifications	147–148
RS-422 cable specifications	149
RS-485 cable specifications	151
serial line splitter	
connections	128, 132
optional item.....	36
Øverland UPC-3005 description.....	126
Øverland UPC-3005 technical	
specifications.....	127
Øverland UPC-5000P description	130
Øverland UPC-5000P technical	
specifications.....	131
scope of supply.....	36
serial line used for synchronization	
cable specifications	150
serial port	
defining the communication port	
parameters.....	237
setting up the serial ports on the adapter.....	124
setting to work	
summary	193
Setting to work summary	193
setting up	
the trawl system interface.....	246
setup	
initial summary.....	206
select menu language.....	231
shipyard cables	
description	94
Simrad	
registered trademark.....	12
support	45
SIMRAD	
registered trademark.....	12
Simrad DBS	
datagram format.....	293
Simrad HFB	
datagram format.....	293
Simrad PSIMDHB	
datagram format.....	298
Simrad PSIMPD	
datagram format.....	295
Simrad PSIMPD1	
datagram format.....	295
datagram format.....	295
Simrad TDS	
datagram format.....	293
Simrad TPR	
datagram format.....	293
Simrad TPT	
datagram format.....	293
single beam	
transducer connection	161
size	
computer	303, 318
display	303
Ethernet switch.....	304
Processor Unit.....	303, 318
technical specifications.....	303
transceiver	304
WBT Cabinet.....	305
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).....	304
size requirements	
sonar room	52
slamming	
transducer	57
slave	
setting up synchronization.....	137, 256
synchronization mode	135
Slave	
SynchronizationDelay.....	140, 259
SynchronizationMode.....	135, 139, 258
smooth surface	
transducer installation	67
sockets	
computer	110
Processor Unit.....	110
transceiver	112
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).....	112
software	
installation	208
software license	
installation	210
obtaining	210
Some means to reduce acoustic noise.....	67
sonar head	
unpacking	337
sonar room	
access requirements	52
bilge pump requirement.....	55
communication requirements	54
decking requirement.....	55
electrical installation requirements	54
environmental requirements	51
grounding requirements.....	54
heating requirements	53
insulation requirements	53
introduction	51
light requirements	54
overview	51
power requirements	54
purpose	51
size requirements	52
ventilation requirements	53
watertight integrity	52
sound speed	
AML datagram format	295

sound speed information	
datagram formats	295
sound speed sensor	
interface	251
specifications	
ac power cable	144
compass safe distance	309
dc power cable	155
Ethernet cable RJ45	154
outline dimensions	303
Øverland UPC-3005 Serial line splitter	127
Øverland UPC-5000P Serial line splitter	131
RS-232 serial line cable	147–148
RS-422 serial line cable	149
RS-485 serial line cable	151
serial line used for synchronization	150
storage after unpacking	338
storage prior to installation	332
vessel ground cable	146
specifications	
weight	303
speed information	
datagram formats	296
speed log	
interface requirements	34
optional item	34
recommended item	34
scope of supply	34
verifying the interface	274
splicing	
transducer cable	115
Splicing the transducer cable	115
Stand-alone	
SynchronizationDelay	139, 258
SynchronizationMode	135, 139, 258
standalone	
synchronization mode	135
standard computer	
installation	80
standard items	
provided with the delivery	26
standards	
serial line	171
steel conduit	
minimum dimensions	113
transducer cables	113
storage	
after unpacking	338
prior to installation	332
storage temperature	
WBT Cabinet	308
Subnet mask	
network adapter	212
suggestions	
send us	12
summary	
dimensional survey procedure	186
installation	47
setting to work	193
transducer installation	91
supply power	
requirements	300
tolerances	40
supply voltage	
computer	300
display	300
Ethernet switch	301
power supply	301
Processor Unit	300
transceiver	301
Transceiver Unit	301
WBT Cabinet	302
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)	301
support information	45
surface	
protruding objects	57
survey	
dimensional survey accuracy	188
summary procedure for dimensional survey	186
survey requirements	
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey	
measurements of compass	188
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey	
measurements of course gyro	188
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey	
measurements of global positioning system	188
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey	
measurements of heading sensor	188
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey	
measurements of motion reference unit	188
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey	
measurements of transducer	188
switch	
off	283
on	209
synchronisation	
serial line used for synchronisation	150
WBT Auxiliary port	140, 259
synchronization	
about	134
setting up	137, 256
specifications serial line	150
using Clear To Send (CTS) and Request To Send (RTS) signals	136
using RS-232 serial line	155, 158
synchronization mode	
description	135
system	
description	15
diagram	17
system cables	
description	94
list	102
system setup	
initial (summary)	206
system software	
installation	208

T

target audience	
this publication	11
TDS	
datagram format	293
technical requirements	
ac mains power	300
computer	311
display	312
mains power	300

power	300
supply power	300
uninterruptible power supply.....	36
technical specifications	
compass safe distance	309
introduction.....	287
Øverland UPC-3005 Serial line splitter.....	127
Øverland UPC-5000P Serial line splitter	131
technical specifications	
outline dimensions.....	303
weight	303
technical support	
offices.....	45
Teledyne TSS1	
datagram format.....	294
telephone requirements	
sonar room	54
temperature	
requirements.....	306
temperature information	
datagram formats	296
termination	
cable	180
preparing cable	178
terminations	
cable requirements.....	176
this publication	
about.....	11
purpose	11
target audience	11
this user manual	
about.....	11
purpose	11
target audience	11
THS	
datagram format.....	292
time zone settings	
troubleshoot	229
tolerances	
supply power	40
topside	
cable plan	97, 100
TPR	
datagram format.....	293
TPT	
datagram format.....	293
transceiver	
cable plan	98–100
Compass Safe Distance (CSD).....	310
connectors.....	112
description	22
environmental requirements.....	307
installation	73, 75
introduction.....	22
outline dimensions.....	304
overview	22
power requirements.....	301
purpose	22
visual inspection	200
weight	304
Transceiver Cabinet	
mounting	86
mounting the drawers	89
Transceiver Unit	
Compass Safe Distance (CSD).....	310
description	22
environmental requirements.....	307
installation	73, 75
introduction.....	22
outline	22
power requirements.....	301
purpose	22
minimum requirements	36
purpose	22
slamming	57
unpacking	337
transducer	
accuracy requirements for dimensional survey	
measurements	188
bow thrusters	59
brief description	24
installation summary	91
required item	30
Rules for transducer handling	15
scope of supply	30
slamming	57
unpacking	337
transducer cable	
Connecting the transducer cable to the	
transceiver	161, 163, 166
splicing	115
transducer cables	
protection in steel conduit	113
steel conduit	113
transducer connection	
single beam low power.....	161
transducer connector	
assembly and wiring	326
transducer EC150-3C	
description	24
transducer installation	
smooth surface	67
Transducer installation summary	91
transducer location	
Summary and general recommendations	59
transportation	
of delicate and fragile equipment	329
trawl	
fishing gear noise	67
trawl information	
datagram formats	293
trawl system	
setting up the interface	246
trays	
cable requirements	174
Trimble PTNL GGK	
datagram format.....	291
troubleshooting	
time zone settings	229
TSS1	
datagram format.....	294
turbulence	
protruding objects	57
turbulent flow	
description	58
turn	
off	283
on	209
U	
uninterruptible power supply	
installation requirements	40
minimum requirements	36

optional item.....	36
recommended item	36
scope of supply.....	36
units	
selecting measurement units.....	232
unpacking	
a hydrophone	337
a mechanical unit	335
a sonar head.....	337
a transducer	337
an electronic or electromechanical unit.....	336
instructions	333
standard parts and units	334
UPC-3005	
connections	128
description	126
outline dimensions drawing	129
technical specifications.....	127
UPC-5000P	
connections	132
description	130
outline dimensions drawing	133
technical specifications.....	131
UPS	
installation requirements.....	40
minimum requirements	36
optional item.....	36
recommended item	36
scope of supply.....	36
user interface	
select language	231
 V	
VBW	
datagram format.....	296, 298
ventilation requirements	
sonar room	53
verifying	
motion reference unit (MRU) interfaces.....	276
vessel coordinate system	
alternative origin	71, 190
origin	70, 190
principles.....	69, 189
vessel ground	
cable	146
vessel noise	
making a noise/speed curve	280
VHW	
datagram format.....	296, 298
visual inspection	
computer	199
display	197
Processor Unit.....	199
transportation boxes	331
units.....	331
visual inspection of the EC150-3C Power Supply Unit	204
visual inspection of the Power Supply Unit.....	204
visual inspection of the transceiver.....	200
visual inspection of the WBT Cabinet	202
Visual inspection of the computer	199
Visual inspection of the Processor Unit.....	199
VLW	
datagram format.....	289
 VTG	
datagram format.....	291, 296, 298
 W	
water level	
datagram formats	297
water pump	
sonar room requirement.....	55
watertight integrity	
sonar room	52
WBT	
cable plan	98–100
compass safe distance	310
connectors.....	112
description	22
environmental requirements.....	307
installation	73, 75
introduction	22
outline dimensions.....	316
overview	22
power requirements.....	301
purpose	22
synchronisation using Auxiliary port	140, 259
WBT Cabinet	
compass safe distance	310
environmental requirements.....	308
mounting	86
mounting the drawers	89
outline dimensions.....	305, 322
power requirements.....	302
visual inspection	202
weight	305
WBT Mini	
introduction	23
overview	23
purpose	23
WBT Power supply	
installation	77
WBT Tube	
introduction	23
overview	23
purpose	23
website	
download documents	12
weight	
computer	303
display	303
Ethernet switch.....	304
Processor Unit.....	303
transceiver	304
WBT Cabinet.....	305
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT).....	304
weight	
technical specifications.....	303
Wide Band Transceiver	
synchronisation using Auxiliary port	140, 259
Wide Band Transceiver (WBT)	
cable plan	98–100
compass safe distance	310
connectors.....	112
description	22
environmental requirements.....	307

- installation 73, 75
- introduction 22
- outline dimensions 304, 316
- overview 22
- power requirements 301
- purpose 22
- weight 304
- wiring
 - installation requirements 41
 - list of system interconnection cables 102
 - prerequisites 105
 - transducer connector 326
- wiring diagram
 - bridge 97
 - topside 97, 100
 - transceiver 98–100
 - Wide Band Transceiver (WBT) 98–100
- www.simrad.com
 - document downloads 12

X

- XYZ
 - file format 298–299

Z

- ZDA
 - datagram format 291
- ZMQ
 - datagram format 298

©2022 Kongsberg Maritime

ISBN 978-82-8066-182-1

Installation Manual
Simrad EK80